

# **Oracle® Real Application Clusters**

Administration and Deployment Guide

11g Release 2 (11.2)

**E41960-04**

June 2015

Copyright © 1999, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Richard Strohm

Contributing Authors: Troy Anthony, Lance Ashdown, Ram Avudaiappan, Prasad Bagal, Mark Bauer, Anand Beldalker, Eric Belden, Gajanan Bhat, David Brower, George Claborn, Carol Colrain, Jonathan Creighton, Rajesh Dasari, Steve Fogel, Richard Frank, GP Prabhaker Gongloor, Wei Hu, Yong Hu, Dominique Jeunot, Sameer Joshi, Raj K. Kammend, Sana Karam, Roland Knapp, Ken Lee, Karen Li, Barb Lundhild, Venkat Maddali, Bill Manry, Gaurav Manglik, John McHugh, Saar Maoz, Matthew Mckerley, Markus Michalewicz, Anil Nair, Philip Newlan, Michael Nowak, Muthu Olagappan, Bharat Paliwal, Hanlin Qian, Mark Ramacher, Kevin Reardon, Dipak Saggi, Sudheendra Sampath, Viv Schupmann, Daniel Semler, Ara Shakian, Cathy Shea, Khethavath P. Singh, Kesavan Srinivasan, Janet Stern, Leo Tominna, Peter Wahl, Tak Wang, Richard Wessman, Douglas Williams, Mike Zampiceni, Michael Zoll

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

---

---

# Contents

<b>Preface</b> .....	xix
Audience .....	xix
Documentation Accessibility .....	xix
Related Documents .....	xx
Conventions .....	xx
<b>What's New in Oracle RAC Administration and Deployment?</b> .....	xxiii
Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.4) New Features in Oracle RAC .....	xxiii
Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2) New Features in Oracle RAC .....	xxiii
Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.1) New Features in Oracle RAC .....	xxv
<b>1 Introduction to Oracle RAC</b>	
<b>Overview of Oracle RAC</b> .....	1-1
<b>Overview of Oracle Clusterware for Oracle RAC</b> .....	1-3
<b>Overview of Oracle RAC Architecture and Processing</b> .....	1-4
Understanding Cluster-Aware Storage Solutions .....	1-4
Overview of Connecting to Oracle Database Using Services and VIP Addresses .....	1-4
About Oracle RAC Software Components .....	1-5
About Oracle RAC Background Processes .....	1-6
<b>Overview of Automatic Workload Management</b> .....	1-7
<b>Overview of Installing Oracle RAC</b> .....	1-9
Understanding Compatibility in Oracle RAC Environments .....	1-9
Overview of Oracle RAC Installation and Database Creation .....	1-10
Overview of Extending the Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle RAC Software .....	1-11
<b>Overview of Managing Oracle RAC Environments</b> .....	1-12
About Designing and Deploying Oracle RAC Environments .....	1-12
About Administrative Tools for Oracle RAC Environments .....	1-13
About Monitoring Oracle RAC Environments .....	1-14
About Evaluating Performance in Oracle RAC Environments .....	1-15
<b>2 Administering Storage</b>	
<b>Overview of Storage in Oracle RAC</b> .....	2-1
<b>Optimal Flexible Architecture</b> .....	2-2
<b>Data File Access in Oracle RAC</b> .....	2-2
<b>Redo Log File Storage in Oracle RAC</b> .....	2-3

<b>Automatic Undo Management in Oracle RAC</b> .....	2-3
<b>Oracle Automatic Storage Management with Oracle RAC</b> .....	2-4
Storage Management in Oracle RAC .....	2-5
Modifying Disk Group Configurations for Oracle ASM.....	2-5
Oracle ASM Disk Group Management .....	2-5
Configuring Preferred Mirror Read Disks in Extended Distance Clusters .....	2-6
Converting Nonclustered Oracle ASM to Clustered Oracle ASM.....	2-6
Administering Oracle ASM Instances with SRVCTL in Oracle RAC.....	2-7

### **3 Administering Database Instances and Cluster Databases**

<b>Tools for Administering Oracle RAC</b> .....	3-1
Overview of Oracle RAC Database Administration.....	3-2
Administering Oracle RAC with Oracle Enterprise Manager.....	3-3
Administering Oracle RAC with SQL*Plus .....	3-4
Changing the SQL*Plus Prompt .....	3-4
How SQL*Plus Commands Affect Instances.....	3-5
Administering Oracle RAC with SRVCTL .....	3-6
<b>Starting and Stopping Instances and Oracle RAC Databases</b> .....	3-6
Overview of Starting and Stopping Oracle RAC Instances .....	3-6
Starting and Stopping with Oracle Enterprise Manager .....	3-7
Starting Up and Shutting Down with SQL*Plus .....	3-7
Starting Up and Shutting Down with SRVCTL.....	3-8
<b>Verifying That Instances are Running</b> .....	3-9
<b>Terminating Sessions On a Specific Cluster Instance</b> .....	3-10
<b>Overview of Initialization Parameter Files in Oracle RAC</b> .....	3-11
Setting SPFILE Parameter Values for Oracle RAC.....	3-12
Parameter File Search Order in Oracle RAC .....	3-13
Backing Up the Server Parameter File .....	3-14
<b>Initialization Parameter Use in Oracle RAC</b> .....	3-14
Parameters That Must Have Identical Settings on All Instances .....	3-16
Parameters That Have Unique Settings on All Instances.....	3-17
Parameters That Should Have Identical Settings on All Instances.....	3-18
<b>Converting an Administrator-Managed Database to a Policy-Managed Database</b> .....	3-19
<b>Quiescing Oracle RAC Databases</b> .....	3-20
<b>Administering Multiple Cluster Interconnects on Linux and UNIX Platforms</b> .....	3-21
Recommendations for Setting the CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS Parameter.....	3-22
Usage Examples for the CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS Parameter .....	3-23
<b>Customizing How Oracle Clusterware Manages Oracle RAC Databases</b> .....	3-24
<b>Advanced Oracle Enterprise Manager Administration</b> .....	3-25
Using Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control to Discover Nodes and Instances.....	3-25
Other Oracle Enterprise Manager Capabilities.....	3-26
Administering Jobs and Alerts in Oracle RAC .....	3-26
Administering Jobs in Oracle RAC .....	3-27
Administering Alerts in Oracle RAC with Oracle Enterprise Manager .....	3-27
Performing Scheduled Maintenance Using Defined Blackouts in Oracle Enterprise Manager	3-27

<b>4</b>	<b>Administering Oracle RAC One Node</b>	
	Overview of Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node .....	4-1
	Adding an Oracle RAC One Node Database .....	4-2
	Converting Databases.....	4-3
	Converting a Database from Oracle RAC to Oracle RAC One Node.....	4-3
	Converting a Database from Oracle RAC One Node to Oracle RAC.....	4-3
	Online Database Relocation.....	4-4
<b>5</b>	<b>Introduction to Automatic Workload Management</b>	
	Overview of Automatic Workload Management .....	5-2
	Automatic Workload Repository .....	5-3
	Service Deployment Options .....	5-3
	Using Oracle Services .....	5-4
	Service Characteristics.....	5-4
	Service Name .....	5-4
	Net Service Name .....	5-5
	Service Edition.....	5-5
	Service Management Policy .....	5-5
	Database Role for a Service .....	5-5
	Instance Preference .....	5-6
	Server Pool Assignment.....	5-6
	Load Balancing Advisory Goal for Runtime Connection Load Balancing.....	5-6
	Connection Load Balancing Goal .....	5-7
	Distributed Transaction Processing .....	5-7
	Subscription to High Availability Events.....	5-7
	Transparent Application Failover Policy .....	5-7
	Service Usage in an Oracle RAC Database.....	5-8
	Resource Profile for a Service.....	5-8
	Database Resource Manager Consumer Group Mappings for Services.....	5-8
	Performance Monitoring by Service with AWR.....	5-8
	Parallel Operations and Services .....	5-9
	Oracle Streams and Oracle RAC.....	5-9
	Default Service Connections.....	5-9
	<b>Connection Load Balancing</b> .....	5-10
	Client-Side Load Balancing.....	5-10
	Generic Database Clients .....	5-11
	Other Client-Side Connection Features .....	5-11
	JDBC Clients .....	5-11
	Oracle Call Interface Clients.....	5-11
	Server-Side Load Balancing.....	5-12
	<b>Fast Application Notification</b> .....	5-12
	Overview of Fast Application Notification .....	5-13
	Application High Availability with Services and FAN.....	5-14
	Managing Unplanned Outages .....	5-14
	Managing Planned Outages .....	5-14
	Fast Application Notification High Availability Events .....	5-15

Using Fast Application Notification Callouts .....	5-16
User Callout Events .....	5-17
<b>Load Balancing Advisory</b> .....	5-17
Overview of the Load Balancing Advisory .....	5-18
Configuring Your Environment to Use the Load Balancing Advisory .....	5-18
Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events .....	5-19
Monitoring Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events .....	5-19
<b>Oracle Clients That Are Integrated with Fast Application Notification</b> .....	5-20
Overview of Oracle Integrated Clients and FAN .....	5-20
Enabling JDBC Clients for Fast Connection Failover .....	5-21
Oracle Notification Service for JDBC Clients .....	5-21
Configuring FCF for JDBC/OCI and JDBC Thin Driver Clients .....	5-22
Enabling JDBC Clients for Runtime Connection Load Balancing .....	5-23
Enabling Oracle Call Interface Clients for Fast Connection Failover .....	5-23
Enabling Oracle Call Interface Clients for Runtime Connection Load Balancing .....	5-24
Enabling ODP.NET Clients to Receive FAN High Availability Events .....	5-25
Enabling ODP.NET Clients to Receive FAN Load Balancing Advisory Events .....	5-26
<b>Services and Distributed Transaction Processing in Oracle RAC</b> .....	5-27
Overview of XA Transactions and DTP Services .....	5-27
Benefits of DTP Services for XA Transactions .....	5-28
Using DTP Services with Oracle RAC .....	5-28
Configuring DTP Services .....	5-29
Relocating DTP Services in Administrator-Managed Databases .....	5-29
<b>Administering Services</b> .....	5-29
Overview of Service Administration .....	5-29
Administering Services with Oracle Enterprise Manager .....	5-31
Administering Services with SRVCTL .....	5-32
Creating Services with SRVCTL .....	5-32
Starting and Stopping Services with SRVCTL .....	5-32
Enabling and Disabling Services with SRVCTL .....	5-32
Relocating Services with SRVCTL .....	5-33
Obtaining the Statuses of Services with SRVCTL .....	5-33
Obtaining the Configuration of Services with SRVCTL .....	5-33
<b>Measuring Performance by Service Using the Automatic Workload Repository</b> .....	5-34
<b>Automatic Workload Repository Service Thresholds and Alerts</b> .....	5-35
Example of Services and Thresholds Alerts .....	5-36
Enable Service, Module, and Action Monitoring .....	5-36

## 6 Configuring Recovery Manager and Archiving

Overview of Configuring RMAN for Oracle RAC .....	6-1
Archiving Mode in Oracle RAC .....	6-1
Configuring the RMAN Snapshot Control File Location .....	6-2
Configuring RMAN to Automatically Backup the Control File and SPFILE .....	6-2
Crosschecking on Multiple Oracle RAC Nodes .....	6-3
Configuring Channels for RMAN in Oracle RAC .....	6-3
Configuring Channels to Use Automatic Load Balancing .....	6-3
Configuring Channels to Use a Specific Node .....	6-4

<b>Managing Archived Redo Logs Using RMAN in Oracle RAC .....</b>	<b>6-4</b>
<b>Archived Redo Log File Conventions in Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>6-4</b>
<b>RMAN Archiving Configuration Scenarios.....</b>	<b>6-5</b>
Oracle Automatic Storage Management and Cluster File System Archiving Scheme .....	6-5
Advantages of the Cluster File System Archiving Scheme .....	6-6
Initialization Parameter Settings for the Cluster File System Archiving Scheme .....	6-6
Location of Archived Logs for the Cluster File System Archiving Scheme .....	6-7
Noncluster File System Local Archiving Scheme.....	6-7
Considerations for Using Noncluster File System Local Archiving.....	6-7
Initialization Parameter Settings for Noncluster File System Local Archiving .....	6-7
Location of Archived Logs for Noncluster File System Local Archiving.....	6-8
File System Configuration for Noncluster File System Local Archiving.....	6-8
<b>Monitoring the Archiver Processes.....</b>	<b>6-9</b>
<b>7 Managing Backup and Recovery</b>	
<b>RMAN Backup Scenario for Noncluster File System Backups.....</b>	<b>7-1</b>
<b>RMAN Restore Scenarios for Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>7-1</b>
Restoring Backups from a Cluster File System.....	7-2
Restoring Backups from a Noncluster File System .....	7-2
Using RMAN or Oracle Enterprise Manager to Restore the Server Parameter File (SPFILE)	7-3
<b>Instance Recovery in Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>7-3</b>
Single Node Failure in Oracle RAC.....	7-3
Multiple-Node Failures in Oracle RAC .....	7-3
Using RMAN to Create Backups in Oracle RAC.....	7-4
Channel Connections to Cluster Instances with RMAN.....	7-4
Node Affinity Awareness of Fast Connections .....	7-5
Deleting Archived Redo Logs after a Successful Backup.....	7-5
Autolocation for Backup and Restore Commands.....	7-5
<b>Media Recovery in Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>7-6</b>
<b>Parallel Recovery in Oracle RAC .....</b>	<b>7-6</b>
Parallel Recovery with RMAN.....	7-6
Disabling Parallel Recovery .....	7-6
Disabling Instance and Crash Recovery Parallelism .....	7-7
Disabling Media Recovery Parallelism.....	7-7
Using a Fast Recovery Area in Oracle RAC .....	7-7
<b>8 Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster</b>	
Introduction to Cloning Oracle RAC .....	8-1
Preparing to Clone Oracle RAC.....	8-2
Deploying Oracle RAC Clone to Nodes in a Cluster .....	8-3
Locating and Viewing Log Files Generated During Cloning.....	8-7
<b>9 Using Cloning to Extend Oracle RAC to Nodes in the Same Cluster</b>	
About Adding Nodes Using Cloning in Oracle RAC Environments .....	9-1
Cloning Local Oracle Homes on Linux and UNIX Systems .....	9-1
Cloning Shared Oracle Homes on Linux and UNIX Systems .....	9-2

Cloning Oracle Homes on Windows Systems .....	9-3
---	-----

## 10 Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Linux and UNIX Systems

<b>Adding Oracle RAC to Nodes with Oracle Clusterware Installed</b> .....	10-1
Adding Policy-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes .....	10-2
Adding Administrator-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes .....	10-3
Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes .....	10-4
Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes .....	10-5
<b>Deleting Oracle RAC from a Cluster Node</b> .....	10-5
Deleting Instances from Oracle RAC Databases .....	10-5
Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes .....	10-7
Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes .....	10-7
Removing Oracle RAC .....	10-8
Deleting Nodes from the Cluster .....	10-9

## 11 Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Windows Systems

<b>Adding Oracle RAC to Nodes with Oracle Clusterware Installed</b> .....	11-2
Adding Administrator-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes .....	11-2
Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes .....	11-3
Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes .....	11-4
<b>Deleting Oracle RAC from a Cluster Node</b> .....	11-4
Deleting Instances from Oracle RAC Databases .....	11-5
Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes .....	11-6
Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes .....	11-7
Removing Oracle RAC .....	11-7
Deleting Nodes from the Cluster .....	11-8

## 12 Design and Deployment Techniques

<b>Deploying Oracle RAC for High Availability</b> .....	12-1
About Designing a High Availability System .....	12-1
Best Practices for Deploying Oracle RAC in a High Availability Environment .....	12-2
Consolidating Multiple Applications in a Database or Multiple Databases in a Cluster .....	12-3
Scalability of Oracle RAC .....	12-4
<b>General Design Considerations for Oracle RAC</b> .....	12-5
<b>General Database Deployment Topics for Oracle RAC</b> .....	12-5
Tablespace Use in Oracle RAC .....	12-6
Object Creation and Performance in Oracle RAC .....	12-6
Node Addition and Deletion and the SYSAUX Tablespace in Oracle RAC .....	12-6
Distributed Transactions and Oracle RAC .....	12-6
Deploying OLTP Applications in Oracle RAC .....	12-7
Flexible Implementation with Cache Fusion .....	12-7
Deploying Data Warehouse Applications with Oracle RAC .....	12-7
Speed-Up for Data Warehouse Applications on Oracle RAC .....	12-7
Parallel Execution in Data Warehouse Systems and Oracle RAC .....	12-8
Data Security Considerations in Oracle RAC .....	12-8
Transparent Data Encryption and Wallets .....	12-8



Windows Firewall Considerations .....	12-9
---------------------------------------	------

## 13 Monitoring Performance

<b>Overview of Monitoring and Tuning Oracle RAC Databases.....</b>	<b>13-1</b>
Monitoring Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware .....	13-2
The Cluster Database Home Page .....	13-2
The Interconnects Page .....	13-3
The Cluster Performance Page.....	13-3
Tuning Oracle RAC Databases.....	13-4
<b>Verifying the Interconnect Settings for Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>13-4</b>
<b>Influencing Interconnect Processing.....</b>	<b>13-5</b>
<b>Performance Views in Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>13-6</b>
<b>Creating Oracle RAC Data Dictionary Views with CATCLUST.SQL.....</b>	<b>13-6</b>
<b>Oracle RAC Performance Statistics .....</b>	<b>13-6</b>
<b>Automatic Workload Repository in Oracle RAC Environments .....</b>	<b>13-6</b>
<b>Active Session History Reports for Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>13-7</b>
Overview of ASH Reports for Oracle RAC .....	13-7
ASH Report for Oracle RAC: Top Cluster Events.....	13-8
ASH Report for Oracle RAC: Top Remote Instance.....	13-8
<b>Monitoring Oracle RAC Statistics and Wait Events .....</b>	<b>13-8</b>
Oracle RAC Statistics and Events in AWR and Statspack Reports.....	13-8
Oracle RAC Wait Events .....	13-9
Monitoring Performance by Analyzing GCS and GES Statistics .....	13-9
Analyzing the Effect of Cache Fusion in Oracle RAC .....	13-9
Analyzing Performance Using GCS and GES Statistics .....	13-10
Analyzing Cache Fusion Transfer Impact Using GCS Statistics .....	13-10
Analyzing Response Times Based on Wait Events .....	13-11
Block-Related Wait Events.....	13-11
Message-Related Wait Events .....	13-12
Contention-Related Wait Events .....	13-12
Load-Related Wait Events .....	13-13

## A Server Control Utility Reference

<b>Using SRVCTL.....</b>	<b>A-2</b>
Overview of SRVCTL .....	A-3
Operational Notes for SRVCTL.....	A-4
Usage Information .....	A-4
Character Set and Case Sensitivity of Object Values .....	A-5
Summary of Tasks for Which SRVCTL Is Used .....	A-5
Using SRVCTL Help.....	A-6
Privileges and Security.....	A-6
Additional Topics on SRVCTL.....	A-8
Deprecated Subprograms or Commands .....	A-9
<b>SRVCTL Command Reference .....</b>	<b>A-11</b>
add.....	A-14
srvctl add asm.....	A-14

srvctl add cvu .....	A-15
srvctl add database .....	A-15
srvctl add filesystem .....	A-17
srvctl add gns.....	A-18
srvctl add instance .....	A-19
srvctl add listener.....	A-19
srvctl add network.....	A-20
srvctl add nodeapps .....	A-21
srvctl add oc4j.....	A-22
srvctl add ons.....	A-22
srvctl add scan.....	A-23
srvctl add scan_listener .....	A-24
srvctl add service .....	A-24
srvctl add srvpool .....	A-27
srvctl add vip .....	A-28
config.....	A-29
srvctl config asm .....	A-29
srvctl config cvu .....	A-30
srvctl config database .....	A-30
srvctl config filesystem.....	A-31
srvctl config gns .....	A-31
srvctl config listener.....	A-32
srvctl config nodeapps .....	A-32
srvctl config oc4j.....	A-33
srvctl config ons .....	A-33
srvctl config scan.....	A-33
srvctl config scan_listener.....	A-34
srvctl config service .....	A-34
srvctl config srvpool .....	A-35
srvctl config vip.....	A-36
convert .....	A-37
disable .....	A-38
srvctl disable asm.....	A-39
srvctl disable cvu.....	A-39
srvctl disable database.....	A-40
srvctl disable diskgroup.....	A-40
srvctl disable filesystem .....	A-41
srvctl disable gns.....	A-41
srvctl disable instance.....	A-41
srvctl disable listener .....	A-42
srvctl disable nodeapps.....	A-42
srvctl disable oc4j .....	A-43
srvctl disable ons.....	A-43
srvctl disable scan .....	A-43
srvctl disable scan_listener .....	A-44
srvctl disable service.....	A-44
srvctl disable vip .....	A-45

downgrade .....	A-46
srvctl downgrade database.....	A-46
enable .....	A-47
srvctl enable asm.....	A-47
srvctl enable cvu.....	A-48
srvctl enable database.....	A-48
srvctl enable diskgroup.....	A-49
srvctl enable filesystem .....	A-49
srvctl enable gns.....	A-49
srvctl enable instance.....	A-50
srvctl enable listener .....	A-50
srvctl enable nodeapps.....	A-51
srvctl enable oc4j.....	A-51
srvctl enable ons.....	A-52
srvctl enable scan .....	A-52
srvctl enable scan_listener .....	A-52
srvctl enable service.....	A-53
srvctl enable vip .....	A-53
getenv.....	A-55
srvctl getenv asm.....	A-55
srvctl getenv database .....	A-55
srvctl getenv listener.....	A-56
srvctl getenv nodeapps .....	A-56
srvctl getenv vip.....	A-57
modify.....	A-58
srvctl modify asm.....	A-58
srvctl modify cvu .....	A-59
srvctl modify database .....	A-59
srvctl modify filesystem.....	A-62
srvctl modify gns.....	A-62
srvctl modify instance .....	A-62
srvctl modify listener.....	A-63
srvctl modify network.....	A-64
srvctl modify nodeapps .....	A-65
srvctl modify oc4j.....	A-66
srvctl modify ons.....	A-66
srvctl modify scan.....	A-66
srvctl modify scan_listener .....	A-67
srvctl modify service .....	A-67
srvctl modify srvpool .....	A-71
relocate.....	A-72
srvctl relocate cvu .....	A-72
srvctl relocate database .....	A-73
srvctl relocate gns.....	A-73
srvctl relocate oc4j.....	A-74
srvctl relocate scan .....	A-74
srvctl relocate scan_listener .....	A-75

srvctl relocate server .....	A-75
srvctl relocate service.....	A-76
srvctl relocate vip .....	A-76
remove .....	A-78
srvctl remove asm .....	A-79
srvctl remove cvu .....	A-79
srvctl remove database.....	A-79
srvctl remove diskgroup .....	A-80
srvctl remove filesystem .....	A-80
srvctl remove gns .....	A-81
srvctl remove instance.....	A-81
srvctl remove listener .....	A-82
srvctl remove nodeapps.....	A-82
srvctl remove oc4j .....	A-83
srvctl remove ons .....	A-83
srvctl remove scan.....	A-83
srvctl remove scan_listener .....	A-84
srvctl remove service .....	A-84
srvctl remove srvpool.....	A-85
srvctl remove vip .....	A-85
setenv .....	A-86
srvctl setenv asm .....	A-86
srvctl setenv database.....	A-86
srvctl setenv listener .....	A-87
srvctl setenv nodeapps.....	A-87
srvctl setenv vip .....	A-88
start.....	A-89
srvctl start asm.....	A-89
srvctl start cvu .....	A-90
srvctl start database .....	A-90
srvctl start diskgroup .....	A-91
srvctl start filesystem.....	A-92
srvctl start gns.....	A-92
srvctl start home.....	A-93
srvctl start instance .....	A-93
srvctl start listener.....	A-94
srvctl start nodeapps .....	A-94
srvctl start oc4j.....	A-95
srvctl start ons.....	A-95
srvctl start scan .....	A-95
srvctl start scan_listener .....	A-96
srvctl start service.....	A-97
srvctl start vip .....	A-98
status .....	A-99
srvctl status asm .....	A-99
srvctl status cvu.....	A-100
srvctl status database.....	A-100

srvctl status diskgroup .....	A-101
srvctl status filesystem .....	A-101
srvctl status gns .....	A-102
srvctl status home .....	A-102
srvctl status instance.....	A-103
srvctl status listener .....	A-104
srvctl status nodeapps.....	A-104
srvctl status oc4j .....	A-104
srvctl status ons .....	A-105
srvctl status scan .....	A-105
srvctl status scan_listener .....	A-105
srvctl status server .....	A-106
srvctl status service.....	A-106
srvctl status srvpool.....	A-107
srvctl status vip .....	A-107
stop .....	A-109
srvctl stop asm.....	A-110
srvctl stop cvu.....	A-110
srvctl stop database.....	A-111
srvctl stop diskgroup.....	A-111
srvctl stop filesystem .....	A-112
srvctl stop gns.....	A-112
srvctl stop home .....	A-113
srvctl stop instance.....	A-113
srvctl stop listener .....	A-114
srvctl stop nodeapps.....	A-115
srvctl stop oc4j .....	A-115
srvctl stop ons .....	A-116
srvctl stop scan .....	A-116
srvctl stop scan_listener .....	A-117
srvctl stop service.....	A-117
srvctl stop vip .....	A-118
unsetenv.....	A-119
srvctl unsetenv asm .....	A-119
srvctl unsetenv database .....	A-119
srvctl unsetenv listener .....	A-120
srvctl unsetenv nodeapps .....	A-120
srvctl unsetenv vip.....	A-121
upgrade.....	A-122
srvctl upgrade database .....	A-122

## **B Troubleshooting Oracle RAC**

<b>Where to Find Files for Analyzing Errors.....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Managing Diagnostic Data in Oracle RAC .....</b>	<b>B-2</b>
<b>Using Instance-Specific Alert Files in Oracle RAC.....</b>	<b>B-2</b>
<b>Enabling Tracing for Java-Based Tools and Utilities in Oracle RAC .....</b>	<b>B-3</b>
<b>Resolving Pending Shutdown Issues.....</b>	<b>B-3</b>

How to Determine If Oracle RAC Instances Are Using the Private Network .....	B-3
--	-----

## **C Oracle RAC Database (RACDB) Plug-in**

## **D Oracle RAC Configuration Audit Tool**

RACcheck Features .....	D-2
RACcheck Usage .....	D-4
Using RACcheck.....	D-9
Troubleshooting RACcheck .....	D-16

## **Glossary**

## **Index**

## List of Tables

3-1	How SQL*Plus Commands Affect Instances .....	3-5
3-2	Descriptions of V\$ACTIVE_INSTANCES Columns .....	3-9
3-3	Initialization Parameters Specific to Oracle RAC.....	3-15
3-4	Parameters That Should Have Identical Settings on All Instances .....	3-18
5-1	FAN Event Types.....	5-15
5-2	Event Parameter Name-Value Pairs and Descriptions.....	5-15
5-3	FAN Parameters and Matching Session Information.....	5-16
5-4	Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events.....	5-19
6-1	Archived Redo Log File Name Format Parameters.....	6-5
6-2	UNIX/NFS Location Log Examples, Noncluster File System Local Archiving .....	6-8
6-3	UNIX/NFS Configuration for Shared Read Local Archiving Examples.....	6-8
8-1	clone.pl Script Parameters .....	8-4
8-2	Environment Variables Passed to the clone.pl Script.....	8-5
8-3	Cloning Parameters Passed to the clone.pl Script.....	8-6
8-4	Finding the Location of the Oracle Inventory Directory .....	8-7
10-1	Variables in the DBCA Silent Mode Syntax .....	10-5
A-1	String Restrictions for SRVCTL Object Names.....	A-5
A-2	Deprecated Commands and Options for SRVCTL .....	A-9
A-3	Summary of SRVCTL Commands.....	A-11
A-4	Object Keywords and Abbreviations .....	A-12
A-5	srvctl add Summary .....	A-14
A-6	srvctl add cvu Options .....	A-15
A-7	srvctl add database Options .....	A-16
A-8	srvctl add filesystem Options.....	A-18
A-9	srvctl add gns Options .....	A-19
A-10	srvctl add instance Options .....	A-19
A-11	srvctl add listener Options.....	A-20
A-12	srvctl add network Options.....	A-20
A-13	srvctl add nodeapps Options .....	A-21
A-14	srvctl add ons Options .....	A-23
A-15	srvctl add scan Options.....	A-23
A-16	srvctl add scan_listener Options.....	A-24
A-17	srvctl add service Options .....	A-25
A-18	srvctl add srvpool Options .....	A-27
A-19	srvctl add vip Options.....	A-28
A-20	srvctl config Summary .....	A-29
A-21	srvctl config asm Options .....	A-30
A-22	srvctl config database Options.....	A-30
A-23	srvctl config filesystem Options.....	A-31
A-24	srvctl config gns Options .....	A-32
A-25	srvctl config listener Options .....	A-32
A-26	srvctl config nodeapps Option.....	A-33
A-27	srvctl config service Options .....	A-34
A-28	srvctl config vip Options.....	A-36
A-29	srvctl convert database Options.....	A-37
A-30	srvctl disable Summary .....	A-38
A-31	srvctl disable asm Options.....	A-39
A-32	srvctl disable cvu Options .....	A-40
A-33	srvctl disable database Options .....	A-40
A-34	srvctl disable diskgroup Options.....	A-40
A-35	srvctl disable filesystem Options.....	A-41
A-36	srvctl disable gns Options.....	A-41
A-37	srvctl disable instance Options .....	A-42

A-38	srvctl disable listener Options.....	A-42
A-39	srvctl disable nodeapps Options .....	A-43
A-40	srvctl disable oc4j Options.....	A-43
A-41	srvctl disable service Options.....	A-44
A-42	srvctl disable vip Options.....	A-45
A-43	srvctl downgrade database Options .....	A-46
A-44	srvctl enable Summary.....	A-47
A-45	srvctl enable asm Option .....	A-48
A-46	srvctl enable cvu Options .....	A-48
A-47	srvctl enable database Options .....	A-48
A-48	srvctl enable diskgroup Options.....	A-49
A-49	srvctl enable filesystem Options.....	A-49
A-50	srvctl enable gns Options.....	A-50
A-51	srvctl enable instance Option .....	A-50
A-52	srvctl enable listener Options.....	A-50
A-53	srvctl enable nodeapps Options.....	A-51
A-54	srvctl enable oc4j Options .....	A-51
A-55	srvctl enable service Options.....	A-53
A-56	srvctl enable vip Options .....	A-54
A-57	srvctl getenv Summary .....	A-55
A-58	srvctl getenv asm Options .....	A-55
A-59	srvctl getenv database Options.....	A-55
A-60	srvctl getenv listener Options .....	A-56
A-61	srvctl getenv nodeapps Options .....	A-56
A-62	srvctl getenv vip Options.....	A-57
A-63	srvctl modify Summary .....	A-58
A-64	srvctl modify asm Options .....	A-59
A-65	srvctl modify cvu Options .....	A-59
A-66	srvctl modify database Options.....	A-60
A-67	srvctl modify filesystem Options.....	A-62
A-68	srvctl modify gns Options .....	A-62
A-69	srvctl modify instance Options .....	A-63
A-70	srvctl modify listener Options.....	A-63
A-71	srvctl modify network Options.....	A-64
A-72	srvctl modify nodeapps Options .....	A-65
A-73	srvctl modify oc4j Options.....	A-66
A-74	srvctl modify ons Options .....	A-66
A-75	srvctl modify scan_listener Options.....	A-67
A-76	srvctl modify service Options for Moving a Service.....	A-68
A-77	srvctl modify service Options for Changing an Available Instance to a Preferred Instance..	
	<b>A-69</b>	
A-78	srvctl modify service Options for Changing Available and Preferred Status of Multiple Instances	<b>A-69</b>
A-79	srvctl modify service Options .....	A-70
A-80	srvctl modify srvpool Options .....	A-71
A-81	srvctl relocate Summary .....	A-72
A-82	srvctl relocate cvu Options .....	A-72
A-83	srvctl relocate database Options .....	A-73
A-84	srvctl relocate gns Options .....	A-74
A-85	srvctl relocate oc4j Options.....	A-74
A-86	srvctl relocate scan Options.....	A-75
A-87	srvctl relocate scan_listener Options.....	A-75
A-88	srvctl relocate server Options.....	A-76
A-89	srvctl relocate service Options .....	A-76
A-90	srvctl relocate vip Options.....	A-77



A-91	srvctl remove Summary .....	A-78
A-92	srvctl remove database Options.....	A-80
A-93	srvctl remove diskgroup Options.....	A-80
A-94	srvctl remove filesystem Options .....	A-80
A-95	srvctl remove instance Options.....	A-81
A-96	srvctl remove listener Options .....	A-82
A-97	srvctl remove nodeapps Options.....	A-83
A-98	srvctl remove oc4j Options .....	A-83
A-99	srvctl remove ons Options .....	A-83
A-100	srvctl remove service Options.....	A-84
A-101	srvctl remove vip Options .....	A-85
A-102	srvctl setenv Summary .....	A-86
A-103	srvctl setenv asm Options.....	A-86
A-104	srvctl setenv database Options .....	A-87
A-105	srvctl setenv listener Options .....	A-87
A-106	srvctl setenv nodeapps Options.....	A-88
A-107	srvctl setenv vip Options .....	A-88
A-108	srvctl start Summary .....	A-89
A-109	srvctl start asm Options .....	A-90
A-110	srvctl start cvu Options .....	A-90
A-111	srvctl start database Options .....	A-91
A-112	srvctl start diskgroup Options .....	A-92
A-113	srvctl start filesystem Options.....	A-92
A-114	srvctl start gns Options .....	A-92
A-115	srvctl start home Options.....	A-93
A-116	srvctl start instance Options .....	A-94
A-117	srvctl start listener Options.....	A-94
A-118	srvctl start nodeapps Options .....	A-95
A-119	srvctl start scan Options.....	A-96
A-120	srvctl start scan_listener Options.....	A-96
A-121	srvctl start service Options .....	A-97
A-122	srvctl start vip Options.....	A-98
A-123	srvctl status Summary .....	A-99
A-124	srvctl status asm Options.....	A-100
A-125	srvctl status cvu Options.....	A-100
A-126	srvctl status database Options .....	A-101
A-127	srvctl status diskgroup Options.....	A-101
A-128	srvctl status filesystem Options .....	A-102
A-129	srvctl status gns Options.....	A-102
A-130	srvctl status home Options .....	A-103
A-131	srvctl status instance Options.....	A-103
A-132	srvctl status listener Options.....	A-104
A-133	srvctl status oc4j Options .....	A-104
A-134	srvctl status scan Options .....	A-105
A-135	srvctl status scan_listener Options .....	A-106
A-136	srvctl status server Options .....	A-106
A-137	srvctl status service Options.....	A-107
A-138	srvctl status srvpool Options.....	A-107
A-139	srvctl status vip Options .....	A-108
A-140	srvctl stop Summary .....	A-109
A-141	srvctl stop asm Option .....	A-110
A-142	srvctl stop database Options .....	A-111
A-143	srvctl stop diskgroup Options.....	A-111
A-144	srvctl stop filesystem Options.....	A-112
A-145	srvctl stop gns Options.....	A-112

A-146	srvctl stop home Options .....	A-113
A-147	srvctl stop instance Options .....	A-114
A-148	srvctl stop listener Options .....	A-115
A-149	srvctl stop nodeapps Options .....	A-115
A-150	srvctl stop oc4j Options .....	A-116
A-151	srvctl stop scan Options .....	A-116
A-152	srvctl stop scan_listener Options .....	A-117
A-153	srvctl stop service Options .....	A-117
A-154	srvctl stop vip Options .....	A-118
A-155	srvctl unsetenv Command Summary .....	A-119
A-156	srvctl unsetenv asm Options .....	A-119
A-157	srvctl unsetenv database Options .....	A-119
A-158	srvctl unsetenv listener Options .....	A-120
A-159	srvctl unsetenv nodeapps Options .....	A-120
A-160	srvctl unsetenv vip Options .....	A-121
A-161	srvctl upgrade database Options .....	A-122
C-1	Oracle RAC Database Plug-in Introspection Parameters .....	C-1
C-2	Oracle RAC Database Plug-in Introspection Parameters (Prompted During Introspection). C-2	
C-3	Oracle RAC Database User Properties .....	C-3
C-4	Oracle RAC Database System Properties .....	C-3
D-1	RACcheck Options .....	D-5

---

---

# Preface

The *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide* describes the Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) architecture and provides an overview of this product, including Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node (Oracle RAC One Node). This book also describes administrative and deployment topics for Oracle RAC.

Information in this manual applies to Oracle RAC as it runs on all platforms unless otherwise noted. In addition, the content of this manual supplements administrative and deployment topics for noncluster Oracle databases that appear in other Oracle documentation. Where necessary, this manual refers to platform-specific documentation. This Preface contains these topics:

- [Audience](#)
- [Documentation Accessibility](#)
- [Related Documents](#)
- [Conventions](#)

## Audience

The *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide* is intended for database administrators, network administrators, and system administrators who perform the following tasks:

- Install and configure an Oracle RAC database
- Administer and manage Oracle RAC databases
- Manage and troubleshoot clusters and networks that use Oracle RAC

## Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

## Related Documents

This book, the *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide*, provides administration and application deployment information that is specific to Oracle RAC. The discussions herein assume a knowledge of Oracle Clusterware.

For more information, see the Oracle resources listed in this section.

- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide*  
This task-oriented guide helps you understand the basic steps required to install, configure, and administer Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC on a two-node system using Red Hat Linux system.
- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide*  
This is an essential companion book that describes Oracle Clusterware components such as the voting disks and the Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR).
- Platform-specific Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC installation guides  
Each platform-specific Oracle Database installation media contains a copy of an Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC platform-specific installation and configuration guide in HTML and PDF formats. These installation books contain the preinstallation, installation, and postinstallation information for the various UNIX, Linux, and Windows platforms on which Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC operate.
- *Oracle Database 2 Day DBA*
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Platform Guide for Microsoft Windows*
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Reference for Linux and UNIX*
- *Oracle Database 11g Administrator's Reference Release 1 (11.1) for UNIX Systems: AIX Systems, HP-UX, Linux, and the Solaris Operating System (SPARC)*

---

---

**Note:** Additional information for this release may be available in the Oracle Database 11g README or Release Notes. If these documents are available for this release, then they are on your Oracle product installation media.

---

---

Database error messages descriptions are available online or by way of a Tahiti documentation search.

## Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.

---

<b>Convention</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

---



---

---

# What's New in Oracle RAC Administration and Deployment?

This section describes the new administration and deployment features for Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) for Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.4), 11g release 2 (11.2.0.2), and 11g release 2 (11.2.0.1).

## Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.4) New Features in Oracle RAC

This section describes the Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.4) features for Oracle RAC administration and deployment.

- **Oracle RAC Configuration Audit Tool**

The Oracle RAC Configuration Audit Tool (RACcheck) assesses single instance and Oracle RAC database installations for known configuration issues, best practices, regular health checks, and pre- and post-upgrade best practices.

**See Also:** [Appendix D, "Oracle RAC Configuration Audit Tool"](#)

- **Oracle Trace File Analyzer Collector**

The Oracle Trace File Analyzer (TFA) Collector is a diagnostic collection utility to simplify diagnostic data collection for Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Grid Infrastructure, and Oracle RAC systems.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide*

## Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2) New Features in Oracle RAC

This section describes the Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.2) features for Oracle RAC administration and deployment.

- **Oracle RAC One Node**

Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node (Oracle RAC One Node) provides enhanced high availability for noncluster databases, protecting them from both planned and unplanned downtime. Oracle RAC One Node provides the following:

- Always-on noncluster database services
- Better consolidation for database servers
- Enhanced server virtualization

- Lower cost development and test platform for full Oracle RAC

In addition, Oracle RAC One Node facilitates the consolidation of database storage, standardizes your database environment, and, when necessary, enables you to upgrade to a full, multinode Oracle RAC database without downtime or disruption.

Online database relocation is a tool you can use to relocate an Oracle RAC One Node database from one node to another while maintaining service availability.

This feature includes enhancements to the Server Control Utility (SRVCTL) for both Oracle RAC One Node and online database relocation.

This feature also includes enhancements to the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) to enable you to use the tool to add an Oracle RAC One Node database.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 4, "Administering Oracle RAC One Node"](#)
- [Chapter 10, "Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Linux and UNIX Systems"](#)
- [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#)

- **Edition-Based Redefinition**

You can specify an edition attribute for a database service using SRVCTL. When you specify an edition attribute for a service, all subsequent connections that specify the service use this edition as the initial session edition.

Specifying an edition as a service attribute can help to manage resource usage. For example, services associated with an edition can be placed on a separate instance in an Oracle RAC environment, and the Oracle Database Resource Manager can manage resources used by different editions by associating resource plans with the corresponding services.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* for more information about edition-based redefinition
- [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for more information about enhancements to the `srvctl add service` and `srvctl modify service` commands

- **Enhancements to SRVCTL for Grid Infrastructure Management**

Enhancements to SRVCTL simplify the management of various new Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle RAC resources.

**See Also:**

- [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for more information about these additional commands
- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about the Cluster Verification Utility

- **Oracle Database Quality of Service Management Server**

The Oracle Database Quality of Service Management server allows system administrators to manage application service levels hosted in Oracle Database



clusters by correlating accurate runtime performance and resource metrics and analyzing with an expert system to produce recommended resource adjustments to meet policy-based performance objectives.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Quality of Service Management User's Guide* for more information

## Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.1) New Features in Oracle RAC

This section describes the Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.1) features for Oracle RAC administration and deployment.

- **Grid Plug and Play**

Grid Plug and Play reduces per-node configuration data and the need for explicit add and delete nodes steps, where possible. This allows a system administrator to take a template system image and run it on a node to be added with no further configuration. This removes many manual operations, reduces the opportunity for errors, and encourages configurations that can be changed more easily. Removal of the per-node configuration makes the nodes easier to replace because it is not required that they contain individual states that must be managed.

Grid Plug and Play also introduces simplified instance addition. When your databases are backed with **Oracle Managed Files** and Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM), recovery threads and undo tablespaces are automatically created for an instance that you add explicitly with the `srvctl add instance` command, or implicitly when a policy-managed database brings up a new instance.

All tools and utilities such as DBCA, the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant (NETCA), and SRVCTL have been updated to support Grid Plug and Play. Oracle Enterprise Manager, the graphical interface for managing Oracle RAC, provides management and monitoring for the Grid Plug and Play environment.

Grid Plug and Play reduces the cost of installing, configuring, and managing database nodes by making their per-node state disposable. Nodes can easily be replaced with regenerated state.

**See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide* for more information about Grid Plug and Play

- **Policy-based cluster and capacity management**

Oracle Clusterware allocates and reassigns capacity based on policies you define, enabling faster resource failover and dynamic capacity assignment using policy-based management.

Policy-based cluster and capacity management allows the efficient allocation of different types of applications in the cluster. Various applications can be hosted on a shared infrastructure, being isolated regarding their resource consumption by policies and, therefore, behave as if they were deployed in single-system environments. Policy-managed Oracle RAC databases use policy-based cluster management to provide the required resources for the workloads the database supports.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information

- **Role-separated management**

Role-separated management for Oracle Clusterware allows certain administrative tasks to be delegated to different people, representing different roles in the company. It is based on the idea of an administrator role, called CRS Administrator, that can create server pools and grant administrative tasks on a per resource basis. For example, if two databases are placed into the same cluster, the CRS Administrator can manage both databases in the cluster. But, the CRS Administrator can also decide to grant different administrative privileges to each DBA responsible for each one of those databases.

Role-separated management enables multiple applications and databases to share the same cluster and hardware resources, but ensures that different administration groups do not interfere with each other.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information

- **Improved Cluster Resource Modeling**

Oracle Clusterware can manage different types of applications and processes. You can create dependencies among the applications and processes and manage them as a single entity.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information

- **Oracle Enterprise Manager-based Oracle Clusterware resource management**

You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager to manage Oracle Clusterware resources. You can create and configure resources in Oracle Clusterware and also monitor and manage resources after they are deployed in the cluster.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information

- **Oracle Cluster Registry performance enhancements**

Improvements in the way Oracle Clusterware accesses Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) speed up relocation of services when a node fails. Oracle Clusterware now supports up to five copies of OCR for improved availability of the cluster and OCR can now be stored in Oracle ASM.

The tools to manage OCR have changed to support the new management options. Consistent storage management automation provides improved performance in Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC environments, and easier management of the cluster.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information

- **SRVCTL support for noncluster database**

Server Control Utility (SRVCTL) commands have been enhanced to manage the configuration in a standalone server using Oracle Restart. The new SRVCTL functionality enables you to register a noncluster database that can be managed by Oracle Clusterware. Once registered, Oracle Clusterware can start, stop, monitor, and restart the database instance.

The new SRVCTL functionality simplifies management of Oracle Database through a consistent interface that can be used from the console or scripted. An

improved management interface makes it easy to provide higher availability for noncluster databases that run on a server that is part of a cluster.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about using SRVCTL commands on a noncluster database
- [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for a list of SRVCTL commands

- **Enhanced Cluster Verification Utility**

New Cluster Verification Utility (CVU) functionality checks certain storage types and configurations. Also, more consideration is given to user-specific settings.

In addition to command-line commands, these checks are done through the Oracle Universal Installer, DBCA, and Oracle Enterprise Manager. These enhancements facilitate implementation and configuration of cluster environments and provide assistance in diagnosing problems in a cluster environment, improving configuration and installation.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about CVU commands

- **Oracle Enterprise Manager support for Grid Plug and Play**

You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager:

- To support the Grid Plug and Play environment
- To administer dynamic configuration use
- To manage Grid Plug and Play profiles and targets, such as hosts, clusters, and Oracle RAC databases and Oracle RAC database instances

Additionally, Oracle Enterprise Manager supports other Oracle RAC administration tasks, including:

- Monitoring
- Startup
- Shutdown
- Backup and recovery
- Tablespace management
- Node addition

- **Oracle Enterprise Manager provisioning for Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC**

The Oracle Enterprise Manager provisioning framework has been updated to reflect the changes to the installation and configuration of Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC. You can achieve easier implementation and management of a clustered database environment using the Oracle Enterprise Manager provisioning framework.

- **Zero downtime for patching Oracle RAC**

Patching Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC can be completed without taking the entire cluster down. This also allows for out-of-place upgrades to the cluster

software and Oracle Database, reducing the planned maintenance downtime required in an Oracle RAC environment.

- **Integrated support for application failover in an Oracle Data Guard configuration**

Applications connected to a primary database transparently failover to a new primary database when Oracle Data Guard changes roles. Clients integrated with Fast Application Notification (FAN) can achieve fast failover between primary and standby databases, in addition to fast failover within the cluster. Services have an attribute with which you can associate the service with a database role, such as `PHYSICAL_STANDBY`, so that the service is only active when the database is mounted in the associated role.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Data Guard Broker* for more information
- [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#)

- **Oracle ASM Dynamic Volume Manager**

The Oracle ASM Dynamic Volume Manager is a kernel-loadable device driver that provides a standard device driver interface to clients, such as the Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS). Oracle ASM Dynamic Volume Manager is the primary I/O interface for Oracle ACFS to perform I/O and build a file system using Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) as a volume manager. Oracle ASM Dynamic Volume Manager is loaded upon Oracle ASM startup, is cluster aware, and communicates with Oracle ASM for extent map information, extent rebalancing, and I/O failures.

Oracle ASM Dynamic Volume Manager provides a standard I/O interface allowing general-purpose file systems to leverage the full functionality of Oracle ASM as a volume manager. Files not directly supported by Oracle ASM, such as Oracle binaries, can now reside on ACFS on Oracle ASM volumes. This eliminates the need for third-party file systems or volume managers to host general-purpose files.

**See Also:** *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for more information

- **Oracle Enterprise Manager support for Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System**

Oracle Enterprise Manager provides a comprehensive management solution that extends Oracle ASM technology to support all customer application data files, both database and non-database, and in both single-host and cluster configurations. It also enhances existing Oracle Enterprise Manager support for Oracle ASM, and adds features to support the Oracle ASM Dynamic Volume Manager (ADVM) and Oracle ASM Cluster File System (ACFS) technology.

Oracle Enterprise Manager provides a graphical user interface that makes it easier to manage the environment, whether it is a standalone server or a cluster deployment of Oracle ASM. The centralized console provides a consistent interface for managing volumes, database files, file systems, and the Oracle Database.

**See Also:** *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for more information

- **Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System**

The Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS) provides a robust, modern, general purpose file system for files beyond the Oracle database files. Oracle ACFS also provides support for files such as Oracle binaries, report files, trace files, alert logs, and other application data files. With the addition of Oracle ACFS, Oracle ASM becomes a complete storage management solution for both Oracle database and non-database files.

Additionally, Oracle ACFS

- Supports large files with 64-bit file and file system data structure sizes leading to exabyte-capable file and file system capacities
- Uses extent-based storage allocation for improved performance
- Uses a log-based metadata transaction engine for file system integrity and fast recovery
- Can be exported to remote clients through industry standard protocols such as NFS and CIFS

Oracle ACFS complements and leverages Oracle ASM and provides a general purpose journaling file system for storing and managing non-Oracle database files. This eliminates the need for third-party cluster file system solutions, while streamlining, automating, and simplifying all file type management in both single node and Oracle RAC and Grid computing environments.

Oracle ACFS supports dynamic file system expansion and contraction without any downtime and is also highly available, leveraging the Oracle ASM mirroring and striping features in addition to hardware RAID functionality.

**See Also:** *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for more information about Oracle ACFS

- **Automatic Storage Management file access control**

This feature implements access control on Oracle ASM files on UNIX platforms to isolate itself and different database instances from each other and prevent unauthorized access. The feature includes SQL statements to grant, modify, and deny file permissions.

This feature enables multiple database instances to store their Oracle ASM files in the same disk group and enables consolidation of multiple databases, securely, to prevent database instances from accessing or overwriting files belonging to other database instances.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for more information
- ["Oracle Automatic Storage Management with Oracle RAC"](#) on page 2-4

- **Universal Connection Pool**

Universal Connection Pool (UCP) is a Java connection pool that replaces the deprecated JDBC Implicit Connection Cache with Oracle Database 11g (11.1.0.7). UCP is integrated with Oracle RAC to provide the following benefits:

- A single UCP can be leveraged by any Oracle component or user.

- Eliminates redundant connection pools from several Oracle Components, such as AOL/J, ADF Business Components, and TopLink.
- Provides consistent connection pool behavior for an Oracle component or product. For example, the connection pool sizes can be configured to provide consistent connection management behavior for an application.
- Provides JMX interfaces for the UCP Manager, which delivers a consistent management interface to manage the connection pool.
- UCP adapters can provide standards compliance for a specific connection type being pooled.
- Supports connection pooling for Oracle and non-Oracle connections.
- Supports pooling for any type of connections, including JDBC or JCA connections.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about configuring JDBC clients

- **Expose high availability events through a Java API**

You can access fast application notification (FAN) events with a simplified JAVA API if you are not using the Oracle connection pool features.

**See Also:** ["Fast Application Notification"](#) on page 5-12 for more information about FAN events

- **SRVCTL enhancements to support Grid Plug and Play**

This feature includes enhancements to the server control utility (SRVCTL) for the Grid Plug and Play feature.

**See Also:** [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for a list of SRVCTL commands

---

---

# Introduction to Oracle RAC

This chapter introduces Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) and describes how to install, administer, and deploy Oracle RAC.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview of Oracle RAC](#)
- [Overview of Oracle Clusterware for Oracle RAC](#)
- [Overview of Oracle RAC Architecture and Processing](#)
- [Overview of Automatic Workload Management](#)
- [Overview of Installing Oracle RAC](#)
- [Overview of Managing Oracle RAC Environments](#)

## Overview of Oracle RAC

A **cluster** comprises multiple interconnected computers or servers that appear as if they are one server to end users and applications. Oracle RAC enables you to cluster an Oracle database. Oracle RAC uses Oracle Clusterware for the infrastructure to bind multiple servers so they operate as a single system.

Oracle Clusterware is a portable cluster management solution that is integrated with Oracle Database. Oracle Clusterware is also a required component for using Oracle RAC. In addition, Oracle Clusterware enables both noncluster Oracle databases and Oracle RAC databases to use the Oracle high-availability infrastructure. Oracle Clusterware enables you to create a clustered pool of storage to be used by any combination of noncluster and Oracle RAC databases.

Oracle Clusterware is the only clusterware that you need for most platforms on which Oracle RAC operates. You can also use clusterware from other vendors if the clusterware is certified for Oracle RAC.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* and *Oracle Grid Infrastructure Installation Guide* for more details

Noncluster Oracle databases have a one-to-one relationship between the Oracle database and the instance. Oracle RAC environments, however, have a one-to-many relationship between the database and instances. An Oracle RAC database can have

up to 100 instances,<sup>1</sup> all of which access one database. All database instances must use the same interconnect, which can also be used by Oracle Clusterware.

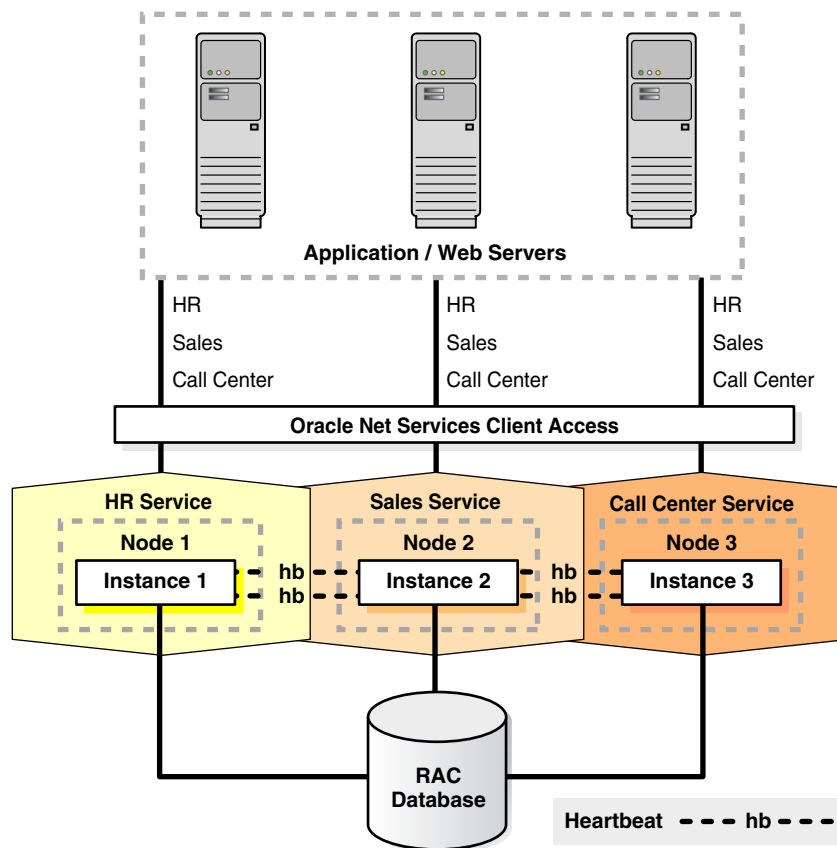
Oracle RAC databases differ architecturally from noncluster Oracle databases in that each Oracle RAC database instance also has:

- At least one additional thread of redo for each instance
- An instance-specific undo tablespace

The combined processing power of the multiple servers can provide greater throughput and Oracle RAC scalability than is available from a single server.

Figure 1–1 shows how Oracle RAC is the Oracle Database option that provides a single system image for multiple servers to access one Oracle database. In Oracle RAC, each Oracle instance must run on a separate server.

**Figure 1–1 Oracle Database with Oracle RAC Architecture**



Traditionally, an Oracle RAC environment is located in one data center. However, you can configure Oracle RAC on an **extended distance cluster**, which is an architecture that provides extremely fast recovery from a site failure and allows for all nodes, at all sites, to actively process transactions as part of a single database cluster. In an extended cluster, the nodes in the cluster are located in two buildings that are separated by greater distances (anywhere from across the street, to across a campus, or across a city). For availability reasons, the data must be located at both sites, thus requiring the implementation of disk mirroring technology for storage.

<sup>1</sup> For configurations running Oracle Database 10g release 2 (10.2) and later releases, Oracle Clusterware supports 100 nodes in a cluster, and Oracle RAC supports 100 instances in an Oracle RAC database.



If you choose to implement this architecture, you must assess whether this architecture is a good solution for your business, especially considering distance, latency, and the degree of protection it provides. Oracle RAC on extended clusters provides higher availability than is possible with local Oracle RAC configurations, but an extended cluster may not fulfill all of the disaster-recovery requirements of your organization. A feasible separation provides great protection for some disasters (for example, local power outage or server room flooding) but it cannot provide protection against all types of outages. For comprehensive protection against disasters—including protection against corruptions and regional disasters—Oracle recommends the use of Oracle Data Guard with Oracle RAC, as described in the *Oracle Database High Availability Overview* and on the Maximum Availability Architecture (MAA) Web site at <http://www.oracle.com/technology/Deploy/availability/htdocs/maa.htm>

Oracle RAC is a unique technology that provides high availability and scalability for all application types. The Oracle RAC infrastructure is also a key component for implementing the Oracle enterprise grid computing architecture. Having multiple instances access a single database prevents the server from being a single point of failure. Oracle RAC enables you to combine smaller commodity servers into a cluster to create scalable environments that support mission critical business applications. Applications that you deploy on Oracle RAC databases can operate without code changes.

## Overview of Oracle Clusterware for Oracle RAC

Oracle Clusterware provides a complete, integrated clusterware management solution on all Oracle Database platforms. This clusterware functionality provides all of the features required to manage your cluster database including node membership, group services, global resource management, and high availability functions.

You can install Oracle Clusterware independently or as a prerequisite to the Oracle RAC installation process. Oracle Database features, such as services, use the underlying Oracle Clusterware mechanisms to provide advanced capabilities. Oracle Database also continues to support select third-party clusterware products on specified platforms.

Oracle Clusterware is designed for, and tightly integrated with, Oracle RAC. You can use Oracle Clusterware to manage high-availability operations in a cluster. When you create an Oracle RAC database using any of the management tools, the database is registered with and managed by Oracle Clusterware, along with the other required components such as the Virtual Internet Protocol (VIP) address, the Single Client Access Name (SCAN), the SCAN listener, Oracle Notification Service, and the Oracle Net listeners. These resources are automatically started when Oracle Clusterware starts the node and automatically restarted if they fail. The Oracle Clusterware daemons run on each node.

Anything that Oracle Clusterware manages is known as a *CRS resource*. A CRS resource can be a database, an instance, a service, a listener, a VIP address, or an application process. Oracle Clusterware manages CRS resources based on the resource's configuration information that is stored in the Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR). You can use SRVCTL commands to administer any Oracle-defined CRS resources. Oracle Clusterware provides the framework that enables you to create CRS resources to manage any process running on servers in the cluster which are not predefined by Oracle. Oracle Clusterware stores the information that describes the configuration of these components in OCR that you can administer as described in the *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide*.

## Overview of Oracle RAC Architecture and Processing

At a minimum, Oracle RAC requires Oracle Clusterware software infrastructure to provide concurrent access to the same storage and the same set of data files from all nodes in the cluster, a communications protocol for enabling interprocess communication (IPC) across the nodes in the cluster, enable multiple database instances to process data as if the data resided on a logically combined, single cache, and a mechanism for monitoring and communicating the status of the nodes in the cluster.

The following sections describe these concepts in more detail:

- [Understanding Cluster-Aware Storage Solutions](#)
- [Overview of Connecting to Oracle Database Using Services and VIP Addresses](#)
- [About Oracle RAC Software Components](#)
- [About Oracle RAC Background Processes](#)

### Understanding Cluster-Aware Storage Solutions

An Oracle RAC database is a **shared everything** database. All data files, control files, SPFILEs,<sup>2</sup> and redo log files in Oracle RAC environments must reside on cluster-aware shared disks, so that all of the cluster database instances can access these storage components. Because Oracle RAC databases use a shared everything architecture, Oracle RAC requires cluster-aware storage for all database files.

In Oracle RAC, the Oracle Database software manages disk access and is certified for use on a variety of storage architectures. It is your choice how to configure your storage, but you must use a supported cluster-aware storage solution. Oracle Database provides the following file storage options for Oracle RAC:

- Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM)  
Oracle recommends this solution to manage your storage.
- A certified cluster file system, including OCFS2 and Oracle Cluster File System (OCFS for Windows)  
OCFS2 is available for Linux, and OCFS for Windows is available for Windows platforms. However you may optionally use a third-party cluster file system or cluster-aware volume manager that is certified for Oracle RAC.
- Certified network file system (NFS) file servers

### Overview of Connecting to Oracle Database Using Services and VIP Addresses

All **nodes** in an Oracle RAC environment must connect to a Local Area Network (LAN) to enable users and applications to access the database. Applications should use the Oracle Database services feature to connect to an Oracle database. Services enable you to define rules and characteristics to control how users and applications connect to database instances. These characteristics include a unique name, workload balancing and failover options, and high availability characteristics. Oracle Net Services enable the load balancing of application connections across all of the instances in an Oracle RAC database.

Users can access an Oracle RAC database using a client/server configuration or through one or more middle tiers, with or without connection pooling. Users can be

---

<sup>2</sup> Note that PFILE files do not need to be shared.

database administrators, developers, application users, power users, such as data miners who create their own searches, and so on.

Most public networks typically use TCP/IP, but you can use any supported hardware and software combination. Oracle RAC database instances should be accessed through the Single Client Access Name (SCAN) for the cluster.

**See Also:** ["Overview of Automatic Workload Management"](#) on page 1-7 for more information about SCANs

The interconnect network is a private network that connects all of the servers in the cluster. The interconnect network uses a switch (or multiple switches) that only the nodes in the cluster can access. Configure User Datagram Protocol (UDP) on a Gigabit Ethernet for your cluster interconnect. On Linux and UNIX systems, you can configure Oracle Clusterware to use either the UDP or Reliable Data Socket (RDS) protocols. Windows clusters use the TCP protocol. Crossover cables are not supported for use with Oracle Clusterware interconnects.

---



---

**Note:** Do not use the interconnect (the private network) for user communication, because [Cache Fusion](#) uses the interconnect for interinstance communication.

---



---

If a node fails, then the node's VIP address fails over to another node on which the VIP address can accept TCP connections, but it does not accept connections to the Oracle database. Generally, VIP addresses fail over when:

- The node on which a VIP address runs fails
- All interfaces for the VIP address fail
- All interfaces for the VIP address are disconnected from the network

Clients that attempt to connect to the VIP address receive a rapid `connection refused` error instead of waiting for TCP connect timeout messages. When the network on which the VIP is configured comes back online, Oracle Clusterware fails back the VIP to its home node where connections are accepted.

If you use Network Attached Storage (NAS), then you are required to configure a second private network. Access to this network is typically controlled by the vendor's software. The private network uses static IP addresses.

Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2) supports multiple public networks. Each network has its own subnet and each database service uses a particular network to access the Oracle RAC database. Each network is a resource managed by Oracle Clusterware.

You must also create a SCAN for each cluster, which is a single network name defined either in your organization's Domain Name Server (DNS) or in the Grid Naming Service (GNS) that round robins to three IP addresses. Oracle recommends that all connections to the Oracle RAC database use the SCAN in their client connection string. Incoming connections are load balanced across the active instances providing the requested service through the three SCAN listeners. With SCAN, you do not have to change the client connection even if the configuration of the cluster changes (nodes added or removed).

## About Oracle RAC Software Components

Oracle RAC databases generally have two or more database instances that each contain memory structures and background processes. An Oracle RAC database has

the same processes and memory structures as a noncluster Oracle database and additional processes and memory structures that are specific to Oracle RAC. Any one instance's database view is nearly identical to any other instance's view in the same Oracle RAC database; the view is a single system image of the environment.

Each instance has a buffer cache in its System Global Area (SGA). Using Cache Fusion, Oracle RAC environments logically combine each instance's buffer cache to enable the instances to process data as if the data resided on a logically combined, single cache.

---

---

**Note:** The SGA size requirements for Oracle RAC are greater than the SGA requirements for noncluster Oracle databases due to Cache Fusion.

---

---

To ensure that each Oracle RAC database instance obtains the block that it requires to satisfy a query or transaction, Oracle RAC instances use two processes, the Global Cache Service (GCS) and the Global Enqueue Service (GES). The GCS and GES maintain records of the statuses of each data file and each cached block using a Global Resource Directory (GRD). The GRD contents are distributed across all of the active instances, which effectively increases the size of the SGA for an Oracle RAC instance.

After one instance caches data, any other instance within the same cluster database can acquire a block image from another instance in the same database faster than by reading the block from disk. Therefore, Cache Fusion moves current blocks between instances rather than re-reading the blocks from disk. When a consistent block is needed or a changed block is required on another instance, Cache Fusion transfers the block image directly between the affected instances. Oracle RAC uses the private interconnect for interinstance communication and block transfers. The GES Monitor and the Instance Enqueue Process manage access to Cache Fusion resources and enqueue recovery processing.

## About Oracle RAC Background Processes

The GCS and GES processes, and the GRD collaborate to enable Cache Fusion. The Oracle RAC processes and their identifiers are as follows:

- **ACMS:** Atomic Controlfile to Memory Service (ACMS)  
In an Oracle RAC environment, the ACMS per-instance process is an agent that contributes to ensuring a distributed SGA memory update is either globally committed on success or globally aborted if a failure occurs.
- **GTX0-j:** Global Transaction Process  
The GTX0-j process provides transparent support for XA global transactions in an Oracle RAC environment. The database autotunes the number of these processes based on the workload of XA global transactions.
- **LMON:** Global Enqueue Service Monitor  
The LMON process monitors global enqueues and resources across the cluster and performs global enqueue recovery operations.
- **LMD:** Global Enqueue Service Daemon  
The LMD process manages incoming remote resource requests within each instance.
- **LMS:** Global Cache Service Process

The LMS process maintains records of the data file statuses and each cached block by recording information in a Global Resource Directory (GRD). The LMS process also controls the flow of messages to remote instances and manages global data block access and transmits block images between the buffer caches of different instances. This processing is part of the Cache Fusion feature.

- LCK0: Instance Enqueue Process

The LCK0 process manages non-Cache Fusion resource requests such as library and row cache requests.

- RMSn: Oracle RAC Management Processes (RMSn)

The RMSn processes perform manageability tasks for Oracle RAC. Tasks accomplished by an RMSn process include creation of resources related to Oracle RAC when new instances are added to the clusters.

- RSMN: Remote Slave Monitor manages background slave process creation and communication on remote instances. These background slave processes perform tasks on behalf of a coordinating process running in another instance.

---



---

**Note:** Many of the Oracle Database components that this section describes are in addition to the components that are described for noncluster Oracle databases in *Oracle Database Concepts*.

---



---

## Overview of Automatic Workload Management

Automatic workload management enables you to manage the distribution of workloads to provide optimal performance for users and applications. This includes providing the highest availability for database connections, rapid failure recovery, and balancing workloads optimally across the active configuration. Oracle Database with Oracle RAC includes many features that can enhance automatic workload management, such as connection load balancing, fast connection failover, the load balancing advisory, and runtime connection load balancing. Automatic workload management provides the greatest benefits to Oracle RAC environments. You can, however, take advantage of automatic workload management by using Oracle Database services in noncluster Oracle databases, especially those that use Oracle Data Guard or Oracle Streams.

Automatic workload management includes the following components:

- **High Availability Framework:** The Oracle RAC high availability framework enables Oracle Database to always maintain components in a running state. Oracle high availability implies that Oracle Clusterware monitors and restarts critical components if they stop, unless you override the restart processing. Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC also provide alerts to clients when configurations change, enabling clients to immediately react to the changes, enabling application developers to hide outages and reconfigurations from end users. The scope of Oracle high availability spans from the restarting of stopped Oracle Database processes in an Oracle database instance to failing over the processing of an entire instance to other available instances.
- **Single Client Access Name (SCAN):** A single network name and IP addresses defined either in your DNS or GNS that all clients should use to access the Oracle RAC database. With SCAN, you are no longer required to modify your clients when changes occur to the cluster configuration. SCAN also allows clients to use an Easy Connect string to provide load balancing and failover connections to the Oracle RAC database.

---

---

**Note:** SCAN is required regardless of whether you use GNS. If you use GNS, then Oracle automatically creates the SCAN. If you do not use GNS, then you must define the SCAN in DNS.

---

---

- **Load Balancing Advisory:** This is the ability of the database to provide information to applications about the current service levels being provided by the database and its instances. Applications can take advantage of this information to direct connection requests to the instance that provides the application request with the best service quality to complete the application's processing. Oracle Database has integrated its Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) and Oracle Data Provider for .NET (ODP.NET) connection pools to work with the load balancing information. Applications can use the integrated connection pools without programmatic changes.
- **Services:** Oracle Database provides a powerful automatic workload management facility, called services, to enable the enterprise grid vision. Services are entities that you can define in Oracle RAC databases. Services enable you to group database workloads and route the work to the optimal instances that are assigned to process the service. Furthermore, you can use services to define the resources that Oracle Database assigns to process workloads and to monitor workload resources. Applications that you assign to services transparently acquire the defined automatic workload management characteristics, including high availability and load balancing rules. Many Oracle Database features are integrated with services, such as Resource Manager, which enables you to restrict the resources that a service can use within an instance. Some database features are also integrated with Oracle Streams, Advanced Queuing (to achieve queue location transparency), and Oracle Scheduler (to map services to specific job classes).

In Oracle RAC databases, the service performance rules that you configure control the amount of work that Oracle Database allocates to each available instance for that service. As you extend your database by adding nodes, applications, components of applications, and so on, you can add more services.

- **Server Pools:** Server pools enable the CRS Administrator to create a policy which defines how Oracle Clusterware allocates resources. An Oracle RAC policy-managed database runs in a server pool. Oracle Clusterware attempts to keep the required number of servers in the server pool and, therefore, the required number of instances of the Oracle RAC database. A server can be in only one server pool at any time. However, a database can run in multiple server pools. Cluster-managed services run in a server pool where they are defined as either UNIFORM (active on all instances in the server pool) or SINGLETON (active on only one instance in the server pool).
- **Connection Load Balancing:** Oracle Net Services provides connection load balancing for database connections. Connection load balancing occurs when the connection is created. Connections for a given service are balanced across all of the running instances that offer the service. You should define how you want connections to be balanced in the service definition. However, you must still configure Oracle Net Services. When you enable the load balancing advisory, the listener uses the load balancing advisory for connection load balancing.

**See Also:** [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#)

## Overview of Installing Oracle RAC

Install Oracle Clusterware and Oracle Database software using Oracle Universal Installer, and create your database with Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA). This ensures that your Oracle RAC environment has the optimal network configuration, database structure, and parameter settings for the environment that you selected. As a database administrator, after installation your tasks are to administer your Oracle RAC environment at three levels:

- Instance Administration
- Database Administration
- Cluster Administration

This section introduces the installation processes for Oracle RAC under the following topics:

- [Understanding Compatibility in Oracle RAC Environments](#)
- [Overview of Oracle RAC Installation and Database Creation](#)
- [Overview of Extending the Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle RAC Software](#)

---

---

**Note:** You must first install Oracle Clusterware before installing Oracle RAC. See *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information.

---

---

## Understanding Compatibility in Oracle RAC Environments

To run Oracle RAC in configurations with different versions of the database in the same cluster, you must also install clusterware. For example, to run Oracle9i and Oracle Database 10g in the same cluster:

- For Oracle RAC nodes running the Oracle9i database, you must install an Oracle9i cluster:
  - For UNIX, the clusterware can be HACMP, Serviceguard, Sun Clusterware, or Veritas SF
  - For Windows and Linux, the cluster is Oracle Cluster Manager
- If you want to install Oracle RAC running Oracle Database 10g or later releases, you must also install Oracle Clusterware. For Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2), this means you must first install the Oracle Grid Infrastructure for a cluster. See your platform-specific *Oracle Grid Infrastructure Installation Guide* and the *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information.
- If you run Oracle RAC 10g and Oracle RAC 11g in the same cluster, you must run Oracle Clusterware 11g (only)

Oracle requires that you install the Oracle9i RAC software first if you are going to run it in a cluster with Oracle RAC 10g or Oracle RAC 11g.

---

---

**Note:** If you are adding Oracle RAC to servers that are part of a cluster, either migrate to Oracle Clusterware or ensure the clusterware you run is supported to run with Oracle RAC 10g or later releases and ensure you have installed the correct options for the two to work together. Oracle strongly recommends that you do not run different cluster software on the same servers unless they are certified to work together.

---

---

## Overview of Oracle RAC Installation and Database Creation

Once you have installed Oracle Clusterware and it is operational, run Oracle Universal Installer to install the Oracle database software with Oracle RAC components.

During the installation, you can select to create a database during the database home installation. Oracle Universal Installer runs DBCA to create your Oracle RAC database according to the options that you select.

---

---

**Note:** A prerequisite of creating a database is that a default listener must be running in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home. If a default listener is not present in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home, then DBCA returns an error instructing you to run NETCA from the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home to create a default listener.

---

---

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for more information about NETCA

Oracle RAC software is distributed as part of the Oracle Database installation media. By default, the Oracle Database software installation process installs the Oracle RAC option when it recognizes that you are performing the installation on a cluster. Oracle Universal Installer installs Oracle RAC into a directory structure referred to as the Oracle home, which is separate from the Oracle home directory for other Oracle software running on the system. Because Oracle Universal Installer is cluster aware, it installs Oracle RAC software on all of the nodes that you defined to be part of the cluster.

Oracle recommends that you select Oracle ASM during the installation to simplify storage management; Oracle ASM automatically manages the storage of all database files within disk groups. If you plan to use Oracle Database Standard Edition to create an Oracle RAC database, then you *must* use Oracle ASM to store all of the database files.

---

---

**Note:** You must configure Oracle ASM separately prior to creating an Oracle RAC database.

---

---

By default, Oracle Database creates one service for your Oracle RAC installation. This service is for the database. The default database service is typically identified using the combination of the DB\_NAME and DB\_DOMAIN initialization parameters: *db\_name.db\_domain*. The default service is available on all instances in an Oracle RAC environment, unless the database is in restricted mode.



---

---

**Note:** Avoid changing host names after you complete the Oracle Clusterware installation, including adding or deleting domain qualifications. Nodes with changed host names must be deleted from the cluster and added back with the new name.

---

---

## Overview of Extending the Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle RAC Software

You can extend Oracle RAC in grid environments to additional nodes by copying cloned images of the Oracle RAC database home to other nodes in the cluster. Oracle cloning copies images of the software to other nodes that have similar hardware and software. Cloning is best suited to a scenario where you must quickly extend your Oracle RAC environment to several nodes of the same configuration.

Oracle provides the following methods of extending Oracle RAC environments:

- Oracle cloning procedure using cloning scripts

**See Also:** [Chapter 8, "Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster"](#)

- Oracle Enterprise Manager cloning
- The `addNode.sh` (`addNode.bat` on Windows) script and Oracle Universal Installer cloning

---

---

**Note:** Oracle cloning is not a replacement for Oracle Enterprise Manager cloning that is part of the Provisioning Pack. During Oracle Enterprise Manager cloning, the provisioning process includes a series of steps where details about the home you want to capture, the location you want to deploy to, and various other parameters are collected.

---

---

For new installations or if you install only one Oracle RAC database, you should use the traditional automated and interactive installation methods, such as Oracle Universal Installer, or the Provisioning Pack feature of Oracle Enterprise Manager. If your goal is to add or delete Oracle RAC from nodes in the cluster, you can use the procedures detailed in [Chapter 10, "Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Linux and UNIX Systems"](#).

The cloning process assumes that you successfully installed an Oracle Clusterware home and an Oracle home with Oracle RAC on at least one node. In addition, all root scripts must have run successfully on the node from which you are extending your cluster database.

At a high level, Oracle cloning involves the following main tasks:

1. Clone the Oracle Clusterware home following the instructions in *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide*.

2. Clone the Oracle home with the Oracle RAC software.

The process for cloning the Oracle home onto new nodes is similar to the process for cloning the Oracle Clusterware home.

3. If you have not yet created a database, then run DBCA to create one.
4. Follow the post-cloning procedures to complete the extension of your Oracle RAC environment onto the new nodes.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 8, "Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster"](#)
- [Chapter 10, "Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Linux and UNIX Systems"](#) for information about adding and deleting nodes and instances
- [Chapter 11, "Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Windows Systems"](#) for information about adding and deleting nodes and instances
- Oracle Enterprise Manager online Help system for more information about the Provisioning Pack

## Overview of Managing Oracle RAC Environments

This section describes the following Oracle RAC environment management topics:

- [About Designing and Deploying Oracle RAC Environments](#)
- [About Administrative Tools for Oracle RAC Environments](#)
- [About Monitoring Oracle RAC Environments](#)
- [About Evaluating Performance in Oracle RAC Environments](#)

## About Designing and Deploying Oracle RAC Environments

Any enterprise that is designing and implementing a high availability strategy with Oracle RAC must begin by performing a thorough analysis of the business drivers that require high availability. An analysis of business requirements for high availability combined with an understanding of the level of investment required to implement different high availability solutions enables the development of a high availability architecture that achieves both business and technical objectives.

**See Also:** For help choosing and implementing the architecture that best fits your availability requirements:

- [Chapter 12, "Design and Deployment Techniques"](#) provides a high-level overview you can use to evaluate the high availability requirements of your business.
- *Oracle Database High Availability Overview* describes how to select the most suitable architecture for your organization, describes several high availability architectures, and provides guidelines for choosing the one that best meets your requirements.
- Information about the Oracle Maximum Availability Architecture at

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/features/availability/maa-090890.html>

Oracle RAC provides a new method to manage your clustered database. Traditionally, databases were administrator managed, where a DBA managed each instance of the database by defining specific instances to run on specific nodes in the cluster. To help implement dynamic grid configurations, Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2) introduces *policy-managed* databases, where the DBA is required only to define the *cardinality* (number of database instances required). Oracle Clusterware manages the allocation of

nodes to run the instances and Oracle RAC allocates the required redo threads and undo tablespaces, as needed.

---

---

**Note:** Automatic allocation of the required redo threads and undo tablespaces only happens when the database uses Oracle Managed Files.

---

---

## About Administrative Tools for Oracle RAC Environments

Oracle enables you to administer a cluster database as a single system image through Oracle Enterprise Manager, SQL\*Plus, or through Oracle RAC command-line interfaces such as Server Control Utility (SRVCTL):

- **Oracle Enterprise Manager:** Oracle Enterprise Manager has both the Database Control and Grid Control GUI interfaces for managing both noncluster database and Oracle RAC database environments. Oracle recommends that you use Oracle Enterprise Manager to perform administrative tasks whenever feasible.

You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control to also manage Oracle RAC One Node databases.

- **Server Control Utility (SRVCTL):** SRVCTL is a command-line interface that you can use to manage an Oracle RAC database from a single point. You can use SRVCTL to start and stop the database and instances and to delete or move instances and services. You can also use SRVCTL to manage configuration information, Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node (Oracle RAC One Node), Oracle Clusterware, and Oracle ASM.
- **SQL\*Plus:** SQL\*Plus commands operate on the current instance. The current instance can be either the local default instance on which you initiated your SQL\*Plus session, or it can be a remote instance to which you connect with Oracle Net Services.
- **Cluster Verification Utility (CVU):** CVU is a command-line tool that you can use to verify a range of cluster and Oracle RAC components, such as shared storage devices, networking configurations, system requirements, and Oracle Clusterware, in addition to operating system groups and users. You can use CVU for preinstallation checks and for postinstallation checks of your cluster environment. CVU is especially useful during preinstallation and during installation of Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC components. Oracle Universal Installer runs CVU after installing Oracle Clusterware and Oracle Database to verify your environment.

Install and use CVU before you install Oracle RAC to ensure that your configuration meets the minimum Oracle RAC installation requirements. Also, use CVU for verifying the completion of ongoing administrative tasks, such as node addition and node deletion.

- **DBCA:** DBCA is the recommended method for creating and initially configuring Oracle RAC, Oracle RAC One Node, and Oracle noncluster databases.
- **NETCA:** Configures the network for your Oracle RAC environment.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 3, "Administering Database Instances and Cluster Databases"](#) for an introduction to Oracle RAC administration using Oracle Enterprise Manager, SQL\*Plus, and the SRVCTL utility
- ["Monitoring Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware"](#) on page 13-2
- [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for SRVCTL reference information
- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about the Cluster Verification Utility (CVU), in addition to other Oracle Clusterware tools, such as the OIFCFG tool for allocating and deallocating network interfaces and the OCRCONFIG command-line tool for managing OCR
- *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for more information about NETCA

## About Monitoring Oracle RAC Environments

Web-based Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control and Grid Control enable you to monitor an Oracle RAC database. The Oracle Enterprise Manager Console is a central point of control for the Oracle environment that you access by way of a graphical user interface (GUI). See ["Monitoring Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware"](#) on page 13-2 and the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for detailed information about using Oracle Enterprise Manager to monitor Oracle RAC environments.

Also, note the following recommendations about monitoring Oracle RAC environments:

- Use the Oracle Enterprise Manager Console to initiate cluster database management tasks.
- Use Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control to administer multiple Oracle RAC databases. You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control to manage individual Oracle RAC databases.
- Use the global views (GV\$ views), which are based on V\$ views. The `catclustdb.sql` script creates the GV\$ views. Run this script if you do not create your database with DBCA. Otherwise, DBCA runs this script for you.

For almost every V\$ view, there is a corresponding global GV\$ view. In addition to the V\$ information, each GV\$ view contains an extra column named `INST_ID`, which displays the instance number from which the associated V\$ view information was obtained.

- Use the sophisticated management and monitoring features of the Oracle Database Diagnostic and Tuning packs within Oracle Enterprise Manager that include the Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (ADDM) and AWR.

---

---

**Note:** Although Statspack is available for backward compatibility, Statspack provides reporting only. You must run Statspack at level 7 to collect statistics related to block contention and segment block waits.

---

---

**See Also:**

- The *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* describes the Oracle Database automatic features for performance diagnosing and tuning, including ADDM.
- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about monitoring performance and troubleshooting

## About Evaluating Performance in Oracle RAC Environments

You do not need to perform special tuning for Oracle RAC; Oracle RAC scales without special configuration changes. If your application performs well on a noncluster Oracle database, then it will perform well in an Oracle RAC environment. Many of the tuning tasks that you would perform on a noncluster Oracle database can also improve Oracle RAC database performance. This is especially true if your environment requires scalability across a greater number of CPUs.

Some of the performance features specific to Oracle RAC include:

- Dynamic resource allocation
  - Oracle Database dynamically allocates Cache Fusion resources as needed
  - The dynamic mastering of resources improves performance by keeping resources local to data blocks
- Cache Fusion enables a simplified tuning methodology
  - You do not have to tune any parameters for Cache Fusion
  - No application-level tuning is necessary
  - You can use a bottom-up tuning approach with virtually no effect on your existing applications
- More detailed performance statistics
  - More views for Oracle RAC performance monitoring
  - Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control and Grid Control are integrated with Oracle RAC



---

---

## Administering Storage

This chapter describes storage topics, such as Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM), in Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environments.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview of Storage in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Optimal Flexible Architecture](#)
- [Data File Access in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Redo Log File Storage in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Automatic Undo Management in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Oracle Automatic Storage Management with Oracle RAC](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide*
- *Oracle Grid Infrastructure Installation Guide*
- *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide*

### Overview of Storage in Oracle RAC

All data files (including an undo tablespace for each instance) and redo log files (at least two for each instance) must reside in an Oracle ASM disk group, on a [cluster file system](#), or on shared raw devices. In addition, Oracle recommends that you use one shared server parameter file (SPFILE) with instance-specific entries. Alternatively, you can use a local file system to store instance-specific parameter files (PFILES).

---

---

**Notes:**

- Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) does not support shared raw devices for this release, nor does DBCA allow PFILES. However, you can use SQL commands to configure data files on shared raw devices.
  - If you are using the IBM General Parallel File System (GPFS), then you can use the same file system for all purposes, including using it for the Oracle home directory and for storing data files and logs. For optimal performance, you should use a large GPFS block size (typically, at least 512 KB). GPFS is designed for scalability, and there is no requirement to create multiple GPFS file systems as long as the amount of data fits in a single GPFS file system.
- 
-

Unless otherwise noted, Oracle Database storage features such as Oracle ASM, Oracle Managed Files, automatic segment-space management, and so on, function the same in Oracle RAC environments as they do in noncluster Oracle database environments.

**See Also:** For additional information about these storage features:

- *Oracle Database 2 Day DBA*
- *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*

If you do not use Oracle ASM, if your platform does not support a cluster file system, or if you do not want to use a cluster file system for database file storage, then create additional raw devices as described in your platform-specific Oracle RAC installation and configuration guide. However, Oracle recommends that you use Oracle ASM for database file storage, as described in "[Oracle Automatic Storage Management with Oracle RAC](#)" on page 2-4.

---

---

**Notes:**

- If you use raw devices, then you cannot use DBCA.
  - To create an Oracle RAC database using Oracle Database Standard Edition, you must use Oracle ASM for your database storage.
- 
- 

## Optimal Flexible Architecture

Optimal Flexible Architecture (OFA) ensures reliable installations and improves software manageability. This feature streamlines the way in which Oracle software installations are organized, thereby simplifying the on-going management of your installations and improves manageability by making default Oracle Database installs more compliant with OFA specifications.

During installation, you are prompted to specify an Oracle base (ORACLE\_BASE) location, which is owned by the user performing the installation. You can choose an existing ORACLE\_BASE, or choose another directory location that does not have the structure for an ORACLE\_BASE directory.

Using an Oracle base directory helps to facilitate the organization of Oracle installations, and helps to ensure that installations of multiple databases maintain an OFA configuration. During the installation, ORACLE\_BASE is the only required input, because the Oracle home uses a default value based on the value chosen for ORACLE\_BASE. In addition, Oracle recommends that you set the ORACLE\_BASE and ORACLE\_HOME environment variables when starting databases. Note that ORACLE\_BASE may become a required environment variable for database startup in a future release.

**See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide* installation guide for more information about specifying an ORACLE\_BASE directory

## Data File Access in Oracle RAC

All Oracle RAC instances must be able to access all data files. If a data file must be recovered when the database is opened, then the first Oracle RAC instance to start is the instance that performs the recovery and verifies access to the file. As other instances start, they also verify their access to the data files. Similarly, when you add a



tablespace or data file or bring a tablespace or data file online, all instances verify access to the file or files.

If you add a data file to a disk that other instances cannot access, then verification fails. Verification also fails if instances access different copies of the same data file. If verification fails for any instance, then diagnose and fix the problem. Then run the `ALTER SYSTEM CHECK DATAFILES` statement on each instance to verify data file access.

## Redo Log File Storage in Oracle RAC

If you increase the cardinality of a server pool in a policy-managed database, and a new server is allocated to the server pool, then Oracle starts an instance on the new server if you have Oracle Managed Files enabled. If the instance starts and there is no thread or redo log file available, then Oracle automatically enables a thread of redo and allocates the associated redo log files if the database uses Oracle ASM or any cluster file system.

You should create redo log groups only if you are using administrator-managed databases. For policy-managed databases, increase the cardinality and when the instance starts, if you are using Oracle Managed Files and Oracle ASM, then Oracle automatically allocates the thread, redo, and undo.

For administrator-managed databases, each instance has its own online redo log groups. Create these redo log groups and establish group members. To add a redo log group to a specific instance, specify the `INSTANCE` clause in the `ALTER DATABASE ADD LOGFILE` statement. If you do not specify the instance when adding the redo log group, then the redo log group is added to the instance to which you are currently connected.

### See Also:

- ["About Designing and Deploying Oracle RAC Environments"](#) on page 1-12 for more information about administrator and policy management for databases
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about creating redo log groups and establishing group members
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the `ALTER DATABASE ADD LOGFILE SQL` statement

Each instance must have at least two groups of redo log files. You must allocate the redo log groups before enabling a new instance with the `ALTER DATABASE ENABLE INSTANCE instance_name` command. When the current group fills, an instance begins writing to the next log file group. If your database is in ARCHIVELOG mode, then each instance must save filled online log groups as archived redo log files that are tracked in the control file.

During database recovery, all enabled instances are checked to see if recovery is needed. If you remove an instance from your Oracle RAC database, then you should disable the instance's thread of redo so that Oracle does not have to check the thread during database recovery.

## Automatic Undo Management in Oracle RAC

Oracle Database automatically manages undo segments within a specific undo tablespace that is assigned to an instance. Only the instance assigned to the undo

tablespace can modify the contents of that tablespace. However, instances can always read all undo blocks throughout the **cluster** environment for consistent read purposes. Also, any instance can update any undo tablespace during transaction recovery, if that undo tablespace is not currently used by another instance for undo generation or transaction recovery.

You assign undo tablespaces in your Oracle RAC administrator-managed database by specifying a different value for the `UNDO_TABLESPACE` parameter for each instance in your SPFILE or individual PFILEs. For policy-managed databases, Oracle automatically allocates the undo tablespace when the instance starts if you have Oracle Managed Files enabled. You cannot simultaneously use automatic undo management and manual undo management in an Oracle RAC database. In other words, all instances of an Oracle RAC database must operate in the same undo mode.

**See Also:**

- ["Setting SPFILE Parameter Values for Oracle RAC"](#) on page 3-12 for information about modifying SPFILE parameters
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for detailed information about creating and managing undo tablespaces

## Oracle Automatic Storage Management with Oracle RAC

Oracle ASM automatically maximizes I/O performance by managing the storage configuration across the disks that Oracle ASM manages. Oracle ASM does this by evenly distributing the database files across all of the available storage assigned to the disk groups within Oracle ASM in your **cluster database** environment. Oracle ASM partitions your total disk space requirements into uniformly sized units across all disks in a disk group. Oracle ASM can also automatically mirror data to prevent data loss. Because of these features, Oracle ASM also significantly reduces your administrative overhead.

Oracle ASM instances are created on each node where you install Oracle Clusterware. Each Oracle ASM instance has either an SPFILE or PFILE type parameter file. Oracle recommends that you back up the parameter files and the TNS entries for nondefault Oracle Net listeners.

To use Oracle ASM with Oracle RAC, select Oracle ASM as your storage option when you create your database with the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA). As in noncluster Oracle databases, using Oracle ASM with Oracle RAC does not require I/O tuning.

The following topics describe Oracle ASM and Oracle ASM administration, as follows:

- [Storage Management in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Modifying Disk Group Configurations for Oracle ASM](#)
- [Oracle ASM Disk Group Management](#)
- [Configuring Preferred Mirror Read Disks in Extended Distance Clusters](#)
- [Converting Nonclustered Oracle ASM to Clustered Oracle ASM](#)
- [Administering Oracle ASM Instances with SRVCTL in Oracle RAC](#)

**See Also:** *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for complete information about managing Oracle ASM

## Storage Management in Oracle RAC

You can create Oracle ASM disk groups and configure mirroring for Oracle ASM disk groups using the Oracle ASM configuration assistant (ASMCA). After your Oracle RAC database is operational, you can administer Oracle ASM disk groups with Oracle Enterprise Manager.

The Oracle tools that you use to manage Oracle ASM, including ASMCA, Oracle Enterprise Manager, and the silent mode install and upgrade commands, include options to manage Oracle ASM instances and disk groups.

You can use the Cluster Verification Utility (CVU) to verify the integrity of Oracle ASM across the **cluster**. Typically, this check ensures that the Oracle ASM instances on all nodes run from the same Oracle home and, if `asmlib` exists, that it is a valid version and has valid ownership. Run the following command to perform this check:

```
cluvfy comp asm [-n node_list] [-verbose]
```

Replace `node_list` with a comma-delimited list of node names on which the check is to be performed. Specify `all` to check all nodes in the cluster.

Use the `cluvfy comp ssa` command to locate shared storage.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about CVU

## Modifying Disk Group Configurations for Oracle ASM

When you create a disk group for a cluster or add new disks to an existing clustered disk group, prepare the underlying physical storage on shared disks and give the Oracle user permission to read and write to the disk. The shared disk requirement is the only substantial difference between using Oracle ASM with an Oracle RAC database compared to using it with a noncluster Oracle database. Oracle ASM automatically re-balances the storage load after you add or delete a disk or disk group.

In a cluster, each Oracle ASM instance manages its node's metadata updates to the disk groups. In addition, each Oracle ASM instance coordinates disk group metadata with other nodes in the cluster. As with noncluster Oracle databases, you can use Oracle Enterprise Manager, ASMCA, SQL\*Plus, and the Server Control Utility (SRVCTL) to administer disk groups for Oracle ASM that are used by Oracle RAC. The *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* explains how to use SQL\*Plus to administer Oracle ASM instances. Subsequent sections describe how to use the other tools.

---

---

**Note:** When you start ASMCA, if there is not an Oracle ASM instance, then the utility prompts you to create one.

---

---

## Oracle ASM Disk Group Management

To use Oracle ASM, you must first create disk groups with ASMCA before creating a database with DBCA. You can also use the Oracle ASM disk group management feature to create and manage an Oracle ASM instance and its associated disk groups independently of creating a database. You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager or DBCA to add disks to a disk group, to mount a disk group or to mount all of the disk groups, or to create Oracle ASM instances. Additionally, you can use Oracle Enterprise Manager to dismount and drop disk groups or to delete Oracle ASM instances.

Oracle ASM instances are created when you install Oracle Clusterware. To create an Oracle ASM disk group, run ASMCA from the *Grid\_home/bin* directory. You can also use the Oracle ASM Disk Groups page in ASMCA for Oracle ASM management. That is, you can configure Oracle ASM storage separately from database creation. For example, from the ASM Disk Groups page, you can create disk groups, add disks to existing disk groups, or mount disk groups that are not currently mounted.

**See Also:** *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for information about managing Oracle ASM

When you start ASMCA, if the Oracle ASM instance has not been created, then ASMCA prompts you to create the instance. ASMCA prompts you for the `sysasm` password and the `ASMSNMP` password.

## Configuring Preferred Mirror Read Disks in Extended Distance Clusters

When you configure Oracle ASM **failure groups**, it may be more efficient for a node to read from an extent that is closest to the node, even if that extent is a secondary extent. You can configure Oracle ASM to read from a secondary extent if that extent is closer to the node instead of Oracle ASM reading from the primary copy which might be farther from the node. Using preferred read failure groups is most beneficial in an **extended distance cluster**.

To configure this feature, set the `ASM_PREFERRED_READ_FAILURE_GROUPS` initialization parameter to specify a list of failure group names as preferred read disks. Oracle recommends that you configure at least one mirrored extent copy from a disk that is local to a node in an extended cluster. However, a failure group that is preferred for one instance might be remote to another instance in the same Oracle RAC database. The parameter setting for preferred read failure groups is instance specific.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for complete information about configuring preferred mirror read disks in extended distance clusters
- *Oracle Database Reference* for information about the `ASM_PREFERRED_READ_FAILURE_GROUPS` initialization parameter

## Converting Nonclustered Oracle ASM to Clustered Oracle ASM

When installing Oracle Grid Infrastructure, any nonclustered Oracle ASM instances are automatically converted to clustered Oracle ASM.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for information about using Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control to convert nonclustered Oracle ASM to clustered Oracle ASM
- *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for complete information about configuring preferred mirror read disks in extended distance clusters
- *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide* for your platform for detailed information about converting Oracle ASM using the `rconfig` command

## Administering Oracle ASM Instances with SRVCTL in Oracle RAC

You can use the Server Control Utility (SRVCTL) to add or remove an Oracle ASM instance. To issue SRVCTL commands to manage Oracle ASM, log in as the operating system user that owns the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home and issue the SRVCTL commands from the bin directory of the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home.

Use the following syntax to add an Oracle ASM instance:

```
srvctl add asm
```

Use the following syntax to remove an Oracle ASM instance:

```
srvctl remove asm [-f]
```

You can also use SRVCTL to start, stop, and obtain the status of an Oracle ASM instance as in the following examples.

Use the following syntax to start an Oracle ASM instance:

```
srvctl start asm [-n node_name] [-o start_options]
```

Use the following syntax to stop an Oracle ASM instance:

```
srvctl stop asm [-n node_name] [-o stop_options]
```

Use the following syntax to show the configuration of an Oracle ASM instance:

```
srvctl config asm -n node_name
```

Use the following syntax to display the state of an Oracle ASM instance:

```
srvctl status asm [-n node_name]
```

### See Also:

- [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for more SRVCTL commands you can use to administer Oracle ASM
- *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for more information about administering Oracle ASM instances



---

---

## Administering Database Instances and Cluster Databases

This chapter describes how to administer Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) databases and database instances.

The topics in this chapter include:

- [Tools for Administering Oracle RAC](#)
- [Starting and Stopping Instances and Oracle RAC Databases](#)
- [Verifying That Instances are Running](#)
- [Terminating Sessions On a Specific Cluster Instance](#)
- [Overview of Initialization Parameter Files in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Initialization Parameter Use in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Converting an Administrator-Managed Database to a Policy-Managed Database](#)
- [Quiescing Oracle RAC Databases](#)
- [Administering Multiple Cluster Interconnects on Linux and UNIX Platforms](#)
- [Customizing How Oracle Clusterware Manages Oracle RAC Databases](#)
- [Advanced Oracle Enterprise Manager Administration](#)

**See Also:** The Oracle Enterprise Manager online help for more information about Oracle Enterprise Manager

### Tools for Administering Oracle RAC

The following sections introduce Oracle RAC administration using the three tools that you commonly use to manage Oracle RAC databases and instances: Oracle Enterprise Manager, SQL\*Plus, and the SRVCTL utility. In many cases, you use these tools the same way to manage Oracle RAC environments as you would use them manage noncluster Oracle databases:

- [Overview of Oracle RAC Database Administration](#)
- [Administering Oracle RAC with Oracle Enterprise Manager](#)
- [Administering Oracle RAC with SQL\\*Plus](#)
- [Administering Oracle RAC with SRVCTL](#)

## Overview of Oracle RAC Database Administration

Prior to Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2), DBAs had to hard-code parameters, such as database instance number and redo threads, to allocate specific Oracle RAC database instances to nodes within the cluster. If a node in the cluster does not start, then the database instance does not start. In Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2.0.2), this method of managing your Oracle RAC database continues to be available. An Oracle RAC database managed in this manner is referred to as an **administrator-managed database**. Administrator-managed databases include pre-11g release 2 (11.2) Oracle databases and upgraded Oracle databases. You can manage these databases using the same commands or methods (such as DBCA or Oracle Enterprise Manager) you used with previous releases of Oracle Database. All commands and utilities maintain backward compatibility.

With Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2), you define a database as a resource in Oracle Clusterware. The resource is automatically created when you create your database with DBCA or the resource can be manually created by adding your database with SRVCTL. This resource contains the Oracle home, the SPFILE, one or more server pools, and one or more Oracle ASM disk groups required for the database. The database resource also has a *weak start dependency* on the VIP, which means that the resource tries to start the VIP for the node when the database instance starts. If the VIP does not start successfully, then the instance still starts but the service does not. The database service resource depends on a running VIP.

When you review the database resource for an administrator-managed database, you see a server pool defined with the same name as the Oracle database. This server pool is part of a special Oracle-defined server pool called *Generic*. Oracle RAC manages the Generic server pool to support administrator-managed databases. When you add or remove an administrator-managed database using either SRVCTL or DBCA, Oracle RAC creates or removes the server pools that are members of Generic. You cannot use SRVCTL or CRSCTL commands to modify the Generic server pool.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about defining resources, server pools, and resource dependencies

In Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2), Oracle introduces **policy-managed databases** to move away from any hard coding of parameters, and to help to replace nodes in a cluster or expand the cluster as requirements change. If you use policy-managed databases, then you must install the Oracle home software on every node in your cluster. Policy-managed databases must use Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) and cannot coexist on the same servers as administrator-managed databases.

---

---

**Note:** You cannot run more than one instance of the same database on the same node.

---

---

A policy-managed database is defined by *cardinality*, which is the number of database instances you want running during normal operations. A policy-managed database runs in one or more database server pools that are created in the cluster by a user assigned the CRS Administrator role, and it can run on different servers at different times. A database instance starts on all servers that are in the server pools defined for the database. If you are using Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) with Oracle Managed Files for your database storage, then, when an instance starts and there is no redo thread available, Oracle RAC automatically enables one and creates the required redo log files and undo tablespace. Clients can connect to a



policy-managed database using the same SCAN-based connect string no matter which servers they happen to be running on at the time.

**See Also:** ["Converting an Administrator-Managed Database to a Policy-Managed Database"](#) on page 3-19

### Using the Same Cluster for Administrator-Managed and Policy-Managed Databases

If you want to create an administrator-managed database on a cluster that already hosts policy-managed databases, then you must carefully select the nodes for the administrator-managed database. This is because the nodes that you select for an administrator-managed database that are in policy-managed server pools will be moved into the Generic server pool as part of this process.

If you select nodes that already run other policy-managed database instances, then DBCA prompts you with a message that lists the instances and services that will be shut down when DBCA creates the administrator-managed database. If you select the **Yes** button on the dialog box when DBCA asks "Do you want to continue?," then your policy-managed database instances and services will be shut down as a result of the administrator-managed database creation process.

---

---

**Note:** This is also true if you use the `srvctl add instance` command, which returns a similar error message indicating that the databases would be shut down. If you also use the force option (`-f`) with the `srvctl add instance` command, then this is the same as choosing **Yes** on the DBCA dialog. Doing this shuts down any policy-managed databases that are running on the node before moving the node into the Generic server pool.

---

---

## Administering Oracle RAC with Oracle Enterprise Manager

Oracle Enterprise Manager provides a central point of control for the Oracle RAC environment, allowing you to perform administrative tasks simultaneously on multiple cluster databases. It has both the Database Control and Grid Control graphical user interfaces (GUIs) for managing noncluster and Oracle RAC environments. Because there is one Oracle Enterprise Manager Agent on each node of an Oracle RAC database, for Database Control you can use any URL for that database to administer it with Oracle Enterprise Manager.

In Oracle Enterprise Manager, Oracle RAC-specific administrative tasks generally focus on two levels: tasks that affect an entire **cluster database** and tasks that affect specific instances. For example, you can use Oracle Enterprise Manager to start, stop, and monitor databases, cluster database instances, and their listeners, and to schedule jobs or set up alert thresholds for metrics. Or you can perform instance-specific commands such as setting parameters or creating resource plans. You can also use Oracle Enterprise Manager to manage schemas, security, and cluster database storage features.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for a task-oriented guide that explains how to use Oracle Enterprise Manager to perform routine Oracle RAC database administrative tasks
- ["Advanced Oracle Enterprise Manager Administration"](#) on page 3-25 for advanced administration tasks not covered in *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide*

## Administering Oracle RAC with SQL\*Plus

SQL\*Plus commands operate on the current instance. The current instance can be either the local default instance on which you initiated your SQL\*Plus session, or it can be a remote instance to which you connect with Oracle Net Services.

Because, by default, the SQL\*Plus prompt does not identify the current instance, you should direct your commands to the correct instance. Starting a SQL\*Plus session and connecting to the database without specifying an instance directs all SQL\*Plus commands to the local instance. In this case, the default instance is also the current instance.

To connect to a different instance in SQL\*Plus, issue a new `CONNECT` command and specify a remote instance net service name, as shown in the following example, where *password* is the password:

```
CONNECT user_name@net_service_name
Enter password: password
```

Connecting as `SYSOPER` or `SYSDBA` enables you to perform privileged operations, such as instance startup and shutdown. Multiple SQL\*Plus sessions can connect to the same instance at the same time. SQL\*Plus automatically disconnects you from the first instance whenever you connect to another one.

---

---

**Note:** Use the `SYSASM` privilege instead of the `SYSDBA` privilege to connect to and administer an Oracle ASM instance. If you use the `SYSDBA` privilege to connect to an Oracle ASM instance, then Oracle Database writes warnings to the alert log files because commands that run using the `SYSDBA` privilege on an Oracle ASM instance are deprecated.

See the *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for more information.

---

---

**See Also:**

- *SQL\*Plus User's Guide and Reference*
- *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for the proper specification of `net_service_name`
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about connecting to the database using `SYSDBA` or `SYSOPER` privileges

### Changing the SQL\*Plus Prompt

To change the SQL\*Plus prompt so that it includes the name of the current instance:

```
SET SQLPROMPT '_CONNECT_IDENTIFIER> '
```

This command replaces the "SQL" string in front of the greater than symbol (>) with the user variable `_CONNECT_IDENTIFIER` that displays the current instance name for the duration of your current session.

To change the prompt for all sessions automatically, add an entry similar to the following entry in your `glogin.sql` file, found in the SQL\*Plus administrative directory:

```
SET SQLPROMPT '_CONNECT_IDENTIFIER> '
```

You may include any other required text or SQL\*Plus user variable between the single quotes in the command.

### How SQL\*Plus Commands Affect Instances

Most SQL statements affect the current instance. You can use SQL\*Plus to start and stop instances in the Oracle RAC database. You do not need to run SQL\*Plus commands as `root` on Linux and UNIX systems or as `Administrator` on Windows systems. You need only the proper database account with the privileges that you normally use for a noncluster Oracle database. Some examples of how SQL\*Plus commands affect instances are:

- `ALTER SYSTEM CHECKPOINT LOCAL` affects only the instance to which you are currently connected, rather than the default instance or all instances.
- `ALTER SYSTEM CHECKPOINT` or `ALTER SYSTEM CHECKPOINT GLOBAL` affects *all* instances in the cluster database.
- `ALTER SYSTEM SWITCH LOGFILE` affects only the current instance.
  - To force a global log switch, use the `ALTER SYSTEM ARCHIVE LOG CURRENT` statement.
  - The `INSTANCE` option of `ALTER SYSTEM ARCHIVE LOG` enables you to archive each online redo log file for a specific instance.

Table 3–1 describes how SQL\*Plus commands affect instances.

**Table 3–1 How SQL\*Plus Commands Affect Instances**

SQL*Plus Command	Associated Instance
ARCHIVE LOG	Always affects the current instance.
CONNECT	Affects the default instance if no instance is specified in the <code>CONNECT</code> command.
HOST	Affects the node running the SQL*Plus session, regardless of the location of the current and default instances.
RECOVER	Does not affect any particular instance, but rather the database.
SHOW INSTANCE	Displays information about the current instance, which can be different from the default local instance if you have redirected your commands to a remote instance.
SHOW PARAMETER and SHOW SGA	Displays parameter and SGA information from the current instance.
STARTUP and SHUTDOWN	Always affects the current instance. These are privileged SQL*Plus commands.

## Administering Oracle RAC with SRVCTL

---

---

**Note:** if you currently set environment variables other than Oracle home and Oracle SID in your session or profile when accessing the Oracle database, then use the `srvctl setenv` command to set them for SRVCTL.

---

---

The Server Control Utility (SRVCTL) is a command-line interface that you can use to manage an Oracle RAC database from a single point. You can use SRVCTL to start and stop the database and instances, and to delete or move instances and services. You can also use SRVCTL to add services and manage configuration information, in addition to other resources in the cluster.

When you use SRVCTL to perform configuration operations on your cluster, SRVCTL stores configuration data in the Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR). SRVCTL performs other operations, such as starting and stopping instances, by configuring and managing Oracle Clusterware resources, which define agents that perform database startup and shutdown operations using Oracle Call Interface APIs.

**See Also:** [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for more information about SRVCTL

## Starting and Stopping Instances and Oracle RAC Databases

You can start and stop instances with Oracle Enterprise Manager, SQL\*Plus or SRVCTL as described in the following sections. Both Oracle Enterprise Manager and SRVCTL provide options to start and stop all of the instances in an Oracle RAC database with a single step.

You can only perform certain operations when the database is in a `NOMOUNT` or `MOUNT` state. Performing other operations requires that the database be `OPEN`. In addition, some operations require that only one instance be in the required state, while other operations require that all of the instances be in an identical state.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle does not support running more than one instance of the same database on the same node.

---

---

The procedures in the following sections discuss starting and stopping Oracle RAC database instances:

- [Overview of Starting and Stopping Oracle RAC Instances](#)
- [Starting and Stopping with Oracle Enterprise Manager](#)
- [Starting Up and Shutting Down with SQL\\*Plus](#)
- [Starting Up and Shutting Down with SRVCTL](#)

### Overview of Starting and Stopping Oracle RAC Instances

Before you can start an Oracle RAC instance, your clusterware and any required operating system-specific processes must be running. For more information about these processes, see your operating system documentation.

The procedure for shutting down Oracle RAC instances is identical to shutting down instances in noncluster Oracle databases, with the exceptions described here.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about shutting down Oracle databases

- In Oracle RAC, shutting down one instance does not interfere with the operation of other running instances.
- To shut down an Oracle RAC database completely, shut down every instance that has the database open or mounted.
- After a `NORMAL` or `IMMEDIATE` shutdown, instance recovery is not required. Recovery is required, however, after you issue the `SHUTDOWN ABORT` command or after an instance terminates abnormally. An instance that is still running performs instance recovery for the instance that shut down. If no other instances are running, the next instance to open the database performs instance recovery for any instances needing it.
- The `SHUTDOWN TRANSACTIONAL` command with the `LOCAL` option is useful to shutdown an instance after all active transactions on the instance have either committed or rolled back. This is in addition to what this command does for `SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE`. Transactions on other instances do not block this operation. If you omit the `LOCAL` option, then this operation waits until transactions on all other instances that started before the shutdown was issued either commit or rollback.

## Starting and Stopping with Oracle Enterprise Manager

See the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for step-by-step instructions on using Oracle Enterprise Manager to start or stop a cluster database instance or a cluster database.

## Starting Up and Shutting Down with SQL\*Plus

---

---

**Note:** This section assumes you are using an SPFILE.

---

---

If you want to start or stop just one instance and you are connected to your local node, you should first ensure that your current environment includes the SID for the local instance. Note that any subsequent commands in your session, whether inside or outside a SQL\*Plus session, are associated with that same SID.

To start or shutdown your local instance, initiate a SQL\*Plus session and connect with the `SYSDBA` or `SYSOPER` privilege and then issue the required command. For example to start and mount an instance on your local node, run the following commands in your SQL\*Plus session:

```
CONNECT / AS SYSDBA
STARTUP MOUNT
```

---

---

**Note:** If you use Oracle ASM disk groups, use the `SYSASM` privilege instead of the `SYSDBA` privilege to connect to and administer the Oracle ASM instances. See the *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for more information.

---

---

You can start multiple instances from a single SQL\*Plus session on one node using Oracle Net Services. Connect to each instance in turn by using a Net Services connection string, typically an instance-specific alias from your `TNSNAMES.ORA` file.

---

---

**Note:** To ensure that you connect to the correct instance, you must use an alias in the connect string that is associated with just one instance. If you use an alias to a service or with multiple addresses, you may not be connected to your intended instance.

---

---

For example, you can use a SQL\*Plus session on a local node to perform a transactional shutdown for two instances on remote nodes by connecting to each in turn using the instance's individual alias name. Assume the alias name for the first instance is `db1` and that the alias for the second instance is `db2`. Connect to the first instance and shut it down as follows:

```
CONNECT /@db1 AS SYSDBA
SHUTDOWN TRANSACTIONAL
```

Then connect to and shutdown the second instance by entering the following from your SQL\*Plus session:

```
CONNECT /@db2 AS SYSDBA
SHUTDOWN TRANSACTIONAL
```

It is not possible to start or stop multiple instances, simultaneously, with SQL\*Plus, so you cannot start or stop all of the instances for a cluster database with a single SQL\*Plus command. You may want to create a script that connects to each instance in turn and start it up and shut it down. However, you must maintain this script manually if you add or drop instances.

**See Also:** *SQL\*Plus User's Guide and Reference* for information about other startup and shut down keywords, such as `NOMOUNT`, `MOUNT`, `IMMEDIATE`, and so on

## Starting Up and Shutting Down with SRVCTL

---

---

**Note:** This section assumes that you are using an SPFILE for your database.

---

---

Enter the following SRVCTL syntax from the command line, providing the required database name and instance name, or include multiple instance names to start multiple specific instances:

To start administrator-managed databases, enter a comma-delimited list of instance names:

```
$ srvctl start instance -d db_unique_name -i instance_name_list [-o start_options]
```

In Windows you must enclose a comma-delimited list in double quotation marks (" ").

To start policy-managed databases, enter a single node name:

```
$ srvctl start instance -d db_unique_name -n node_name [-o start_options]
```

Note that this command also starts all enabled and non-running services that have AUTOMATIC management policy, and for which the database role matches one of the service's roles.

To stop one or more instances, enter the following SRVCTL syntax from the command line:

```
$ srvctl stop instance -d db_unique_name [ -i "instance_name_list" |
  -n node_name ] [ -o stop_options ]
```

You can enter either a comma-delimited list of instance names to stop several instances or you can enter a node name to stop one instance. In Windows you must enclose a comma-delimited list in double quotation marks (" ").

This command also stops the services related to the terminated instances on the nodes where the instances were running. As an example, the following command shuts down the two instances, orcl3 and orcl4, on the orcl database using the immediate stop option:

```
$ srvctl stop instance -d orcl -i "orcl3,orcl4" -o immediate
```

To start or stop your entire cluster database, that is, all of the instances and its enabled services, enter the following SRVCTL commands:

```
$ srvctl start database -d db_unique_name [-o start_options]
```

```
$ srvctl stop database -d db_unique_name [-o stop_options]
```

The following SRVCTL command, for example, mounts all of the non-running instances of an Oracle RAC database:

```
$ srvctl start database -d orcl -o mount
```

**See Also:** [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for information about SRVCTL options and information about other administrative tasks that you can perform with SRVCTL

## Verifying That Instances are Running

To verify that instances are running, on any node from a SQL\*Plus prompt enter the following, where *password* is the password:

```
CONNECT SYS/as SYSDBA
Enter password: password
SELECT * FROM V$ACTIVE_INSTANCES;
```

This query returns output similar to the following:

```
INST_NUMBER INST_NAME
-----
1          db1-sun:db1
2          db2-sun:db2
3          db3-sun:db3
```

The output columns for this example are shown in [Table 3–2](#).

**Table 3–2** Descriptions of V\$ACTIVE\_INSTANCES Columns

Column	Description
INST_NUMBER	Identifies the instance number.

**Table 3–2 (Cont.) Descriptions of V\$ACTIVE\_INSTANCES Columns**

Column	Description
INST_NAME	Identifies the host name and instance name as <i>host_name:instance_name</i> .

## Terminating Sessions On a Specific Cluster Instance

You can use the `ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION` statement to terminate a session on a specific instance. When a session is terminated, any active transactions of the session are rolled back, and resources held by the session (such as locks and memory areas) are immediately released and available to other sessions.

Using this statement enables you to maintain strict application service-level agreements in Oracle RAC environments. Often, the goal of a service-level agreement is to execute a transaction in a specified time limit. In an Oracle RAC environment, this may require terminating a transaction on an instance and retrying the transaction on another instance within a specified time frame.

To terminate sessions, follow these steps:

1. Query the value of the `INST_ID` column in the `GV$SESSION` dynamic performance view to identify which session to terminate.
2. Issue the `ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION` and specify the session index number (SID) and serial number of a session that you identified with the `GV$SESSION` dynamic performance view.

```
KILL SESSION 'integer1, integer2[, @integer3]'
```

- For *integer1*, specify the value of the `SID` column.
- For *integer2*, specify the value of the `SERIAL#` column.
- For the optional *integer3*, specify the ID of the instance where the session to be killed exists. You can find the instance ID by querying the `GV$` tables.

To use this statement, your instance must have the database open, and your session and the session to be terminated must be on the same instance unless you specify *integer3*.

If the session is performing some activity that must be completed, such as waiting for a reply from a remote database or rolling back a transaction, then Oracle Database waits for this activity to complete, marks the session as terminated, and then returns control to you. If the waiting lasts a minute, then Oracle Database marks the session to be terminated and returns control to you with a message that the session is marked to be terminated. The PMON background process then marks the session as terminated when the activity is complete.

The following examples provide three scenarios in which a user identifies and terminates a specific session. In each example, the `SYSDBA` first queries the `GV$SESSION` view for the `SCOTT` user's session to identify the session to terminate, and then runs the `ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION` statement to terminate the session on the instance.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day + Performance Tuning Guide* for examples of these procedures using Oracle Enterprise Manager



**Example 1 Identify and terminate the session on an busy instance**

In this example, assume that the executing session is SYSDBA on the instance INST\_ID=1. The ORA-00031 message is returned because some activity must be completed before the session can be terminated.

```
SQL> SELECT SID, SERIAL#, INST_ID FROM GV$SESSION WHERE USERNAME='SCOTT';
```

SID	SERIAL#	INST_ID
80	4	2

```
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION '80, 4, @2';
```

```
alter system kill session '80, 4, @2'
```

```
*
```

```
ERROR at line 1:
```

```
ORA-00031: session marked for kill
```

```
SQL>
```

**Example 2 Identify and terminate the session on an idle instance**

In this example, assume that the executing session is SYSDBA on the instance INST\_ID=1. The session on instance INST\_ID=2 is terminated immediately when Oracle Database executes the statement within 60 seconds.

```
SQL> SELECT SID, SERIAL#, INST_ID FROM GV$SESSION WHERE USERNAME='SCOTT';
```

SID	SERIAL#	INST_ID
80	6	2

```
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION '80, 6, @2';
```

```
System altered.
```

```
SQL>
```

**Example 3 Using the IMMEDIATE parameter**

The following example includes the optional IMMEDIATE clause to immediately terminate the session without waiting for outstanding activity to complete.

```
SQL> SELECT SID, SERIAL#, INST_ID FROM GV$SESSION WHERE USERNAME='SCOTT';
```

SID	SERIAL#	INST_ID
80	8	2

```
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION '80, 8, @2' IMMEDIATE;
```

```
System altered.
```

```
SQL>
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about terminating sessions

## Overview of Initialization Parameter Files in Oracle RAC

When you create the database, Oracle Database creates an SPFILE in the file location that you specify. This location can be an Oracle ASM disk group, a [cluster file system](#),

or a shared raw device. If you manually create your database, then Oracle recommends that you create an SPFILE from an initialization parameter file (PFILE).

---

---

**Note:** Oracle RAC uses a traditional PFILE only if an SPFILE does not exist or if you specify PFILE in your `STARTUP` command. Oracle recommends that you use an SPFILE to simplify administration, to maintain parameter setting consistency, and to guarantee parameter setting persistence across database shutdown and startup events. In addition, you can configure RMAN to back up your SPFILE.

---

---

All instances in the cluster database use the same SPFILE at startup. Because the SPFILE is a binary file, do not directly edit the SPFILE with an editor. Instead, change SPFILE parameter settings using Oracle Enterprise Manager or `ALTER SYSTEM SQL` statements.

When creating an SPFILE, if you include the `FROM MEMORY` clause (for example, `CREATE PFILE FROM MEMORY` or `CREATE SPFILE FROM MEMORY`), then the `CREATE` statement creates a PFILE or SPFILE using the current system-wide parameter settings. In an Oracle RAC environment, the created file contains the parameter settings from each instance. Because the `FROM MEMORY` clause requires all other instances to send their parameter settings to the instance that is trying to create the parameter file, the total execution time depends on the number of instances, the number of parameter settings on each instance, and the amount of data for these settings.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Setting SPFILE Parameter Values for Oracle RAC](#)
- [Parameter File Search Order in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Backing Up the Server Parameter File](#)

## Setting SPFILE Parameter Values for Oracle RAC

You can change SPFILE settings with Oracle Enterprise Manager or by using the `SET` clause of the `ALTER SYSTEM` statement.

---

---

**Note:** Modifying the SPFILE using tools other than Oracle Enterprise Manager or SQL\*Plus can corrupt the file and prevent database startup. To repair the file, you might be required to create a PFILE and then regenerate the SPFILE.

---

---

The examples in this section appear in ASCII text although the SPFILE is a binary file. Assume that you start an instance with an SPFILE containing the following entries:

```
*.OPEN_CURSORS=500
prod1.OPEN_CURSORS=1000
```

The value before the period (.) in an SPFILE entry identifies the instance to which the particular parameter value belongs. When an asterisk (\*) precedes the period, the value is applied to all instances that do not have a subsequent, individual value listed in the SPFILE.

For the instance with the Oracle system identifier (SID) `prod1`, the `OPEN_CURSORS` parameter is set to 1000 even though it has a database-wide setting of 500. Parameter

file entries that have the asterisk (\*) wildcard character only affect the instances without an instance-specific entry. This gives you control over parameter settings for instance `prod1`. These two types of settings can appear in any order in the parameter file.

If another DBA runs the following statement, then Oracle Database updates the setting on all instances except the instance with SID `prod1`:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET OPEN_CURSORS=1500 sid='' SCOPE=MEMORY;
```

Then if you run the following statement on another instance, the instance with sid `prod1` also assumes the new setting of 2000:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET OPEN_CURSORS=2000 sid='' SCOPE=MEMORY;
```

In the following example, the server parameter file contains these entries:

```
prod1.OPEN_CURSORS=1000
*.OPEN_CURSORS=500
```

Run the following statement to make Oracle Database disregard the first entry from the server parameter file:

```
ALTER SYSTEM RESET OPEN_CURSORS SCOPE=SPFILE;
```

Run the following statement to reset a parameter to its default value for instance `prod1` only:

```
ALTER SYSTEM RESET OPEN_CURSORS SCOPE=SPFILE SID='prod1';
```

## Parameter File Search Order in Oracle RAC

Oracle Database searches for your parameter file in a particular order depending on your platform.

On Linux and UNIX platforms, the search order is as follows:

1. `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs/spfilesid.ora`
2. `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs/spfile.ora`
3. `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs/initsid.ora`

On Windows platforms, the search order is as follows:

1. `%ORACLE_HOME%\database\spfilesid.ora`
2. `%ORACLE_HOME%\database\spfile.ora`
3. `%ORACLE_HOME%\database\initsid.ora`

---

**Note:** Oracle recommends that you do not use the default SPFILE names because all instances must use the same file and they all have different SIDs. Instead, store the SPFILE on Oracle ASM. If you store the SPFILE on a cluster file system, then use the following naming convention for the SPFILE: `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs/spfiledb_unique_name.ora`. Create a PFILE named `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs/initsid.ora` that contains the name `SPFILE=ORACLE_HOME/dbs/spfiledb_unique_name.ora`.

---

## Backing Up the Server Parameter File

Oracle recommends that you regularly back up the server parameter file for recovery purposes. Do this using Oracle Enterprise Manager (as described in the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide*) or use the `CREATE PFILE` statement. For example:

```
CREATE PFILE='?/dbs/initdbname.ora'  
FROM SPFILE='/dev/vx/rdsk/oracle_dg/dbspfile'
```

You can use Recovery Manager (RMAN) to create backups of the server parameter file. You can also recover an SPFILE by starting an instance using a client-side initialization parameter file. Then re-create the server parameter file using the `CREATE SPFILE` statement. Note that if the parameter file that you use for this operation was for a single instance, then the parameter file does not contain instance-specific values, even those that must be unique in Oracle RAC instances. Therefore, ensure that your parameter file contains the appropriate settings as described earlier in this chapter.

To ensure that your SPFILE (and control files) are automatically backed up by RMAN during typical backup operations, use Oracle Enterprise Manager or the `RMAN CONTROLFILE AUTOBACKUP` statement to enable the RMAN autobackup feature

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* to perform backup jobs using Oracle Enterprise Manager
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about the `CREATE SPFILE` statement
- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery Reference* for more information about the `CONTROLFILE AUTOBACKUP` statement

## Initialization Parameter Use in Oracle RAC

By default, most parameters are set to a default value and this value is the same across all instances. However, many initialization parameters can also have different values on different instances as described in [Table 3–3](#). Other parameters *must* either be unique or identical as described in the following sections

- [Parameters That Must Have Identical Settings on All Instances](#)
- [Parameters That Have Unique Settings on All Instances](#)
- [Parameters That Should Have Identical Settings on All Instances](#)

[Table 3–3](#) summarizes the initialization parameters used specifically for Oracle RAC databases.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Reference* for additional information about these and other initialization parameters

**Table 3–3 Initialization Parameters Specific to Oracle RAC**

Parameter	Description
ACTIVE_INSTANCE_COUNT	This initialization parameter is deprecated in Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2). Instead, use a service with one preferred and one available instance.
ASM_PREFERRED_READ_FAILURE_GROUPS	Specifies a set of disks to be the preferred disks from which to read mirror data copies. The values you set for this parameter are instance specific and need not be the same on all instances.
CLUSTER_DATABASE	Enables a database to be started in cluster mode. Set this parameter to TRUE.
CLUSTER_DATABASE_INSTANCES	<p>Oracle RAC uses this parameter to allocate adequate memory resources. It must be set to the same value on all instances.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ For policy-managed databases, Oracle internally sets this parameter to 16</li> <li>■ For administrator-managed databases, Oracle internally sets it to the number of configured Oracle RAC instances</li> </ul> <p>You can set this parameter to a value that is <i>greater than</i> the current number of instances, if you are planning to add instances. For policy-managed databases, you should set this parameter to a higher value only if you intend to run a database with more than 16 instances. In this case, set the parameter to the expected maximum number of instances on which this database will run.</p>
CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS	<p>Specifies an alternative cluster interconnect for the private network when there are multiple interconnects. The CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS initialization parameter is used only in Linux and UNIX environments where UDP IPC is enabled.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Oracle recommends that all Oracle databases and Oracle Clusterware use the same interconnect network. If an Oracle database runs on a separate network from Oracle Clusterware, then the timeout on error is 900s.</li> <li>■ Oracle does not recommend setting the CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS parameter except in certain situations. See "<a href="#">Administering Multiple Cluster Interconnects on Linux and UNIX Platforms</a>" on page 3-21 for more details.</li> <li>■ This parameter is stored in the Grid Plug and Play profile in a Grid Plug and Play environment.</li> </ul>
DB_NAME	If you set a value for DB_NAME in instance-specific parameter files, the setting must be identical for all instances.
DISPATCHERS	<p>Set the DISPATCHERS parameter to enable a shared server configuration, that is a server that is configured to enable many user processes to share very few server processes. With shared server configurations, many user processes connect to a dispatcher. The DISPATCHERS parameter may contain many attributes.</p> <p>Oracle recommends that you configure at least the PROTOCOL and LISTENER attributes. PROTOCOL specifies the network protocol for which the dispatcher process generates a listening end point. LISTENER specifies an alias name for the Oracle Net Services listeners. Set the alias to a name that is resolved through a naming method such as a tnsnames.ora file. The tnsnames.ora file contains net service names. Clients, nodes, and the Oracle Performance Manager node need this file. Oracle Enterprise Manager does not require tnsnames.ora entries on the client for Database Control or Grid Control.</p> <p><b>See Also:</b> <i>Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide</i> for complete information about configuring the DISPATCHERS parameter and its attributes and for configuring the shared server</p>

**Table 3–3 (Cont.) Initialization Parameters Specific to Oracle RAC**

Parameter	Description
GCS_SERVER_PROCESSES	This static parameter specifies the initial number of server processes for an Oracle RAC instance's Global Cache Service (GCS). The GCS processes manage the routing of interinstance traffic among Oracle RAC instances. The default number of GCS server processes is calculated based on system resources with a minimum setting of 2. For systems with one CPU, there is one GCS server process. For systems with two to eight CPUs, there are two GCS server processes. For systems with more than eight CPUs, the number of GCS server processes equals the number of CPUs divided by 4, dropping any fractions. For example, if you have 10 CPUs, then 10 divided by 4 means that your system has 2 GCS processes. You can set this parameter to different values on different instances.
INSTANCE_NAME	Specifies the unique name of an instance. Clients can use this name to force their session to be connected to a specific instance in the cluster. The format of the INSTANCE_NAME parameter is generally <i>db_unique_name_instance_number</i> , such as <i>orclpdb_2</i> .  <b>Note:</b> In Grid Plug and Play environments, the INSTANCE_NAME parameter is not required and defaults to <i>db_unique_name_instance_number</i> if not specified.
RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE	In a clustered database, you can either set RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE=0 on every instance to disable the <b>result cache</b> , or use a nonzero value on every instance to enable the result cache. To switch between enabled and disabled result cache requires that you restart every instance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Enabling the result cache:</b> Set RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE to a value greater than 0, or leave the parameter unset. You can size the cache differently on individual instances.</li> <li>▪ <b>Disabling the result cache:</b> Set RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE=0 on all instances to disable the result cache. If you set RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE=0 upon startup of any one instance, then you must set the parameter to zero on all instance startups because disabling the result cache must be done clusterwide. Disabling the result cache on some instances may lead to incorrect results.</li> </ul> If you do not set the RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE parameter, the parameter resolves to a default, nonzero value.
SERVICE_NAMES	When you use services, Oracle recommends that you do not set a value for the SERVICE_NAMES parameter but instead you should create cluster managed services through the Cluster Managed Services page in Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control. This is because Oracle Clusterware controls the setting for this parameter for the services that you create and for the default database service. The service features described in <a href="#">Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"</a> are not directly related to the features that Oracle provides when you set SERVICE_NAMES. In addition, setting a value for this parameter may override some benefits of using services.  <b>Note:</b> Entries in the SERVICE_NAMES parameter may be used by client connections rather than the INSTANCE_NAME parameter value. The SERVICE_NAMES parameter may include one or more names and different instances may share one or more names with other instances, enabling a client to connect to either a specific instance or to any one of a set of instances, depending on the service name chosen in the connection string.
SPFILE	When you use an SPFILE, all Oracle RAC database instances must use the SPFILE and the file must be on shared storage.
THREAD	Specifies the number of the redo threads to be used by an instance. You can specify any available redo thread number if that thread number is enabled and is not used. If specified, this parameter must have unique values on all instances. The best practice is to use the INSTANCE_NAME parameter to specify redo log groups.

## Parameters That Must Have Identical Settings on All Instances

Certain initialization parameters that are critical at database creation or that affect certain database operations must have the same value for every instance in an Oracle

RAC database. Specify these parameter values in the SPFILE or in the individual PFILES for each instance. The following list contains the parameters that must be identical on every instance:

```
COMPATIBLE
CLUSTER_DATABASE
CLUSTER_DATABASE_INSTANCES
CONTROL_FILES
DB_BLOCK_SIZE
DB_DOMAIN
DB_FILES
DB_NAME
DB_RECOVERY_FILE_DEST
DB_RECOVERY_FILE_DEST_SIZE
DB_UNIQUE_NAME
INSTANCE_TYPE (RDBMS or ASM)
PARALLEL_EXECUTION_MESSAGE_SIZE
REMOTE_LOGIN_PASSWORDFILE
UNDO_MANAGEMENT
```

The following parameters must be identical on every instance only if the parameter value is set to zero:

```
DML_LOCKS
RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE
```

## Parameters That Have Unique Settings on All Instances

When it is necessary to set parameters that have unique settings on a policy-managed database, you can ensure that instances always use the same name on particular nodes by running the `srvctl modify instance -n node_name -i instance_name` command for each server that can be assigned to the database's server pool. Then a unique value of the parameter can be specified for *instance\_name* that is used whenever the database runs on *node\_name*.

Specify the `ORACLE_SID` environment variable, which consists of the database name and the number of the `INSTANCE_NAME` assigned to the instance.

Use the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` initialization parameter to specify an alternative interconnect to the one Oracle Clusterware is using for the private network. Each instance of the Oracle RAC database gets a unique value when setting the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` initialization parameter.

**See Also:** ["Administering Multiple Cluster Interconnects on Linux and UNIX Platforms"](#) on page 3-21 for more information about the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` initialization parameter

Oracle Database uses the `INSTANCE_NUMBER` parameter to distinguish among instances at startup and the `INSTANCE_NAME` parameter to assign redo log groups to specific instances. The instance name can take the form `db_unique_name_instance_number` and when it has this form of name and number separated by an underscore, the number after the underscore is used as the `INSTANCE_NUMBER`. With Oracle Database 11.2 using Grid Plug and Play, you no longer have to explicitly assign instance numbers for policy-managed databases and the instance name defaults to `db_unique_name_instance_number`, where Oracle Database assigns the instance number.

When you specify `UNDO_TABLESPACE` with automatic undo management enabled, then set this parameter to a unique undo tablespace name for each instance.

If you use the `ROLLBACK_SEGMENTS` parameters, then Oracle recommends setting unique values for it by using the `SID` identifier in the SPFILE. However, you must set a unique value for `INSTANCE_NUMBER` for each instance and you cannot use a default value.

Using the `ASM_PREFERRED_READ_FAILURE_GROUPS` initialization parameter, you can specify a list of preferred read failure group names. The disks in those failure groups become the preferred read disks. Thus, every node can read from its local disks. This results in higher efficiency and performance and reduced network traffic. The setting for this parameter is instance-specific, and the values need not be the same on all instances.

## Parameters That Should Have Identical Settings on All Instances

Oracle recommends that you set the values for the parameters in [Table 3–4](#) to the same value on all instances. Although you can have different settings for these parameters on different instances, setting each parameter to the same value on all instances simplifies administration.

**Table 3–4 Parameters That Should Have Identical Settings on All Instances**

Parameter	Description
<code>ARCHIVE_LAG_TARGET</code>	<p>Different values for instances in your Oracle RAC database are likely to increase overhead because of additional automatic synchronization performed by the database processing.</p> <p>When using Streams with your Oracle RAC database, the value should be greater than zero.</p>
<code>LICENSE_MAX_USERS</code>	<p>Because this parameter determines a database-wide limit on the number of users defined in the database, it is useful to have the same value on all instances of your database so you can see the current value no matter which instance you are using. Setting different values may cause Oracle Database to generate additional warning messages during instance startup, or cause commands related to database user management to fail on some instances.</p>
<code>LOG_ARCHIVE_FORMAT</code>	<p>If you do not use the same value for all your instances, then you unnecessarily complicate media recovery. The recovering instance expects the required archive log file names to have the format defined by its own value of <code>LOG_ARCHIVE_FORMAT</code>, regardless of which instance created the archive log files.</p> <p>Databases that support Data Guard, either to send or receive archived redo log files, must use the same value of <code>LOG_ARCHIVE_FORMAT</code> for all instances.</p>
<code>SPFILE</code>	<p>If this parameter does not identify the same file to all instances, then each instance may behave differently and unpredictably in fail over, load-balancing, and during normal operations. Additionally, a change you make to the SPFILE with an <code>ALTER SYSTEM SET</code> or <code>ALTER SYSTEM RESET</code> command is saved only in the SPFILE used by the instance where you run the command. Your change is not reflected in instances using different SPFILES.</p> <p>If the SPFILE values are different in instances for which the values were set by the server, then you should restart the instances that are not using the default SPFILE.</p>



**Table 3–4 (Cont.) Parameters That Should Have Identical Settings on All Instances**

Parameter	Description
TRACE_ENABLED	If you want diagnostic trace information to be always available for your Oracle RAC database, you must set TRACE_ENABLED to TRUE on all of your database instances. If you trace on only some of your instances, then diagnostic information might not be available when required should the only accessible instances be those with TRACE_ENABLED set to FALSE.
UNDO_RETENTION	By setting different values for UNDO_RETENTION in each instance, you are likely to reduce scalability and encounter unpredictable behavior following a failover. Therefore, you should carefully consider whether there are any benefits before you assign different values for this parameter to the instances in your Oracle RAC database.

## Converting an Administrator-Managed Database to a Policy-Managed Database

You can convert an administrator-managed database to a policy-managed database, as follows:

1. Check the current configuration of all services and the database (if you make a mistake and need to recover, then you can know what the configuration looked like when you began), as follows:

```
srvctl config database -d db_unique_name
srvctl config service -d db_unique_name
```

- 2.

---

**Caution:** By default, any named user may create a server pool. To restrict the operating system users that have this privilege, Oracle strongly recommends that you add specific users to the CRS Administrators list.

---

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about adding users to the CRS Administrators list

Create a server pool for the policy-managed database (you must have CRS Administrator privileges to do this), as follows:

```
srvctl add srvpool -g server_pool -l 0 -u n
```

In the preceding command, *n* is the number of servers you want in the server pool.

---

**Note:** This step does not necessarily place servers in the newly-created server pool. If there are no servers in the Free pool from which the new server pool can allocate servers, for example, then you may have to use the `srvctl relocate server` command to relocate a server from another server pool.

---

3. Modify the database to be in the new server pool, as follows:

```
srvctl modify database -d db_unique_name -g server_pool
```

4. Check the status of the database to confirm that it is now policy managed by repeating the commands in step 1.

**See Also:** [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for more information about these commands

Configure Oracle Enterprise Manager to recognize the change you made in the previous procedure, as follows:

1. In order for Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control to recognize the new database instances, you must change the instance name from `db_unique_name#` to `db_unique_name_#` (notice the additional underscore (`_`) before the number sign (`#`) character).
2. Rename the `orapwd` file in the `db`s/database directory (or create a new `orapwd` file by running the `orapwd` command).

By default, there is an `orapwd` file with the instance name appended to it, such as `orapwdORCL1`. You must change the name of the file to correspond to the instance name you changed in the previous step. For example, you must change `orapwdORCL1` to `orapwdORCL_1` or create a new `orapwd` file.

3. Run `emca` to reconfigure Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control, as follows:

```
emca -config dbcontrol db -cluster
```

You cannot directly convert a policy-managed database to an administrator-managed database. Instead, you can remove the policy-managed configuration using the `srvctl remove database` and `srvctl remove service` commands, and then register the same database as an administrator-managed database using the `srvctl add database` and `srvctl add instance` commands. Once you register the database and instance, you must use the `srvctl add service` command to add back the services as you removed them.

**See Also:** ["SRVCTL Command Reference"](#) on page A-11 for more information about these commands

Services for administrator-managed databases continue to be defined by the `PREFERRED` and `AVAILABLE` definitions. For policy-managed databases, a service is defined to a database server pool and can either be *uniform* (running on all instances in the server pool) or *singleton* (running on only one instance in the server pool). If you change the management policy of the database, then you must recreate the database services to be either `uniform/singleton` or `PREFERRED/AVAILABLE`, depending upon which database management policy you choose.

**See Also:** ["Service Deployment Options"](#) on page 5-3 for more information about managing services

## Quiescing Oracle RAC Databases

The procedure for quiescing Oracle RAC databases is identical to quiescing a noncluster database. You use the `ALTER SYSTEM QUIESCE RESTRICTED` statement from one instance. You cannot open the database from any instance while the database is in the process of being quiesced. When all non-DBA sessions become inactive, the `ALTER SYSTEM QUIESCE RESTRICTED` statement finishes, and the database is considered as in a quiesced state. In an Oracle RAC environment, this statement affects all instances, not just the one from which the statement is issued.

To successfully issue the `ALTER SYSTEM QUIESCE RESTRICTED` statement in an Oracle RAC environment, you must have the Database Resource Manager feature activated, and it must have been activated since instance startup for all instances in the cluster database. It is through the facilities of the Database Resource Manager that non-DBA sessions are prevented from becoming active. Also, while this statement is in effect, any attempt to change the current resource plan is queued until after the system is unquiesced.

These conditions apply to Oracle RAC:

- If you issued the `ALTER SYSTEM QUIESCE RESTRICTED` statement but Oracle Database has not finished processing it, you cannot open the database.
- You cannot open the database if it is in a quiesced state.
- The `ALTER SYSTEM QUIESCE RESTRICTED` and `ALTER SYSTEM UNQUIESCE` statements affect all instances in an Oracle RAC environment, not just the instance that issues the command.

---

---

**Note:** You cannot use the quiesced state to take a cold backup. This is because Oracle Database background processes may still perform updates for Oracle Database internal purposes even while the database is in quiesced state. In addition, the file headers of online data files continue to look like they are being accessed. They do not look the same as if a clean shutdown were done. You can still take online backups while the database is in a quiesced state.

---

---

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for details on the quiesce database feature
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about the `ALTER SYSTEM QUIESCE RESTRICTED` syntax

## Administering Multiple Cluster Interconnects on Linux and UNIX Platforms

In Oracle RAC environments that run on Linux and UNIX platforms where UDP IPC is enabled, you can use the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` initialization parameter to specify an alternative interconnect to the one Oracle Clusterware is using for the private network.

If you set multiple values for `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS`, then Oracle Database uses all of the interconnects that you specify, providing load balancing if all of the listed interconnects remain operational. You must use identical values, including the order in which the interconnects are listed, on all instances of your database when defining multiple interconnects with this parameter.

Oracle does not recommend setting the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` parameter, which overrides the default interconnect settings at the operating system level. Instead, the best practice is to use operating system bonding techniques (also referred to as NIC (network interface card) bonding). See your platform-specific Oracle RAC installation guide for information about setting up NIC bonding at the operating system level.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Recommendations for Setting the `CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS` Parameter](#)

- [Usage Examples for the CLUSTER\\_INTERCONNECTS Parameter](#)

## Recommendations for Setting the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS Parameter

The CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS initialization parameter requires an IP address. It enables you to specify multiple IP addresses, separated by colons. Oracle RAC network traffic is distributed between the specified IP addresses.

---

---

**Notes:**

- Oracle does not recommend setting the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS parameter when using a policy-managed database.

If you must set the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS parameter for a policy-managed database, then Oracle recommends that you use the `srvctl modify instance -n node_name -i instance_name` command for all servers in the server pool.

- Oracle recommends that all databases and Oracle Clusterware use the same interconnect network.
- 
- 

Typically, you set the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS parameter only in the following situations:

- Due to operating system limitations, you cannot use NIC bonding to provide increased bandwidth using multiple network interfaces.
- The cluster is running multiple databases and you need the interconnect traffic to be separated.
- You have a single IP address that is made highly available by the operating system, and it does not have a stable interface name (for example, the name can change when you restart).

Do not set the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS parameter for the following common configurations:

- If you have only one cluster interconnect.
- If the default cluster interconnect meets the bandwidth requirements of your Oracle RAC database, which is typically the case.

Consider the following important points when specifying the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS initialization parameter:

- The CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS initialization parameter is useful only in Linux and UNIX environments where UDP IPC is enabled.
- Specify a different value for each instance of the Oracle RAC database when setting the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS initialization parameter in the parameter file.
- The IP addresses you specify for the different instances of the same database on different nodes must belong to network adapters that connect to the same interconnect network.
- If you specify multiple IP addresses for this parameter, then list them in the same order for all instances of the same database. For example, if the parameter for the first instance on `node1` lists the IP addresses of the `alt0:`, `fta0:`, and `ics0:` devices in that order, then the parameter for the second instance on `node2` must

list the IP addresses of the equivalent network adapters in the same order. See the examples in "[Usage Examples for the CLUSTER\\_INTERCONNECTS Parameter](#)" on page 3-23 for more information about setting multiple interconnects with this parameter.

- If an operating system error occurs while Oracle Database is writing to the interconnect that you specify with the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` parameter, then Oracle Database returns an error even if some other interfaces are available. This is because the communication protocols between Oracle Database and the interconnect can vary greatly depending on your platform. See your Oracle Database platform-specific documentation for more information.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Reference* for more information about the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` initialization parameter

## Usage Examples for the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` Parameter

This section provides two examples for setting the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` parameter.

### Example 1

Consider setting `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` when a single cluster interconnect cannot meet your bandwidth requirements. You may need to set this parameter in data warehouse environments with high interconnect bandwidth demands from one or more databases as described here.

For example, if you have two databases with high interconnect bandwidth requirements, then you can override the default interconnect provided by your operating system and nominate a different interconnect for each database using the following syntax in each server parameter file where `ipn` is an IP address in standard dot-decimal format, for example: `144.25.16.214`:

```
Database One: crm1.CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS = ip1
Database Two: ext1.CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS = ip2
```

If you have one database with high bandwidth demands, then you can nominate multiple interconnects using the following syntax:

```
CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS = ip1:ip2:...:ipn
```

### Example 2

Use the `ifconfig` or `netstat` command to display the IP address of a device. This command provides a map between device names and IP addresses. For example, to determine the IP address of a device, run the following command as the `root` user:

```
# /usr/sbin/ifconfig -a
fta0: flags=c63<UP,BROADCAST,NOTRAILERS,RUNNING,MULTICAST,SIMPLEX>
      inet 192.34.137.212 netmask fffffc00 broadcast 192.34.139.255 ipmtu 1500

lo0:  flags=100c89<UP,LOOPBACK,NOARP,MULTICAST,SIMPLEX,NOCHECKSUM>
      inet 172.0.0.1 netmask ff000000 ipmtu 4096

ics0:  flags=1100063<UP,BROADCAST,NOTRAILERS,RUNNING,NOCHECKSUM,CLUIF>
      inet 10.0.0.1 netmask ffffffff00 broadcast 10.0.0.255 ipmtu 7000

s10:  flags=10<POINTOPOINT>

tun0: flags=80<NOARP>
```

In the preceding example, the interface `fta0:` has an IP address of `192.34.137.212` and the interface `ics0:` has an IP address of `10.0.0.1`.

To use the network interface whose IP address is `192.34.137.212` for all GCS, GES, and IPQ IPC traffic, set the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` parameter as follows:

```
CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS=192.34.137.212
```

## Customizing How Oracle Clusterware Manages Oracle RAC Databases

By default, Oracle Clusterware controls database restarts in Oracle RAC environments. In some cases, you may need to minimize the level of control that Oracle Clusterware has over your Oracle RAC database, for example, during database upgrades.

---

---

**Note:** When using third-party clusterware, Oracle recommends that you allow Oracle Clusterware to manage the Oracle RAC instances. If you set the instance to manual and start it with third-party clusterware, do not use the third-party clusterware to monitor and restart database instances, Oracle Clusterware must do that.

---

---

To prevent Oracle Clusterware from restarting your Oracle RAC database when you restart your system, or to avoid restarting failed instances more than once, configure a policy to define the degree of control. There are two policies: `AUTOMATIC`, which is the default, and `MANUAL`. If the policy is set to `AUTOMATIC`, the database is automatically restored to its previous running condition (started or stopped) upon restart of the database host computer. If `MANUAL`, the database is never automatically restarted upon restart of the database host computer. A `MANUAL` setting does not prevent Oracle Restart from monitoring the database while it is running and restarting it if a failure occurs.

Use `SRVCTL` commands to display and change the Oracle Clusterware policies, as shown in the following examples:

### Example 1 Display the Current Policy

For example, use the following command syntax to display the current policy where `db_unique_name` is the name of the database for which you want to change policies:

```
srvctl config database -d db_unique_name -a
```

**See Also:** "[srvctl config database](#)" on page A-30 for more information about the `srvctl config database` command and its options

### Example 2 Change the Current Policy to Another Policy

Use the following `SRVCTL` command syntax to change the current policy to either `AUTOMATIC` or `MANUAL`:

```
srvctl modify database -d db_unique_name -y [AUTOMATIC | MANUAL]
```

**See Also:** "[srvctl modify database](#)" on page A-59 for more information about the `srvctl modify database` command and its options

This command syntax sets the resource attribute of the database resource.

**Example 3 Specify a Policy for a New Database**

When you add a new database using the SRVCTL command, you can use the `-y` option to specify the management policy as either `AUTOMATIC` or `MANUAL`, as shown in the following example where `db_unique_name` is the name of the database:

```
srvctl add database -d db_unique_name -y [AUTOMATIC | MANUAL] -o $ORACLE_HOME -a
DATA
```

**See Also:** "[srvctl add database](#)" on page A-15 for more information about the `srvctl add database` command and its options

This command syntax places the new database under the control of Oracle Clusterware. If you do not provide a management policy option, then Oracle Database uses the default value of `automatic`. After you change the policy, the Oracle Clusterware resource records the new value for the affected database.

## Advanced Oracle Enterprise Manager Administration

You can install, configure, and monitor an Oracle RAC database from a single location using either Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control or Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control.

This section provides advanced administration tasks that are not covered in *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* or in "[Overview of Monitoring and Tuning Oracle RAC Databases](#)" on page 13-1.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for a task-oriented guide that explains how to use Oracle Enterprise Manager to perform routine Oracle RAC database administrative tasks

This section includes the following topics:

- [Using Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control to Discover Nodes and Instances](#)
- [Other Oracle Enterprise Manager Capabilities](#)
- [Administering Jobs and Alerts in Oracle RAC](#)

### Using Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control to Discover Nodes and Instances

Discovering Oracle RAC database and instance targets in Oracle Enterprise Manager enables monitoring and administration from the console:

- **Database Control** does not require discovery because DBCA performs any necessary configuration while creating the database. Database Control also monitors a single database.
- **Grid Control** enables you to use the Oracle Enterprise Manager console interface to discover Oracle RAC database and instance targets.

If the Grid Control agents are installed on a cluster that has an Oracle RAC database, Oracle RAC database targets are discovered at install time. You can use the console interface to discover targets if a database is created after agents are installed or if a database is not automatically discovered at agent install time.

To discover nodes and instances, use Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control as follows:



1. Log in to Oracle Enterprise Manager and click the **Targets** tab.
2. Click the **Database** tab to view all of the available targets. The column labeled **Types** shows the Oracle RAC databases using the entry *Cluster Database*.
3. Add the database target by selecting the target name, then clicking **Add**. The Add Database Target: Specify Host page appears, which enables you to add databases, listeners, and Oracle ASM as monitored targets.
4. Click the flashlight icon to display the available host names, select a host, then click **Continue**. The Add Database: Specify Source page appears.
5. Either request Oracle Enterprise Manager to discover only noncluster databases and listeners, or to discover all cluster databases, noncluster databases, and listeners on the cluster, then click **Continue**.
6. If this procedure did not discover your reconfigured cluster database and all of its instances, you can use the Targets Discovered on Cluster page to manually configure your cluster database and noncluster databases.

## Other Oracle Enterprise Manager Capabilities

This section lists Oracle Enterprise Manager capabilities available with Oracle Enterprise Manager 11g release 2 (11.2).

- A new deployment procedure—Oracle Grid Infrastructure/Oracle RAC Provisioning—provisions Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2) and Oracle Grid Infrastructure. This procedure also introduces a feature called *Profiles*, which enables you to record the inputs and subsequently use them for repeated deployments.
- Dynamic prerequisites for the new procedures enable Oracle Enterprise Manager, when connected to My Oracle Support (formerly Oracle*MetaLink*), to download the latest prerequisites and tools for Oracle RAC provisioning.
- The existing *One-Click Extend Cluster Database* capability now supports Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2) stack.
- The existing *Delete/Scale down Oracle Real Application Clusters* capability is certified with Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2) clusters.
- The existing *Oracle Database Provisioning* procedure now supports provisioning of single instances of Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2).
- A new deployment procedure—Oracle Grid Infrastructure Provisioning for Standalone Servers—has been introduced to provision Oracle Grid Infrastructure 11g release 2 (11.2) for noncluster databases.

## Administering Jobs and Alerts in Oracle RAC

The Cluster Database Home page shows all of the instances in the Oracle RAC database and provides an aggregate collection of several Oracle RAC-specific statistics that are collected by the **Automatic Workload Repository (AWR)** for server manageability.

You do not need to navigate to an instance-specific page to see these details. However, on the Cluster Database Home page, if an instance is down that should be operating, or if an instance has a high number of alerts, then you can drill down to the instance-specific page for each alert.



To perform specific administrative tasks as described in the remainder of this section, log in to the target Oracle RAC database, navigate to the Cluster Database Home page, and click the **Administration** tab.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Administering Jobs in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Administering Alerts in Oracle RAC with Oracle Enterprise Manager](#)
- [Performing Scheduled Maintenance Using Defined Blackouts in Oracle Enterprise Manager](#)

### Administering Jobs in Oracle RAC

You can administer Oracle Enterprise Manager jobs at both the database and instance levels. For example, you can create a job at the cluster database level to run on any active instance of the target Oracle RAC database. Or you can create a job at the instance level to run on the specific instance for which you created it. In the event of a failure, recurring jobs can run on a surviving instance.

Because you can create jobs at the instance level, cluster level, or cluster database level, jobs can run on any available host in the cluster database. This applies to scheduled jobs as well. Oracle Enterprise Manager also displays job activity in several categories, including, *Active*, *History*, and *Library*.

Use the Jobs tab to submit operating system scripts and SQL scripts and to examine scheduled jobs. For example, to create a backup job for a specific Oracle RAC database:

1. Click **Targets** and click the database for which you want to create the job.
2. Log in to the target database.
3. When Oracle Enterprise Manager displays the Database Home page, click **Maintenance**.
4. Complete the Enterprise Manage Job Wizard pages to create the job.

### Administering Alerts in Oracle RAC with Oracle Enterprise Manager

You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager to configure Oracle RAC environment alerts. You can also configure special Oracle RAC database tests, such as global cache converts, consistent read requests, and so on.

Oracle Enterprise Manager distinguishes between database- and instance-level alerts in Oracle RAC environments. Alert thresholds for instance-level alerts, such as archive log alerts, can be set at the instance target level. This function enables you to receive alerts for the specific instance if performance exceeds your threshold. You can also configure alerts at the database level, such as setting alerts for tablespaces, to avoid receiving duplicate alerts at each instance.

**See Also:** Oracle Technology Network for an example of configuring alerts in Oracle RAC and the *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for information about using packages to configure thresholds

### Performing Scheduled Maintenance Using Defined Blackouts in Oracle Enterprise Manager

You can define blackouts (which are time periods in which database monitoring is suspended so that maintenance operations do not skew monitoring data or generate needless alerts) for all managed targets of an Oracle RAC database to prevent alerts

from occurring while performing maintenance. You can define blackouts for an entire cluster database or for specific cluster database instances.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about defining blackouts

---

---

## Administering Oracle RAC One Node

Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node (Oracle RAC One Node) is a single instance of an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database that runs on one node in a cluster. This option adds to the flexibility that Oracle offers for database consolidation. You can consolidate many databases into one cluster with minimal overhead while also providing the high availability benefits of failover protection, online rolling patch application, and rolling upgrades for the operating system and Oracle Clusterware.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview of Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node](#)
- [Adding an Oracle RAC One Node Database](#)
- [Converting Databases](#)
- [Online Database Relocation](#)

### Overview of Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node

You can limit the CPU consumption of individual database instances per server within the cluster through Resource Manager Instance Caging and dynamically change this limit if needed. With Oracle RAC One Node, there is no limit to server scalability and if applications grow to require more resources than a single node can supply, then you can easily upgrade your applications online to Oracle RAC. If the node that is running Oracle RAC One Node becomes overloaded, then you can relocate the instance to another node in the cluster using the online database relocation utility with no downtime for application users.

Oracle RAC One Node is supported on all platforms on which Oracle RAC is certified. Similar to Oracle RAC, Oracle RAC One Node is certified on Oracle Virtual Machine (Oracle VM). Using Oracle RAC or Oracle RAC One Node with Oracle VM increases the benefits of Oracle VM with the high availability and scalability of Oracle RAC.

Using Oracle RAC One Node online database relocation, you can relocate the Oracle RAC One Node instance to another server, if the current server is running short on resources or requires maintenance operations, such as operating system patches. You can use the same technique to relocate Oracle RAC One Node instances to high capacity servers to accommodate changes in workload, for example, depending on the resources available in the cluster. In addition, Resource Manager Instance Caging or memory optimization parameters can be set dynamically to further optimize the placement of the Oracle RAC One Node instance on the new server.

Using the Single Client Access Name (SCAN) to connect to the database, clients can locate the service independently of the node on which it is running. Relocating an

Oracle RAC One Node instance is therefore mostly transparent to the client, depending on the client connection. Oracle recommends to use either Oracle Fast Application Notification or Transparent Application Failover to minimize the impact of a relocation on the client.

Oracle RAC One Node databases are administered slightly differently from Oracle RAC or noncluster databases. For administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases, you must monitor the candidate node list and make sure a server is always available for failover, if possible. Candidate servers reside in the Generic server pool and the database and its services will fail over to one of those servers.

For policy-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases, you must ensure that the server pools are configured such that a server will be available for the database to fail over to in case its current node becomes unavailable. Also, for policy-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases, the destination node for online database relocation must be located in the database's server pool.

---

---

**Note:** In order to cover all failure scenarios, you must add at least one dynamic database service (Oracle Clusterware-managed database service) to an Oracle RAC One Node database.

---

---

**See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide for Linux and UNIX* for information about installing Oracle RAC One Node databases

## Adding an Oracle RAC One Node Database

Use the `srvctl add database` command to add an Oracle RAC One Node database to your cluster. For example:

```
srvctl add database -c RACONENODE [-e server_list] [-i instance_name] [-w timeout]
```

Use the `-e` option and the `-i` option when adding an administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node database.

Using DBCA to create an Oracle RAC One Node database adds the newly created database to the cluster.

**See Also:**

- ["srvctl add database"](#) on page A-15 for usage information
- ["Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes"](#) on page 10-4 for information adding an Oracle RAC One Node database

Each service on an Oracle RAC One Node database is configured by using the same value for the `SERVER_POOLS` attribute as the underlying database. When you add services to an Oracle RAC One Node database, the Server Control Utility (SRVCTL) does not accept any placement information, but instead configures those services using the value of the `SERVER_POOLS` attribute.

---



---

**Note:** When adding an administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node database, you can optionally supply an instance prefix with the `-i instance_name` option of the `srvctl add database` command. The name of the instance will then be `prefix_1`. If you do not specify an instance prefix, then the first 12 characters of the unique name of the database becomes the prefix. The instance name changes to `prefix_2` during an online database relocation and reverts back to `prefix_1` during a subsequent online database relocation. The same instance name is used on failover.

---



---

## Converting Databases

Using SRVCTL, you can convert an Oracle RAC database with one instance to an Oracle RAC One Node database and vice versa.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Converting a Database from Oracle RAC to Oracle RAC One Node](#)
- [Converting a Database from Oracle RAC One Node to Oracle RAC](#)

### Converting a Database from Oracle RAC to Oracle RAC One Node

You can convert an Oracle RAC database with one instance to an Oracle RAC One Node database using the `srvctl convert database` command, as follows:

```
srvctl convert database -d db_unique_name -c RACONENODE [-i instance_name
-w timeout]
```

**See Also:** ["convert"](#) on page A-37 for more information about the `srvctl convert database` command

---



---

**Note:** An Oracle RAC database that you want to convert to Oracle RAC One Node must either use Oracle Managed Files (to enable automatic thread allocation) or have at least two redo threads.

---



---

Prior to converting an Oracle RAC database to an Oracle RAC One Node database, you must first ensure that the Oracle RAC database has only one instance.

If the Oracle RAC database is administrator managed, then you must change the configuration of all services to set the preferred instance to the instance that you want to keep as an Oracle RAC One Node database after conversion. If any service had a `PRECONNECT` TAF policy, then its TAF policy must be updated to `BASIC` or `NONE` before starting the conversion process. These services must no longer have any available instance.

If the Oracle RAC database is policy managed, then you must change the configuration of all services so that they all use the same server pool before you convert the Oracle RAC database to an Oracle RAC One Node database.

### Converting a Database from Oracle RAC One Node to Oracle RAC

You can convert a database from Oracle RAC One Node to Oracle RAC using the `srvctl convert database` command, as follows:

```
srvctl convert database -d db_unique_name -c RAC [-n node_name]
```

If the database is up and running and you do not specify the node where the database is running, then the command returns an error instructing you to specify the node.

If you are relocating the database you want to convert to Oracle RAC using online database relocation, or an online database relocation has failed, then you must either abort or complete the relocation before you run the `srvctl convert database` command.

**See Also:** "[convert](#)" on page A-37 for more information

Converting an administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node database to an Oracle RAC database sets all database services so that the single instance is preferred. After you convert the database, you can add instances using DBCA.

Converting a policy-managed Oracle RAC One Node database to an Oracle RAC database sets all database services to UNIFORM cardinality. It also results in reusing the server pool in which the database currently runs. The conversion reconfigures the database to run on all nodes in the server pool. The command does not start any additional instances but running the `srvctl start database` command starts the database on all nodes in the server pool.

## Online Database Relocation

You can relocate an Oracle RAC One Node database to another node while still maintaining service availability using the online database relocation utility. Only during a planned online database relocation is a second instance of an Oracle RAC One Node database created, so that any database sessions can continue while the database is relocated to a new node.

If your Oracle RAC One Node database is administrator managed, then the target node to which you want to relocate the database must be in the candidate list or in the Free server pool. If the target node is in the Free server pool, then the node is added to the candidate list.

---

**Note:** When you relocate a database instance to a target node that is not currently in the candidate server list for the database, you must copy the password file, if configured, to the target node.

When you use password file-based authentication for remote management of Oracle RAC One Node databases without any shared password file, you must have two password files on each node where the database can run: one named `SID_prefix_1` and the other named `SID_prefix_2`. You must recopy both of these files to all candidate nodes every time you update the password file. This is true for both policy-managed and administrator-managed databases.

Oracle recommends using OS authentication, instead, or using Oracle Clusterware to start and stop the database, and defining users in the data dictionary for other management.

---

Use the `srvctl relocate database` command to initiate relocation of an Oracle RAC One Node database. For example:

```
srvctl relocate database -d rac1 -n node7
```

**See Also:** ["srvctl relocate database"](#) on page A-73 for more information





---

---

# Introduction to Automatic Workload Management

When a user or application connects to a database, Oracle recommends that you use a service specified in the `CONNECT_DATA` portion of the connect string. Oracle Database automatically creates one database service when the database is created. For many installations, this may be all you need. To enable more flexibility in the management of the workload using the database, Oracle Database enables you to create multiple services and specify which instances (or the server pools that contain the instances) the services are started on. If you are interested in greater workload management flexibility, then continue reading this chapter to understand the added features that you can use with services.

---

---

**Note:** The features discussed in this chapter do not work with the default database service. You must create cluster managed services to take advantage of these features. You can only manage the services that you create. Any service created automatically by the database server is managed by the database server.

---

---

This chapter describes how to manage workloads in Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) to provide high availability and scalability for your applications. This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview of Automatic Workload Management](#)
- [Automatic Workload Repository](#)
- [Service Deployment Options](#)
- [Connection Load Balancing](#)
- [Fast Application Notification](#)
- [Load Balancing Advisory](#)
- [Oracle Clients That Are Integrated with Fast Application Notification](#)
- [Services and Distributed Transaction Processing in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Administering Services](#)
- [Measuring Performance by Service Using the Automatic Workload Repository](#)
- [Automatic Workload Repository Service Thresholds and Alerts](#)

## Overview of Automatic Workload Management

Automatic workload management enables you to manage workload distributions to provide optimal performance for users and applications. Automatic workload management comprises the following:

- **Services:** Oracle Database provides a powerful automatic workload management facility, called services, to enable the enterprise grid vision. Services are entities that you can define in Oracle RAC databases that enable you to group database workloads and route work to the optimal instances that are assigned to offer the service.
- **Connection Load Balancing:** A feature of Oracle Net Services that balances incoming connections across all of the instances that provide the requested database service.
- **High Availability Framework:** An Oracle RAC component that enables Oracle Database to always maintain components in a running state.
- **Event Notification:** Oracle Clusterware generates events that can be received by application subscribers and listeners. These events are used for:
  - **Fast Application Notification (FAN):** Provides information to Oracle RAC applications and clients about cluster state changes and workload service level changes, such as UP and DOWN events for instances, services, or nodes. FAN has two methods for publishing events to clients, the Oracle Notification Service daemon, which is used by Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) clients including the Oracle Application Server, and Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing, which is used by Oracle Call Interface and Oracle Data Provider for .NET (ODP.NET) clients.
  - **Load Balancing Advisory:** Provides information to applications about the current service levels that the database and its instances are providing. The load balancing advisory makes recommendations to applications about where to direct application requests to obtain the best service based on the policy that you have defined for that service. Load balancing advisory events are published through Oracle Notification Service.
- **Automatic Workload Repository (AWR):** Tracks service-level statistics as **metrics**. Server generated alerts can be created for these metrics when they exceed or fail to meet certain thresholds.
- **Fast Connection Failover:** This is the ability of Oracle Clients to provide rapid failover of connections by subscribing to FAN events.
- **Runtime Connection Load Balancing:** This is the ability of Oracle Clients to provide intelligent allocations of connections in the connection pool based on the current service level provided by the database instances when applications request a connection to complete some work.
- **Single Client Access Name (SCAN):** Provides a single name to the clients connecting to Oracle RAC that does not change throughout the life of the cluster, even if you add or remove nodes from the cluster. Clients connecting with SCAN can use a simple connection string, such as a thin JDBC URL or EZConnect, and still achieve the load balancing and client connection failover.

You can deploy Oracle RAC and noncluster Oracle database environments to use automatic workload management features in many different ways. Depending on the number of nodes and your environment's complexity and objectives, your choices for optimal automatic workload management and high-availability configuration depend on several considerations that are described in this chapter.

## Automatic Workload Repository

The **Automatic Workload Repository (AWR)** collects, processes, and maintains performance statistics for the database. The gathered data can be displayed in both reports and views. If you use services with your database, then AWR tracks **metrics** at the service level.

Metrics can be measured against a variety of units, including time, transactions, or database calls. For example, the number of database calls per second is a metric. Server generated alerts can be placed on these metrics when they exceed or fail to meet user-specified thresholds. The database or system administrator can then respond, for example, by:

- Using the Oracle Database Resource Manager to configure the service level for one service to have priorities relative to other services
- Stopping overloaded processes
- Modifying a service level requirement
- Implementing recovery scenarios in response to service quality changes

Using AWR metrics and performance alerts enables you to maintain continued service availability despite service level changes. It also enables you to measure the quality of service provided by the database services.

The AWR ensures that the Oracle Clusterware workload management framework and the database resource manager have persistent and global representations of performance data. This information helps Oracle Database schedule job classes by service and to assign priorities to consumer groups. If necessary, you can rebalance workloads manually with either Oracle Enterprise Manager or SRVCTL. You can also disconnect a series of sessions, but leave the service running.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle *does not* recommend using the `DBMS_SERVICE` package for use with services used by an Oracle RAC database. Use SRVCTL or Oracle Enterprise Manager to create database services for Oracle RAC.

---

---

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Performance Tuning Guide* for more information on creating alerts for metric thresholds
- *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about the Automatic Workload Repository
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details about Oracle Database packages

## Service Deployment Options

This section describes the following service deployment topics:

- [Using Oracle Services](#)
- [Service Characteristics](#)
- [Service Usage in an Oracle RAC Database](#)
- [Service Usage in an Oracle RAC Database](#)

- [Default Service Connections](#)

## Using Oracle Services

To manage workloads or a group of applications, you can define services that you assign to a particular application or to a subset of an application's operations. You can also group work by type under services. For example, online users can use one service, while batch processing can use another and reporting can use yet another service to connect to the database.

Oracle recommends that all users who share a service have the same service level requirements. You can define specific characteristics for services and each service can represent a separate unit of work. There are many options that you can take advantage of when using services. Although you do not have to implement these options, using them helps optimize application performance.

## Service Characteristics

When you create new services for your database, you should define the automatic workload management characteristics for each service. The characteristics of a service include:

- [Service Name](#)
- [Net Service Name](#)
- [Service Edition](#)
- [Service Management Policy](#)
- [Database Role for a Service](#)
- [Instance Preference](#)
- [Server Pool Assignment](#)
- [Load Balancing Advisory Goal for Runtime Connection Load Balancing](#)
- [Connection Load Balancing Goal](#)
- [Distributed Transaction Processing](#)
- [Subscription to High Availability Events](#)
- [Transparent Application Failover Policy](#)

### See Also:

- ["Creating Services with SRVCTL"](#) on page 5-32 for more information
- ["SRVCTL Command Reference"](#) on page A-11 for more information about using SRVCTL to create or modify services and descriptions of the various options

### Service Name

Each Oracle database or service has a service name. The service name for an Oracle database is normally its global database name. The service name is used by clients to connect to one or more instances. The service name should be unique throughout your system.

## Net Service Name

To connect to a database service, clients use a connect descriptor that provides the location of the database and the name of the database service. A connect descriptor is comprised of one or more protocol addresses of the listener and the connect information for the destination service in the `tnsnames.ora` file.

## Service Edition

The *edition* attribute of a database service, which specifies the initial session edition for a session that is started using that service. If the program that creates a new session does not specify the initial session, then the edition name specified by the service is used. If the service does not specify the edition name, then the initial session edition is the database default edition.

## Service Management Policy

When you use Oracle Clusterware to manage your database, you can configure startup options for each individual database service when you add the service using the `srvctl add service` command with the `-y` option. If you set the management policy for a service to `AUTOMATIC` (the default), then the service starts automatically when you start the database with `SRVCTL`. If you set the management policy to `MANUAL`, then the service does not automatically start, and you must manually start it with `SRVCTL`. A `MANUAL` setting does not prevent Oracle Clusterware from monitoring the service when it is running and restarting it if a failure occurs. Prior to Oracle RAC 11g release 2 (11.2), all services worked as though they were defined with a `MANUAL` management policy.

**See Also:** "`srvctl add service`" on page A-24 for more usage information

Using `CRSCTL` to stop and restart Oracle Clusterware is treated as a failure and the service is restarted if it was previously running.

---

---

**Note:** When you use automatic services in an administrator-managed database, during planned database startup, services may start on the first instances to start rather than their preferred instances.

---

---

## Database Role for a Service

If you configured Oracle Data Guard in your environment, then you can define a role for each service using `SRVCTL` with the `-l` option. When you specify a role for a service, Oracle Clusterware automatically starts the service only when the database role matches the role you specified for the service. Valid roles are `PRIMARY`, `PHYSICAL_STANDBY`, `LOGICAL_STANDBY`, and `SNAPSHOT_STANDBY`.

If multiple databases in the cluster offer the same service name, then Oracle RAC balances connections to that service across all such databases. This is useful for standby and active Oracle Data Guard databases, but if you want client connections to a service to be directed to a particular database, then the service name must be unique within the cluster (not offered by any other database).

**See Also:** *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for more information about database roles

## Instance Preference

When you define a service for an administrator-managed database, you define which instances normally support that service using SRVCTL with the `-r` option. These are known as the *preferred* instances. You can also define other instances to support a service if the service's preferred instance fails using SRVCTL with the `-a` option. These are known as *available* instances.

When you specify preferred instances, you are specifying the number of instances on which a service normally runs. Oracle Clusterware attempts to ensure that the service always runs on the number of instances for which you have configured the service. Afterwards, due to either instance failure or planned service relocations, a service may be running on an available instance. You cannot control which available instance to which Oracle Clusterware relocates the services if there are multiple instances in the list.

When a service moves to an available instance, Oracle Database does not move the service back to the preferred instance when the preferred instance restarts because:

- The service is running on the desired number of instances.
- Maintaining the service on the current instance provides a higher level of service availability.
- Not moving the service back to the initial preferred instance prevents a second outage.

You can, however, easily automate fail back to the preferred instance by using FAN callouts.

**See Also:** ["Overview of Oracle RAC Database Administration"](#) on page 3-2 for more information about policy-managed and administrator-managed databases

## Server Pool Assignment

When you define services for a policy-managed database, you assign the service to a server pool where the database is running using SRVCTL with the `-g` option. You can define the service as either `UNIFORM` (running on all instances in the server pool) or `SINGLETON` (running on only one instance in the server pool) using the `-c` option. For singleton services, Oracle RAC chooses on which instance in the server pool the service is active. If that instance fails, then the service fails over to another instance in the server pool. A service can only run in one server pool.

---

**Note:** If you use Oracle Database Quality of Service Management (Oracle Database QoS Management), then you cannot have singleton services in a server pool, unless the maximum size of that server pool is one.

---

**See Also:** ["Overview of Oracle RAC Database Administration"](#) on page 3-2 for more information about policy-managed and administrator-managed databases

## Load Balancing Advisory Goal for Runtime Connection Load Balancing

With runtime connection load balancing, applications can use load balancing advisory events to provide better service to users. Oracle JDBC, Oracle Universal Connection Pool (UCP) for Java, Oracle Call Interface, Connection Manager (CMAN), and ODP.NET clients are automatically integrated to take advantage of load balancing

advisory events. The load balancing advisory informs the client about the current service level that an instance is providing for a service. To enable the load balancing advisory, use SRVCTL with the `-B` option when creating or modifying the service.

The load balancing advisory also recommends how much of the workload should be sent to that instance. The goal determines whether connections are made to the service based on best service quality (how efficiently a single transaction completes) or best throughput (how efficiently a complete job or long-running query completes).

### Connection Load Balancing Goal

Oracle Net Services provides connection load balancing to enable you to spread user connections across all of the instances that are supporting a service. For each service, you can use SRVCTL to define the method you want the listener to use for load balancing by setting the connection load balancing goal, specified with the `-j` option. Connections are classified as `LONG` (such as connection pools and `SQL*FORMS`) which tells the listener to use session-based statistics, or `SHORT` which tells the listener to use CPU-based statistics. If the load balancing advisory is enabled, its information is used to balance connections; otherwise, CPU utilization is used to balance connections.

### Distributed Transaction Processing

Distributed transaction processing applications have unique requirements. To make it easier to use Oracle RAC with global transactions, use SRVCTL and specify the distributed transaction processing option (`-x TRUE`) for the service so that all tightly coupled branches of a distributed transaction processing transaction are run on the same instance.

**See Also:** ["Services and Distributed Transaction Processing in Oracle RAC"](#) on page 5-27 for more information about distributed transaction processing in Oracle RAC

### Subscription to High Availability Events

Oracle RAC uses FAN to notify applications about configuration changes and the current service level that is provided by each instance where the service is enabled. If you are using a client that uses Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing, such as OCI and ODP.NET clients, to receive FAN events, you must enable the service used by that client to access the alert notification queue by using SRVCTL with the `-q` option.

### Transparent Application Failover Policy

When Oracle Net Services establishes a connection to an instance, the connection remains open until the client closes the connection, the instance is shutdown, or a failure occurs. If you configure transparent application failover (TAF) for the connection, then Oracle Database moves the session to a surviving instance when an outage occurs.

TAF can restart a query after failover has completed but for other types of transactions, such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`, the application must rollback the failed transaction and resubmit the transaction. You must also reexecute any session customizations, in other words, `ALTER SESSION` statements, after failover has occurred. However, with TAF, a connection is not moved during normal processing, even if the workload changes over time.

Services simplify the deployment of TAF. You can define a TAF policy for a service, and all connections using this service will automatically have TAF enabled. This does not require any client-side changes. The TAF setting on a service overrides any TAF setting in the client connection definition.



To define a TAF policy for a service, use `SRVCTL` as in the following example, where the service name is `tafconn.example.com` and the database name is `CRM`:

```
$ srvctl modify service -d crm -s tafconn.example.com -P BASIC
   -e SELECT -z 5 -w 120
```

You can also specify a single transparent application failover (TAF) policy for all users of a service by defining the `FAILOVER_METHOD` (`-m` option), `FAILOVER_TYPE` (`-e` option). The TAF policy can also define the number of times that a failed session attempts to reconnect to the service (`-z` option) and how long it should wait between reconnection attempts (`-w` option).

Oracle Call Interface applications with TAF enabled should use FAN high availability events for fast connection failover.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for more information about configuring TAF

## Service Usage in an Oracle RAC Database

A service name can identify multiple database instances, and an instance can belong to multiple services. Services for an Oracle RAC database are used by several database features, as described in the following topics:

- [Resource Profile for a Service](#)
- [Database Resource Manager Consumer Group Mappings for Services](#)
- [Performance Monitoring by Service with AWR](#)
- [Parallel Operations and Services](#)

### Resource Profile for a Service

Resource profiles are automatically created when you define a service. A resource profile describes how Oracle Clusterware should manage the service and which instance the service should failover to if the preferred instance stops. Resource profiles also define service dependencies for the instance and the database. Due to these dependencies, if you stop a database, then the instances and services are automatically stopped in the correct order.

### Database Resource Manager Consumer Group Mappings for Services

Services are integrated with the Resource Manager, which enables you to restrict the resources that are used by the users who connect to an instance by using a service. The Resource Manager enables you to map a consumer group to a service so that users who connect to an instance using that service are members of the specified consumer group.

### Performance Monitoring by Service with AWR

The metric data generated by Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) is organized into various groups, such as event, event class, session, service, and tablespace metrics. Typically, you view the AWR data using Oracle Enterprise Manager or AWR reports.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about generating and viewing AWR reports



## Parallel Operations and Services

By default, in an Oracle RAC environment, a SQL statement executed in parallel can run across all of the nodes in the cluster. For this cross-node or inter-node parallel execution to perform well, the interconnect in the Oracle RAC environment must be sized appropriately because inter-node parallel execution may result in a lot of interconnect traffic. To limit inter-node parallel execution, you can control parallel execution in an Oracle RAC environment using the `PARALLEL_FORCE_LOCAL` initialization parameter. By setting this parameter to `TRUE`, the parallel execution servers can only execute on the same Oracle RAC node where the SQL statement was started.

Services are used to limit the number of instances that participate in a parallel SQL operation. When the default database service is used, the parallel SQL operation can run on all available instances. You can create any number of services, each consisting of one or more instances. When a parallel SQL operation is started, the parallel execution servers are only spawned on instances which offer the specified service used in the initial database connection.

`PARALLEL_INSTANCE_GROUP` is an Oracle RAC parameter that, when used in conjunction with services, lets you restrict parallel query operations to a limited number of instances. To restrict parallel query operations to a limited number of instances, set the `PARALLEL_INSTANCE_GROUP` initialization parameter to the name of a service. This does not affect other parallel operations such as parallel recovery or the processing of `GV$` queries.

## Oracle Streams and Oracle RAC

Oracle Streams takes advantage of Oracle RAC features in many ways. When Oracle Streams is configured in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment, each queue table has an owning instance. If the instance that hosts a queue table fails, another instance in the Oracle RAC database becomes the owning instance for the queue table, allowing Oracle Streams to continue operating.

Also, on an Oracle RAC database, a service is created for each buffered queue. This service always runs on the owner instance of the destination queue and follows the ownership of this queue if the ownership switches because of instance startup, instance shutdown, and so on. This service is used by queue-to-queue propagations.

**See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

## Default Service Connections

A special Oracle database service is created by default for your Oracle RAC database. This default service is always available on all instances in an Oracle RAC environment, unless an instance is in restricted mode. You cannot alter this service or its properties. The database also supports the following two internal services:

- `SYS$BACKGROUND` is used by the background processes only
- `SYS$USERS` is the default service for user sessions that are not associated with any application service

Both of these internal services support all of the automatic workload management features. You cannot stop or disable either of these internal services.

---



---

**Note:** You can explicitly manage only the services that you create. If a feature of the database creates an internal service, you cannot manage it using the information in this chapter.

---



---

## Connection Load Balancing

Oracle Net Services provides the ability to balance client connections across the instances in an Oracle RAC configuration. There are two types of load balancing that you can implement: client-side and server-side load balancing. Client-side load balancing balances the connection requests across the listeners. With server-side load balancing, the SCAN listener directs a connection request to the best instance currently providing the service by using the load balancing advisory.

In an Oracle RAC database, client connections should use both types of connection load balancing.

- [Client-Side Load Balancing](#)
- [Other Client-Side Connection Features](#)
- [Server-Side Load Balancing](#)

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for detailed information about both types of load balancing

### Client-Side Load Balancing

Client-side load balancing is defined in your client connection definition (`tnsnames.ora` file, for example) by setting the parameter `LOAD_BALANCE=ON`. When you set this parameter to `ON`, Oracle Database randomly selects an address in the address list, and connects to that node's listener. This balances client connections across the available SCAN listeners in the cluster.

The SCAN listener redirects the connection request to the local listener of the instance that is least loaded and provides the requested service. When the listener receives the connection request, the listener connects the user to an instance that the listener knows provides the requested service. To see what services a listener supports, run the `lsnrctl services` command.

When clients connect using SCAN, Oracle Net automatically load balances client connection requests across the three IP addresses you defined for the SCAN, unless you are using EZConnect.

If you want to use both SCAN and non-SCAN VIPs on the client side, then set the `REMOTE_LISTENER` parameter on the Oracle RAC database to a mix of SCAN VIPs and a list of node VIPs (you must manually update the `REMOTE_LISTENER` parameter to include all the SCAN VIPs and all the node VIPs).

The following is an example of the format you use to add SCAN and node VIP information to the `tnsnames.ora` file for a two-node cluster:

```
LISTENERS_db_unique_name =
  (ADDRESS_LIST =
    (ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=scan_VIP1) (PORT = scan_port_number))
    (ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=scan_VIP2) (PORT = scan_port_number))
    (ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=scan_VIP3) (PORT = scan_port_number))
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = node_VIP_name1-vip) (PORT = listener_port_
number))
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = node_VIP_name2-vip) (PORT = listener_port_
number))
  )
```

---

**Note:** The number of node VIPs you add must correspond to the number of nodes in the cluster.

---

Run the following SQL\*Plus command:

```
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM SET REMOTE_LISTENER = 'LISTENERS_db_unique_name' SCOPE=BOTH
SID='*'
```

Alternatively, you can run the following SQL\*Plus command to update a two-node cluster:

```
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM SET remote_listener = '
(ADDRESS_LIST=
(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=scan_VIP1) (PORT = scan_port_number))
(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=scan_VIP2) (PORT = scan_port_number))
(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=scan_VIP3) (PORT = scan_port_number))
(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=node_VIP_name1-vip) (PORT = listener_port_number))
(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=node_VIP_name2-vip) (PORT = listener_port_number)))'
SCOPE=BOTH SID=*
```

### Generic Database Clients

With Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2), Oracle Net Services introduces the ability to add the `connect_timeout` and `retry_count` parameters to individual `tnsnames.ora` connection strings.

```
(CONNECT_TIMEOUT=10) (RETRY_COUNT=3)
```

The granularity is seconds. Oracle Net waits for 10 seconds to receive a response, after which it assumes a failure. Oracle Net goes through the address list three times before it returns a failure to the client.

## Other Client-Side Connection Features

In addition to client-side load balancing, Oracle Net Services include **connection failover**. If an error is returned from the chosen address in the list, Oracle Net Services tries the next address in the list until it is either successful or it has exhausted all addresses in its list. For SCAN, Oracle Net Services tries all three addresses before returning a failure to the client. EZConnect with SCAN includes this connection failover feature.

To increase availability, you can specify a timeout that specifies how long Oracle Net waits for a response from the listener before returning an error. The method of setting this timeout parameter depends on the type of client access.

### JDBC Clients

You can avoid delays by setting the `oracle.net.ns.SQLnetDef.TCP_CONNTIMEOUT_STR` property, as follows:

```
Properties prop = new Properties ();
prop.put (oracle.net.ns.SQLnetDef.TCP_CONNTIMEOUT_STR,
"" + (1 * 1000)); // 1 second
dbPools[ poolIndex ].setConnectionProperties ( prop );
```

The parameter value is specified in milliseconds. Therefore, it is possible to reduce the timeout to 500Ms if the application retries connecting.

### Oracle Call Interface Clients

For Oracle Call Interface clients, create a local `sqlnet.ora` file on the client side. Configure the connection timeout in this file by adding the following line:

```
sqlnet.outbound_connect_timeout = 1
```

The granularity of the timeout value for the Oracle Call Interface client is in seconds. The `sqlnet.ora` file affects all connections using this client.

---

---

**Note:** Do *not* configure the connection timeout in the `sqlnet.ora` file on the server.

---

---

## Server-Side Load Balancing

When you create an Oracle RAC database with DBCA, it automatically:

- Configures and enables server-side load balancing
- Sets the remote listener parameter to the SCAN listener (**Note:** If you do not use DBCA, you should set the `REMOTE_LISTENER` database parameter to `scan_name:scan_port`.)
- Creates a sample client-side load balancing connection definition in the `tnsnames.ora` file on the server

FAN, Fast Connection Failover, and the load balancing advisory depend on an accurate connection load balancing configuration that includes setting the connection load balancing goal for the service. You can use a goal of either `LONG` or `SHORT` for connection load balancing. These goals have the following characteristics:

- **LONG:** Use the `LONG` connection load balancing method for applications that have long-lived connections. This is typical for connection pools and SQL\*Forms sessions. `LONG` is the default connection load balancing goal. The following is an example of modifying a service, `batchconn`, with the `srvctl` utility to define the connection load balancing goal for long-lived sessions:

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s batchconn -j LONG
```

- **SHORT:** Use the `SHORT` connection load balancing method for applications that have short-lived connections. When using connection pools that are integrated with FAN, set the `CLB_GOAL` to `SHORT`. The following example modifies the service known as `oltpapp`, using `SRVCTL` to set the connection load balancing goal to `SHORT`:

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s oltpapp -j SHORT
```

## Fast Application Notification

This section provides a detailed description of FAN under the following topics:

- [Overview of Fast Application Notification](#)
- [Application High Availability with Services and FAN](#)
- [Managing Unplanned Outages](#)
- [Managing Planned Outages](#)
- [Fast Application Notification High Availability Events](#)
- [Using Fast Application Notification Callouts](#)

**See Also:** ["Oracle Clients That Are Integrated with Fast Application Notification"](#) on page 5-20 for more information about specific client environments that you can use with FAN

## Overview of Fast Application Notification

FAN is a notification mechanism that Oracle RAC uses to notify other processes about configuration and service level information that includes service status changes, such as UP or DOWN events. Applications can respond to FAN events and take immediate action. FAN UP and DOWN events can apply to instances, services, and nodes.

For cluster configuration changes, the Oracle RAC high availability framework publishes a FAN event immediately when a state change occurs in the cluster. Instead of waiting for the application to poll the database and detect a problem, applications can receive FAN events and react immediately. With FAN, in-flight transactions can be immediately terminated and the client notified when the instance fails.

FAN also publishes load balancing advisory events. Applications can take advantage of the load balancing advisory FAN events to direct work requests to the instance in the cluster that is currently providing the best service quality. You can take advantage of FAN events in the following three ways:

1. Your application can use FAN without programmatic changes if you use an integrated Oracle client. The integrated clients for FAN events include Oracle Database JDBC, Oracle Database ODP.NET, and Oracle Database Oracle Call Interface. This includes applications that use TAF. The integrated Oracle clients must be Oracle Database 10g release 2 (10.2) or later to take advantage of the load balancing advisory FAN events. (See the *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for more information about configuring TAF.)
2. Applications can use FAN programmatically by using the JDBC and Oracle RAC FAN application programming interface (API) or by using callbacks with Oracle Call Interface to subscribe to FAN events and to execute event handling actions upon the receipt of an event.
3. You can implement FAN with server-side callouts on your database tier.

For DOWN events, the disruption to the application can be minimized because sessions to the failed instance or node can be terminated. Incomplete transactions can be terminated and the application user is immediately notified. Application users who request connections are directed to available instances only. For UP events, when services and instances are started, new connections can be created so that the application can immediately take advantage of the extra resources. Through server-side callouts, you can also use FAN to:

- Log status information
- Page DBAs or to open support tickets when resources fail to start
- Automatically start dependent external applications that must be co-located with a service
- Change resource plans or shut down services when the number of available instances for a policy-managed database decreases, for example, if nodes fail
- Automate the fail back of a service to preferred instances for administrator-managed databases, if needed

FAN events are published using Oracle Notification Service and Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing. The publication mechanisms are automatically configured as part of your Oracle RAC installation.

Connection Manager (CMAN) and Oracle Net Services listeners are integrated with FAN events, enabling the listener and CMAN to immediately de-register services provided by the failed instance and to avoid erroneously sending connection requests to failed instances.

If you specify the connection load balancing goal `CLB_GOAL_SHORT` for the service, then the listener uses the load balancing advisory when the listener balances the connection loads. When load balancing advisory is enabled, the metrics used for the listener are finer grained.

## Application High Availability with Services and FAN

Oracle Database focuses on maintaining service availability. In Oracle RAC, Oracle services are designed to be continuously available with loads shared across one or more instances. The Oracle RAC high availability framework maintains service availability by using Oracle Clusterware and resource profiles.

The Oracle RAC high availability framework monitors the database and its services and sends event notifications using FAN. Oracle Clusterware recovers and balances services according to business rules and the service attributes.

## Managing Unplanned Outages

You can assign services to one or more instances in an administrator-managed Oracle RAC database or to server pools in a policy-managed database. If Oracle RAC detects an outage, then Oracle Clusterware isolates the failed component and recovers the dependent components. For services, if the failed component is an instance, then Oracle Clusterware relocates the service to an available instance in the cluster. FAN events can occur at various levels within the Oracle Database architecture and are published through Oracle Notification Service and Oracle Streams AQ. You can also program notification using FAN callouts.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle Database does not run Oracle RAC callouts with guaranteed ordering. Callouts are run asynchronously and they are subject to scheduling variabilities.

---

---

Notification occurs from a surviving node when the failed node is out of service. The location and number of instances in an Oracle RAC environment that provide a service are transparent to applications. Restart and recovery are automatic, including the restarting of the subsystems, such as the listener and the Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) processes, not just the database. You can use FAN callouts to report faults to your fault management system and to initiate repair jobs.

## Managing Planned Outages

For repairs, upgrades, and changes that require you to isolate one or more instances or nodes, Oracle RAC provides interfaces that relocate, disable, and enable services to minimize service disruption to application users. When you relocate a service, you indicate the service should run on another instance temporarily. If you disable a service, then the service is stopped on all database instances and is no longer available. Disabled services are not restarted automatically. Once you complete the operation, you can return the service to normal operation or enable the service and then restart it.

Due to dependencies, if you manually shutdown your database, then all of your services for that database automatically stop. If you want your services to automatically start when you manually restart the database, then you must set the management policy of the service to automatic. If you want to shut down only one instance of the database, but not the service, you can use the `srvctl stop instance` command with the `-f` option. When you use the `-f` option with this

command, the database services that were running on that instance are failed over to another instance if possible.

**See Also:** ["Service Management Policy"](#) on page 5-5

## Fast Application Notification High Availability Events

[Table 5–1](#) lists the FAN event types and [Table 5–2](#) describes name-value pairs for the event parameters. The event type is always the first entry and the timestamp is always the last entry, as in the following example:

```
FAN event type: SERVICEMEMBER VERSION=1.0
service=fantest database=ractest instance=rac1host=node01 status=up
reason=FAILURE card=1 timestamp=2010-07-02 22:06:02
```

**Table 5–1 FAN Event Types**

Event Types	Notes
DATABASE, INSTANCE, NODE, SERVICE, SERVICEMEMBER, SERVICEMETRICS, SRV_PRECONNECT.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ DATABASE and INSTANCE types list the database service as DB_UNIQUE_NAME.</li> <li>■ Events of SERVICEMETRICS type are load balancing advisory events.</li> </ul> <p><b>See Also:</b> <a href="#">Table 5–4</a> for more information about load balancing events</p>

**Table 5–2 Event Parameter Name-Value Pairs and Descriptions**

Parameter	Description
VERSION	Version of the event record. Used to identify release changes.
DATABASE	The unique name of the database supporting the service; matches the initialization parameter value for DB_UNIQUE_NAME, which defaults to the value of the DB_NAME initialization parameter.
INSTANCE	The name of the instance that supports the service; matches the ORACLE_SID value.
HOST	The name of the node that supports the service or the node that has stopped; matches the node name known to Cluster Synchronization Services (CSS).
SERVICE	The service name; matches the name of the service as listed in DBA_SERVICES.
STATUS	Values are UP, DOWN, NODEDOWN (this only applies to the NODE event type), NOT_RESTARTING, PRECONN_UP, PRECONN_DOWN, and UNKNOWN.
	<p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ When the node is down, the status is NODEDOWN, as opposed to DOWN for other event types.</li> <li>■ When STATUS=NODEDOWN and REASON=MEMBER_LEAVE, a node has failed and is no longer part of the cluster.</li> <li>■ When STATUS=NODEDOWN and REASON=PUBLIC_NW_DOWN, the node is up but it is unreachable because the public network is down.</li> </ul>

**Table 5–2 (Cont.) Event Parameter Name-Value Pairs and Descriptions**

Parameter	Description
REASON	AUTOSTART, BOOT, DEPENDENCY, FAILURE, MEMBER_LEAVE, PUBLIC_NW_DOWN, USER.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ For DATABASE and SERVICE event types, REASON=AUTOSTART if, when the node started, the AUTO_START resource attribute was set to 1, and the resource was offline before the node started</li> <li>■ For DATABASE and SERVICE event types, REASON=BOOT if, when the node started, the resource started because it was online before the node started</li> </ul>
CARDINALITY	The number of service members that are currently active; included in all SERVICEMEMBER UP events.  Following is an example of SERVICEMEMBER UP event:  SERVICEMEMBER VERSION=1.0 service=myServ.company.com database=prod instance=PROD1 host=stru09 status=up reason=USER card=1 timestamp=2010-07-27 14:43:03
INCARNATION	For NODEDOWN events; the new cluster incarnation.  Following is an example of NODEDOWN event:  NODE VERSION=1.0 host=stru09 incarn=175615351 status=down reason=member_leave timestamp=27-Jul-2010 14:49:32
TIMESTAMP	The local time zone to use when ordering notification events.

Some of the FAN event record parameters have values that correspond to values returned by the SYS\_CONTEXT function using the default namespace USERENV, as shown in [Table 5–3](#).

**Table 5–3 FAN Parameters and Matching Session Information**

FAN Parameter	Matching Session Information
SERVICE	sys_context('userenv', 'service_name')
DATABASE_UNIQUE_NAME	sys_context('userenv', 'db_unique_name')
INSTANCE	sys_context('userenv', 'instance_name')
CLUSTER_NODE_NAME	sys_context('userenv', 'server_host')

## Using Fast Application Notification Callouts

FAN callouts are server-side executables that Oracle RAC executes immediately when high availability events occur. You can use FAN callouts to automate activities when events occur in a cluster configuration, such as:

- Opening fault tracking tickets
- Sending messages to pagers
- Sending e-mail
- Starting and stopping server-side applications
- Maintaining an uptime log by logging each event as it occurs
- Relocating low-priority services when high priority services come online



To use FAN callouts, place an executable in the `Grid_home/racg/usrco` directory on every node that runs Oracle Clusterware. The executable must be able to run stand-alone when called, with optional arguments, from another program. The following is an example file for the `Grid_home/racg/usrco/callout.sh` callout:

```
#!/bin/ksh
FAN_LOGFILE= [your path name]/admin/log/'hostname`_uptime'.log
echo $* "reported="'date' >> $FAN_LOGFILE &
```

The previous example produces output similar to the following:

```
NODE VERSION=1.0 host=sun880-2 incarn=23 status=nodedown reason=
timestamp=08-Oct-2004 04:02:14 reported=Fri Oct 8 04:02:14 PDT 2004
```

The contents of a FAN event record matches the current session of the user logged on to the database, as shown in [Table 5–3](#). The user environment (USERENV) information is also available using Oracle Call Interface connection handle and descriptor attributes (using `OCIAttrGet()`). Use this information to take actions on sessions that match the FAN event data.

**See Also:**

- [Table 5–2, "Event Parameter Name-Value Pairs and Descriptions"](#) for information about the callout and event details
- *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for more information about connection handle and descriptor attributes

### User Callout Events

All user callout events originate from Oracle Clusterware. If a node goes down, or a resource (such as a VIP or a database) changes state or properties, then Oracle Clusterware sends out an Oracle Notification Service event to that effect. This event must always be pushed to at least one node in the cluster, and the best way to ensure that is to make the user callouts listen to Oracle Notification Service events from within the agent of the Oracle Notification Service resource.

If the Oracle Notification Service resource is down on a particular node, then the events on that node are lost, and so user callouts are not issued. The Oracle Notification Service event is read from within the agent of the Oracle Notification Service resource, is translated, and is posted to user callouts.

In general, events are only posted to user callouts on the node from which the event originated. For example, if the database on `node1` goes down, then the callout is posted to `node1`, only. The only exceptions to this are node down and VIP down events—these events are posted to all nodes, regardless of from where they originated.

---

**Note:** In Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.2), the two attributes *service* and *database* for event types of DATABASE or INSTANCE do not include the database domain name.

---

## Load Balancing Advisory

This section describes the load balancing advisory under the following topics:

- [Overview of the Load Balancing Advisory](#)
- [Configuring Your Environment to Use the Load Balancing Advisory](#)
- [Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events](#)

- [Monitoring Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events](#)

## Overview of the Load Balancing Advisory

Load balancing distributes work across all of the available Oracle RAC database instances. Oracle recommends that applications use persistent connections that span the instances that offer a particular service, such as when using connection pools. When using persistent connections, connections are created infrequently and exist for a long duration. Work comes into the system with high frequency, borrows these connections, and exists for a relatively short duration. The load balancing advisory provides advice about how to direct incoming work to the instances that provide the optimal quality of service for that work. This minimizes the need to relocate the work later.

By using the Load Balancing Advisory or runtime connection load balancing goals, feedback is built in to the system. Work is routed to provide the best service times globally, and routing responds gracefully to changing system conditions. In a steady state, the system approaches equilibrium with improved throughput across all of the Oracle RAC instances.

Standard architectures that can use the load balancing advisory include connection load balancing, transaction processing monitors, application servers, connection concentrators, hardware and software load balancers, job schedulers, batch schedulers, and message queuing systems. All of these applications can allocate work.

The load balancing advisory is deployed with key Oracle clients, such as a listener, the JDBC universal connection pool, and the ODP.NET Connection Pool. Third-party applications can also subscribe to load balancing advisory events by using JDBC and Oracle RAC FAN API or by using callbacks with Oracle Call Interface.

## Configuring Your Environment to Use the Load Balancing Advisory

You can configure your environment to use the load balancing advisory by defining service-level goals for each service for which you want to enable load balancing. Configuring a service-level goal enables the load balancing advisory and the publishing of FAN load balancing events for that service.

There are two types of service-level goals for runtime connection load balancing:

- **SERVICE\_TIME**: Attempts to direct work requests to instances according to response time. Load balancing advisory data is based on elapsed time for work done in the service plus available bandwidth to the service. An example for the use of **SERVICE\_TIME** is for workloads such as internet shopping where the rate of demand changes. The following example shows how to set the goal to **SERVICE\_TIME** for connections using the **online** service:

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s online -B SERVICE_TIME -j SHORT
```

- **THROUGHPUT**: Attempts to direct work requests according to throughput. The load balancing advisory is based on the rate that work is completed in the service plus available bandwidth to the service. An example for the use of **THROUGHPUT** is for workloads such as batch processes, where the next job starts when the last job completes. The following example shows how to set the goal to **THROUGHPUT** for connections using the **sjob** service:

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s sjob -B THROUGHPUT -j LONG
```

Setting the runtime connection load balancing goal to **NONE** disables load balancing for the service. You can see the goal settings for a service in the data dictionary by

querying the `DBA_SERVICES`, `V$SERVICES`, and `V$ACTIVE_SERVICES` views. You can also review the load balancing settings for a service using Oracle Enterprise Manager.

**See Also:**

- ["Administering Services"](#) on page 5-29 for more information about administering services and adding goals to services
- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about managing services using Oracle Enterprise Manager

## Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events

The load balancing advisory FAN events provide metrics for load balancing algorithms. The easiest way to take advantage of these events is to use the runtime connection load balancing feature of an Oracle integrated client such as JDBC, ODP.NET, or Oracle Call Interface. Other client applications can take advantage of FAN programatically by using the Oracle Notification Service application programming interface (ONS API) to subscribe to FAN events and execute event-handling actions upon receipt. [Table 5-4](#) describes the load balancing advisory FAN event parameters.

**Table 5-4** Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events

Parameter	Description
VERSION	Version of the event record. Used to identify release changes.
EVENT_TYPE	A load balancing advisory event is always of the <code>SERVICEMETRICS</code> event type.
SERVICE	The service name; matches the value of <code>NAME</code> in <code>DBA_SERVICES</code> .
DATABASE_UNIQUE_NAME	The unique database supporting the service; matches the initialization parameter value for <code>DB_UNIQUE_NAME</code> , which defaults to the value of the initialization parameter <code>DB_NAME</code> .
INSTANCE	The name of the instance that supports the service; matches the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> value.
PERCENT	The percentage of work requests to send to this database instance.
FLAG	Indication of the service quality relative to the service goal. Valid values are <code>GOOD</code> , <code>VIOLATING</code> , <code>NO DATA</code> , and <code>BLOCKED</code> .
TIMESTAMP	The local time zone to use when ordering notification events.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide* for more information about the Oracle RAC FAN API

## Monitoring Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events

You can use the following query against the internal queue table for load balancing advisory FAN events to monitor load balancing advisory events generated for an instance:

```
SET PAGES 60 COLSEP '|' LINES 132 NUM 8 VERIFY OFF FEEDBACK OFF
COLUMN user_data HEADING "AQ Service Metrics" FORMAT A60 WRAP
BREAK ON service_name SKIP 1
SELECT
  TO_CHAR(enq_time, 'HH:MI:SS') Enq_time, user_data
FROM sys.sys$service_metrics_tab
ORDER BY 1 ;
```

The results of this query contain rows similar to the following:

```
02:56:05|SYS$RLBTYP('hr', 'VERSION=1.0 database=sales service=hr { {in
|stance=sales_4 percent=38 flag=GOOD aff=TRUE}{instance=sales_1
| percent=62 flag=GOOD aff=TRUE} } timestamp=2010-07-16 07:56
|:05')
```

## Oracle Clients That Are Integrated with Fast Application Notification

Oracle has integrated FAN with many of the common client application environments that are used to connect to Oracle RAC databases. Therefore, the easiest way to use FAN is to use an integrated Oracle Client.

The following sections discuss how FAN is integrated with Oracle Clients and how to enable FAN events for the several specific client development environments:

- [Overview of Oracle Integrated Clients and FAN](#)
- [Enabling JDBC Clients for Fast Connection Failover](#)
- [Enabling JDBC Clients for Runtime Connection Load Balancing](#)
- [Enabling Oracle Call Interface Clients for Fast Connection Failover](#)
- [Enabling Oracle Call Interface Clients for Runtime Connection Load Balancing](#)
- [Enabling ODP.NET Clients to Receive FAN High Availability Events](#)
- [Enabling ODP.NET Clients to Receive FAN Load Balancing Advisory Events](#)

### Overview of Oracle Integrated Clients and FAN

The overall goal when using FAN is to enable applications to consistently obtain connections to available instances that provide the best service. The Oracle integrated clients you can use are Oracle Call Interface Session Pools, CMAN session pools, and JDBC and ODP.NET connection pools. The Fast Connection Failover (FCF) feature is a FAN client implemented through a connection pool.

Due to the integration with FAN, Oracle integrated clients are more aware of the current status of an Oracle RAC cluster. This prevents client connections from waiting or trying to connect to an instance that is no longer available. When instances start, Oracle RAC uses FAN to notify the connection pool so that the connection pool can create connections to the recently started instance and take advantage of the additional resources that this instance provides.

Oracle connection pools that are integrated with FAN can:

- Balance connections across all of the Oracle RAC instances when a service starts; this is preferable to directing the sessions that are defined for the connection pool to the first Oracle RAC instance that supports the service
- Remove terminated connections immediately when a service is declared `DOWN` at an instance, and immediately when nodes are declared `DOWN`
- Report errors to clients immediately when Oracle Database detects the `NOT RESTARTING` state, instead of making the client wait while the service repeatedly attempts to restart
- Balance work requests at runtime using load balancing advisory events

The use of connection pools and FAN requires that you have properly configured database connection load balancing across all of the instances that provide the services

used by the connection pool. Oracle recommends that you configure both client-side and server-side load balancing with Oracle Net Services. If you use DBCA to create your database, then both client-side and server-side load balancing are configured by default.

**See Also:** ["Connection Load Balancing"](#) on page 5-10

## Enabling JDBC Clients for Fast Connection Failover

Enabling Fast Connection Failover (FCF) for the Oracle JDBC Universal Connection Pool (UCP) enables the use of FAN high availability and load balancing advisory events. To use FAN, your application can use the JDBC development environment for either thick or thin JDBC clients. The Java Database Connectivity Oracle Call Interface (JDBC/OCI) driver connection pooling functionality is part of the JDBC client. This functionality is provided by the `OracleOCIConnectionPool` class.

The UCP is integrated to take advantage of Load Balancing Advisory information. Oracle introduced the Universal Connection Pool for JDBC in Oracle Database 11g release 11.1.0.7.0. Consequently, Oracle deprecated the existing JDBC connection pool, the Implicit Connection Cache, that was introduced in Oracle Database 10g release 1, for use with Oracle RAC databases. You can use the UCP with Oracle Database 10g or Oracle Database 11g.

To enable FCF for the JDBC client, set the `fastConnectionFailoverEnabled` property of the `OracleDataSource` class in the `oracle.jdbc.pool` package before making the first `getConnection()` request. When you enable FCF for the JDBC client, the failover property applies to every connection in the connection pool. Enabling FCF with JDBC Thin Driver (Thin driver) or JDBC/OCI clients enables the connection pool to receive and react to all FAN events.

JDBC application developers can now programatically integrate with FAN by using a set of APIs introduced in Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2). The Oracle RAC FAN APIs enable application code to receive and respond to FAN event notifications sent by Oracle RAC in the following ways:

- Listening for Oracle RAC service down, service up, and node down events
- Listening for load balancing advisory events and responding to them

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide* for more information about using APIs, configuring the JDBC universal connection pool, and Oracle Notification Service
- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about configuring JDBC clients

## Oracle Notification Service for JDBC Clients

FCF relies on Oracle Notification Service to propagate database events between the connection pool and the Oracle RAC database. At runtime, the connection pool must be able to setup an Oracle Notification Service environment. Oracle Notification Service (`ons.jar`) is included as part of the Oracle Client software. Oracle Notification Service can be configured using either remote configuration or client-side Oracle Notification Service daemon configuration. Remote Oracle Notification Service subscription offers the following advantages:

- Support for an All Java mid-tier software

- An Oracle Notification Service daemon is not necessary on the client system, so you do not have to manage this process
- Simple configuration by way of a `DataSource` property

### Configuring FCF for JDBC/OCI and JDBC Thin Driver Clients

You can enable FCF for Oracle's Implicit Connection Cache or UCP. Oracle recommends using the UCP for Java. The Implicit Connection Cache is deprecated.

This procedure explains how to enable FCF for JDBC. For JDBC/OCI clients, if you enable FCF, do not enable TAF, either on the client or for the service. To enable FCF, you must first enable the UCP, as described in the following procedure:

1. Create the connection pool and set `FastConnectionFailoverEnabled`.

The following example creates a connection pool and enables FCF. The `ucp.jar` library must be included in the classpath of an application to use this example.

```
PoolDataSource pds = PoolDataSourceFactory.getPoolDataSource();  
pds.setFastConnectionFailoverEnabled(true);
```

2. Determine the ports to use for Oracle Notification Service remote subscriptions.

Use the following command to view the Oracle Notification Service configuration on each node that is running Oracle Clusterware as in the following example:

```
srvctl config nodeapps -s
```

The output of this command lists the local and remote ports configured for Oracle Notification Service.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle Notification Service configuration should have been automatically completed during the Oracle Clusterware installation.

---

---

3. Add Oracle Notification Service daemons to remote nodes for upgraded Oracle9i databases.

The information in the Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) for Oracle Notification Service daemons is automatically configured for Oracle Database 10g and higher. If you are upgrading from an Oracle9i version of the database, then add Oracle Notification Service daemons to remote nodes (nodes outside the cluster), with the following command:

```
srvctl modify nodeapps -t host_port_list
```

4. Configure the remote Oracle Notification Service subscription.

When using the Universal Connection Pool, an application calls `setONSConfiguration` for an `OracleDataSource` instance and specifies the nodes and port numbers to use. The port numbers used for each node are the same as the remote port displayed for each node in Step 2, as shown in the following example. The `ons.jar` library must be included in the classpath of an application to use this example.

```
pds.setONSConfiguration("nodes=racnode1:6200,racnode2:6200");
```

Applications that use remote Oracle Notification Service configuration must set the `oracle.ons.oraclehome` system property to the location of `ORACLE_HOME` before starting the application, for example:

```
java -Doracle.ons.oraclehome=$ORACLE_HOME ...
```

##### 5. Configure the connection URL.

A connection factory's connection URL must use the service name syntax when using FCF. The service name is used to map the connection pool to the service. The following example demonstrates configuring the connection URL:

```
pds.setConnectionFactoryClassName("oracle.jdbc.pool.OracleDataSource");
pds.setURL("jdbc:oracle:thin://SCAN_name:1521/service_name");
.....
```

##### See Also:

- *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide* for more information about JDBC
- *Oracle Universal Connection Pool for JDBC Developer's Guide* for more information about configuring FCF

## Enabling JDBC Clients for Runtime Connection Load Balancing

UCP JDBC connection pools leverage the load balancing functionality provided by an Oracle RAC database. Runtime connection load balancing requires the use of an Oracle JDBC driver and an Oracle RAC database.

Runtime connection load balancing requires that FCF is enabled and configured properly. See "[Configuring FCF for JDBC/OCI and JDBC Thin Driver Clients](#)" on page 5-22. In addition, the Oracle RAC load balancing advisory must be configured with service-level goals for each service used by the connection pool. The connection load balancing goal should be set to `SHORT`, for example:

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s service_name -B SERVICE_TIME -j SHORT
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Universal Connection Pool for JDBC Developer's Guide* for more information about configuring runtime connection load balancing for UCP JDBC connection pools

## Enabling Oracle Call Interface Clients for Fast Connection Failover

Oracle Call Interface (OCI) clients can enable FCF by registering to receive notifications for Oracle RAC high availability FAN events and responding when events occur. Using FCF improves the session failover response time in OCI applications and also removes connections to nonfunctioning instances from connection and session pools. FCF can be used in OCI applications that also use TAF, connection pools, or session pools.

To use FCF, you must use a service with the load balancing advisory goal and the connection load balancing goal configured. The service metrics received from the Oracle RAC load balancing advisory through FAN events for the service are automatically placed in the Oracle Streams AQ queue table, `ALERT_QUEUE`. Client applications can register callbacks that are used whenever an event occurs. This reduces the time that it takes to detect a connection failure.

During `DOWN` event processing, OCI:

- Terminates affected connections at the client and returns an error

- Removes connections from the OCI connection pool and the OCI session pool—the session pool maps each session to a physical connection in the connection pool, and there can be multiple sessions for each connection
- Fails over the connection if you have configured TAF. If TAF is not configured, then the client only receives an error if the instance it is connected to fails.

If your application is using TAF, then you must enable the TAF properties for the service using SRVCTL or Oracle Enterprise Manager. Configure your OCI client applications to connect to an Oracle RAC database using the configured service.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle Call Interface does not manage UP events.

---

---

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for more information about configuring TAF

### Configuring FCF for OCI Clients

OCI applications must connect to an Oracle RAC instance to enable HA event notification. Furthermore, these applications must perform the following steps to configure FCF for an OCI client:

1. Configure the service for your OCI connection pool to enable connection load balancing and runtime connection load balancing. Also configure the service to have Advanced Queuing notifications enabled, as shown in the following example:

```
$ srvctl modify service -d crm -s ociapp.example.com -q TRUE
-B THROUGHPUT -j LONG
```

2. Set the context of the environment for OCI calls on the client to enable subscriptions by using the `OCIEnvCreate()` call, setting the `MODE` parameter value to `OCI_EVENTS`, as follows:

```
(void) OCIEnvCreate(&myenvhp, OCI_EVENTS|OCI_OBJECT, ...);
```

3. Link the application with a thread library.
4. After linking with the thread library, the applications can register a callback that is invoked whenever a FAN event occurs.

**See Also:** *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for more information about Oracle Call Interface

## Enabling Oracle Call Interface Clients for Runtime Connection Load Balancing

As of Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2), OCI session pooling enables multiple threads of an application to use a dynamically managed set of pre-created database sessions. In connection pooling, the pool element is a connection, but in session pooling, the pool element is a session. Oracle Database continually reuses the sessions in the session pool to form nearly permanent channels to the instances, thus saving the overhead of creating and closing sessions every time applications need them.

Runtime connection load balancing is enabled by default in a release 11.1 or higher client talking to a server of 10.2 or higher. For Oracle RAC environments, session pools use service metrics received from the Oracle RAC load balancing advisory<sup>1</sup> through Fast Application Notification (FAN) events to balance application session requests. The work requests coming into the session pool can be distributed across the instances of Oracle RAC offering a service, using the current service performance.



Runtime connection load balancing is basically routing work requests to sessions in a session pool that best serve the work. It comes into effect when selecting a session from an existing session pool and thus is a very frequent activity. For session pools that support services at one instance only, the first available session in the pool is adequate. When the pool supports services that span multiple instances, there is a need to distribute the work requests across instances so that the instances that are providing better service or have greater capacity get more requests.

Connect time load balancing occurs when a session is first created by the application. It is necessary that the sessions that are part of the pool be well distributed across Oracle RAC instances, at the time they are first created. This ensures that sessions on each of the instances get a chance to execute work.

### Configuring OCI Clients to Receive Load Balancing Advisory FAN Events

For Oracle RAC environments, session pools use service metrics received from the Oracle RAC load balancing advisory through Fast Application Notification (FAN) events to balance application session requests. To enable your application to receive the service metrics based on the service time, ensure you have met the following conditions:

1. Link the application with the threads library.
2. Create the OCI environment in OCI\_EVENTS and OCI\_THREADED mode.
3. Configure the load balancing advisory goal (-B option) and connection load balancing goal (-j option) for a service that is used by the session pool, as shown in the following example:

```
srvctl modify service -d crm -s ociapps -B SERVICE_TIME -j SHORT
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for more information about Oracle Call Interface

### Enabling ODP.NET Clients to Receive FAN High Availability Events

ODP.NET connection pools can subscribe to notifications that indicate when nodes, services, and service members are down. After a DOWN event, Oracle Database cleans up sessions in the connection pool that go to the instance and ODP.NET proactively removes connections that are no longer valid. ODP.NET establishes additional connections to existing Oracle RAC instances if the removal of invalid connections reduces the total number of connections to below the value for the MIN\_POOL\_SIZE parameter.

Perform the following steps to enable FAN for ODP.NET clients:

1. Enable Advanced Queuing notifications for a service by using SRVCTL as shown in the following example:

```
srvctl modify service -d crm -s odpnet.example.com -q TRUE
```

2. Grant permissions on the internal event queue table by executing the following command for the users that will be connecting by way of the ODP.NET application, where *user\_name* is the database user name:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_AQADM.GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE('DEQUEUE', 'SYS.SYS$SERVICE_METR  
ICS', user_name);
```

<sup>1</sup> Runtime connection load balancing is basically routing work requests to sessions in a session pool that can best serve the work. It comes into effect when selecting a session from an existing session pool. Thus, runtime connection load balancing is a very frequent activity.

3. Enable Fast Connection Failover for ODP.NET connection pools by subscribing to FAN high availability events. To enable FCF, include "HA Events=true" and "pooling=true" (the default value) in the connection string, as shown in the following example where *user\_name* is the name of the database user and *password* is the password for that user:

```
con.ConnectionString =
  "User Id=user_name;Password=password;Data Source=odpnet;" +
  "Min Pool Size=10;Connection Lifetime=120;Connection Timeout=60;" +
  "HA Events=true;Incr Pool Size=5;Decr Pool Size=2";
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Data Provider for .NET Developer's Guide* for more information about using FAN events in ODP.NET applications

## Enabling ODP.NET Clients to Receive FAN Load Balancing Advisory Events

Use the following procedures to enable ODP.NET clients or applications to receive FAN load balancing advisory events:

1. Enable Advanced Queuing notifications by using SRVCTL, and set the connection load balancing goal as shown in the following example:

```
srvctl modify service -d crm -s odpapp.example.com -q TRUE -j LONG
```

2. Ensure Oracle Net Services is configured for connection load balancing.
3. Grant permissions on the internal event queue table by executing the following command for the users that will be connecting by way of the ODP.NET application, where *user\_name* is the name of the database user:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_AQADM.GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE('DEQUEUE', 'SYS.SYS$SERVICE_METR  
ICS', user_name);
```

4. To take advantage of load balancing events with ODP.NET connection pools, set the load balancing attribute in the ConnectionString to TRUE (the default is FALSE). You can do this at connect time. This only works if you are using connection pools, or when the pooling attribute is set to TRUE which is the default.

The following example demonstrates how to configure the ConnectionString to enable load balancing, where *user\_name* is the name of the user and *password* is the password:

```
con.ConnectionString =
  "User Id=user_name;Password=password;Data Source=odpapp;" +
  "Min Pool Size=10;Connection Lifetime=120;Connection Timeout=60;" +
  "Load Balancing=true;Incr Pool Size=5;Decr Pool Size=2";
```

---

---

**Note:** ODP.NET does not support connection redistribution when a node starts (UP events). However, if you have enabled failover on the server-side, then ODP.NET can migrate connections to newly available instances.

---

---

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Data Provider for .NET Developer's Guide* for more information about ODP.NET
- "[srvctl modify service](#)" in [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#).

## Services and Distributed Transaction Processing in Oracle RAC

The X/Open Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP) architecture defines a standard architecture or interface that enables multiple application programs (APs) to share resources provided by multiple, and possibly different, resource managers (RMs). It coordinates the work between APs and RMs into global transactions.

The following sections discuss how Oracle RAC supports XA transactions and DTP processing:

- [Overview of XA Transactions and DTP Services](#)
- [Benefits of DTP Services for XA Transactions](#)
- [Using DTP Services with Oracle RAC](#)
- [Configuring DTP Services](#)
- [Relocating DTP Services in Administrator-Managed Databases](#)

### Overview of XA Transactions and DTP Services

An XA transaction can span Oracle RAC instances by default, allowing any application that uses the Oracle XA library to take full advantage of the Oracle RAC environment to enhance the availability and scalability of the application.

GTX $n$  background processes support global (XA) transactions in an Oracle RAC environment. The GLOBAL\_TXN\_PROCESSES initialization parameter, which is set to 1 by default, specifies the initial number of GTX $n$  background processes for each Oracle RAC instance. Use the default value for this parameter clusterwide to allow distributed transactions to span multiple Oracle RAC instances. Using the default value allows the units of work performed across these Oracle RAC instances to share resources and act as a single transaction (that is, the units of work are *tightly coupled*). It also allows 2PC requests to be sent to any node in the cluster.

Before Oracle RAC 11g release 1 (11.1), the way to achieve tight coupling in Oracle RAC was to use Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP) services, that is, services whose cardinality (one) ensured that all tightly-coupled branches landed on the same instance—regardless of whether load balancing was enabled. Tightly coupled XA transactions no longer require the special type of singleton services to be deployed on Oracle RAC databases if the XA application does not join or resume XA transaction branches. XA transactions are transparently supported on Oracle RAC databases with any type of service configuration.

---

**Note:** Oracle RAC 11g release 1 (11.1) and later does not require a DTP service but performance might be improved if you use a DTP service, as described in "[Benefits of DTP Services for XA Transactions](#)" on page 5-28.

---

An external transaction manager, such as Oracle Services for Microsoft Transaction Server (OraMTS), coordinates DTP/XA transactions. However, an internal Oracle

transaction manager coordinates distributed SQL transactions. Both DTP/XA and distributed SQL transactions must use the DTP service in Oracle RAC.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* for complete information about using Oracle XA with Oracle RAC
- *Oracle Database Reference* for information about the `GLOBAL_TXN_PROCESSES` initialization parameter

## Benefits of DTP Services for XA Transactions

To provide improved application performance with distributed transaction processing in Oracle RAC, you may want to take advantage of DTP services. Using DTP services, you can direct all branches of a distributed transaction to a single instance in the cluster. To load balance across the cluster, it is better to have several groups of smaller application servers with each group directing its transactions to a single service, or set of services, than to have one or two larger application servers.

In addition, connection pools at the application server tier that load balance across multiple connections to an Oracle RAC database can use this method to ensure that all tightly-coupled branches of a global distributed transaction run on only one Oracle RAC instance. This is also true in distributed transaction environments using protocols such as X/Open Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP) or the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (DTC).

To enhance the performance of distributed transactions, you can use services to manage DTP environments. By defining the DTP property of a service, the service is guaranteed to run on one instance at a time in an Oracle RAC database. All global distributed transactions performed through the DTP service are ensured to have their tightly-coupled branches running on a single Oracle RAC instance. This has the following benefits:

- The changes are available locally within one Oracle RAC instance when tightly coupled branches need information about changes made by each other
- Relocation and failover of services are fully supported for DTP
- By using more DTP services than there are Oracle RAC instances, Oracle Database can balance the load by services across all of the Oracle RAC database instances

## Using DTP Services with Oracle RAC

To leverage all of the instances in a cluster, create one or more DTP services for each Oracle RAC instance that hosts distributed transactions. Choose one DTP service for one distributed transaction. Choose different DTP services for different distributed transactions to balance the workload among the Oracle RAC database instances. Because all of the branches of a distributed transaction are on one instance, you can leverage all of the instances to balance the load of many DTP transactions through multiple singleton services, thereby maximizing application throughput.

If you add or delete nodes from your cluster database, then you may have to identify and relocate services that you are using for DTP transactions to ensure that you maintain optimum performance levels.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* for more information about transaction branch management in Oracle RAC

## Configuring DTP Services

To create DTP services for distributed transaction processing, perform the following steps:

1. Create a singleton service using Oracle Enterprise Manager or SRVCTL.

For an administrator-managed database, define only one instance as the preferred instance. You can have as many available instances as you want, for example:

```
srvctl add service -d crm -s xa_01.example.com -r RAC01 -a RAC02,RAC03
```

For a policy-managed database, specify the server pool to use, and set the cardinality of the service to `SINGLETON`, for example:

```
srvctl add service -d crm -s xa_01.example.com -g dtp_pool -c SINGLETON
```

2. Set the DTP option (`-x`) for the service to `TRUE` (the default value is `FALSE`). You can use Oracle Enterprise Manager or SRVCTL to modify the DTP property of the singleton service. The following example shows how to modify the `xa_01.example.com` service using SRVCTL:

```
srvctl modify service -d crm -s xa_01.example.com -x TRUE
```

## Relocating DTP Services in Administrator-Managed Databases

If the instance that provides a DTP service, for example `XA_01`, fails, then the singleton service fails over to an available instance, such as `RAC02` or `RAC03`.

If services migrate to other instances, then you might have to force the relocation of the service back to the preferred instance after it is restarted to evenly re-balance the load on all of the available hardware. You can use data from the `GV$ACTIVE_SERVICES` view to determine whether you need to relocate the STP service.

## Administering Services

You can create and administer services with Oracle Enterprise Manager and the SRVCTL utility. The following sections describe how to perform service-related tasks using these tools:

- [Overview of Service Administration](#)
- [Administering Services with Oracle Enterprise Manager](#)
- [Administering Services with SRVCTL](#)

---



---

**Note:** You can also use the `DBMS_SERVICE` package to create or modify services and service attributes, but SRVCTL or Oracle Enterprise Manager will override any settings made using this package. The `DBMS_SERVICE` package is not recommended for use with services used by an Oracle RAC database.

---



---

## Overview of Service Administration

When you create and administer services, you are dividing the work that your database performs into manageable units. The goal of using services is to achieve optimal utilization of your database infrastructure. You can create and deploy services based on business requirements. Oracle Database can measure the performance for each service. Using the `DBMS_MONITOR` package, you can define both the application

modules within a service and the individual actions for a module and monitor thresholds for these actions, enabling you to manage workloads to deliver capacity on demand.

To create a service, you can use either Oracle Enterprise Manager, or SRVCTL. When you create new services for your database, you should define the automatic workload management characteristics for each service, as described in "[Service Characteristics](#)" on page 5-4.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Quality of Service Management User's Guide* if you are using Oracle Database QoS Management with your Oracle cluster for details on how to configure the database services
- "[Oracle Clients That Are Integrated with Fast Application Notification](#)" on page 5-20 for more details

In addition to creating services, you can:

- **Delete a service.** You can delete services that you created. However, you cannot delete or modify the properties of the default database service that Oracle Database created.
- **Check the status of a service.** A service can be assigned different roles among the available instances. In a complex database with many services, you may not remember the details of every service. Therefore, you may have to check the status on an instance or service basis. For example, you may have to know the status of a service for a particular instance before you make modifications to that instance or to the Oracle home from which it runs.
- **Start or stop a service for a database or an instance.** A service must be started before it can be used for client connections to that instance. If you shut down your database, for example, by running the SRVCTL command `srvctl stop database -d db_unique_name` where *db\_unique\_name* is the name of the database you want to stop, then Oracle Database stops all services to that database. Depending on the service management policy, you may have to manually restart the services when you start the database.

---

---

**Note:** If Oracle Database QoS Management is enabled for the Oracle RAC database, then the services are automatically restarted after they are stopped.

---

---

- **Map a service to a consumer group.** Oracle Database can automatically map services to Resource Manager Consumer groups to limit the amount of resources that services can use in an instance. You must create the consumer group and then map the service to the consumer group.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for information about the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING_PRI` procedure

- **Enable or disable a service for a database or an instance.** By default, Oracle Clusterware attempts to restart a service automatically after failures. You can prevent this behavior by disabling a service. Disabling a service is useful when

you must perform database or instance maintenance, for example, if you are performing an upgrade and you want to prevent connection requests.

- **Relocate a service to a different instance.** You can move a service from one instance to another instance to re-balance workloads, for example, after adding or deleting cluster nodes.

---



---

**Notes:**

- When you use services, do not set a value for the `SERVICE_NAMES` parameter; Oracle Database controls the setting for this parameter for the services that you create and for the default database service. The service features that this chapter describes are not directly related to the features that Oracle Database provides when you set `SERVICE_NAMES`. In addition, setting a value for this parameter may override some benefits of using services.
  - If you specify a service using the `DISPATCHERS` initialization parameter, it overrides any service in the `SERVICE_NAMES` parameter, and cannot be managed. (For example, stopping the service with a `SRVCTL` command does not stop users connecting with the service.)
- 
- 

## Administering Services with Oracle Enterprise Manager

The Cluster Managed Database Services page is the master page for beginning all tasks related to services. To access this page, go to the Cluster Database Availability page, then click **Cluster Managed Database Services** in the Services section. You can use this page and drill down from this page to perform the following tasks:

- View a list of services for the cluster
- View the instances on which each service is currently running
- View the status for each service
- Create or edit a service
- Start or stop a service
- Enable or disable a service
- Perform instance-level tasks for a service
- Delete a service

---



---

**Note:** You must have `SYSDBA` credentials to access a cluster database. Cluster Managed Database Services does not permit you to connect as anything other than `SYSDBA`.

---



---

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Enterprise Manager* online help for more information about administering services with Oracle Enterprise Manager
- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about using Oracle Enterprise Manager to manage services

## Administering Services with SRVCTL

When you create a service by using SRVCTL, you must start the service with a separate SRVCTL command. However, you may later have to manually stop or restart the service. You may also have to disable the service to prevent automatic restarts, to manually relocate the service, or obtain status information about the service. The following sections explain how to use SRVCTL to perform the following administrative tasks:

- [Creating Services with SRVCTL](#)
- [Starting and Stopping Services with SRVCTL](#)
- [Enabling and Disabling Services with SRVCTL](#)
- [Relocating Services with SRVCTL](#)
- [Obtaining the Statuses of Services with SRVCTL](#)
- [Obtaining the Configuration of Services with SRVCTL](#)

**See Also:** [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for more information about SRVCTL commands that you can use to manage services, including descriptions of options

### Creating Services with SRVCTL

To create a service with SRVCTL, enter a command from the command line using the following syntax:

```
srvctl add service -d db_unique_name -s service_name -t edition_name
{-r preferred_list [-a available_list]} | {-g server_pool
[-c {UNIFORM | SINGLETON}] [-k net_number]}
[-P {BASIC | NONE}] [-l {[PRIMARY] | [PHYSICAL_STANDBY] | [LOGICAL_STANDBY] |
[SNAPSHOT_STANDBY]}] [-y {AUTOMATIC | MANUAL}] [-q {TRUE | FALSE}]
[-x {TRUE | FALSE}] [-j {SHORT | LONG}] [-B {NONE | SERVICE_TIME | THROUGHPUT}]
[-e {NONE | SESSION | SELECT}] [-m {NONE | BASIC}] [-z failover_retries]
[-w failover_delay]
```

---

**Note:** The *service\_name* initialization parameter has a 4 kilobyte (KB) limit for its value. Therefore, the total length of the names of all services assigned to an instance cannot exceed 4 KB.

---

### Starting and Stopping Services with SRVCTL

For applications to connect using a server, the service must be started. If you stop a service, then it is temporarily unavailable, but is still subject to automatic restart and failover.

Enter the following SRVCTL syntax from the command line to stop or start a service:

```
srvctl start service -d database_unique_name [-s service_name_list] [-i inst_name]
[-o start_options]
```

```
srvctl stop service -d database_unique_name -s service_name_list [-i inst_name]
[-o start_options]
```

### Enabling and Disabling Services with SRVCTL

If you disable a service, then Oracle Clusterware does not consider the service for automatic startup, failover, or restart. You might disable a service when performing



application maintenance, to ensure the service is not accidentally restarted by Oracle Clusterware until your maintenance operations are complete. To make the service available for normal operation again, you enable the service.

Use the following SRVCTL syntax from the command line to enable and disable services:

```
srvctl enable service -d database_unique_name -s service_name_list [-i inst_name]
srvctl disable service -d database_unique_name -s service_name_list [-i inst_name]
```

### Relocating Services with SRVCTL

Run the `srvctl relocate service` command from the command line to relocate a service. You might use this command when a service has failed over to an available instance, but you want to move it back to the preferred instance after that instance is restarted.

The following command relocates the `crm` service from instance `apps1` to instance `apps3`:

```
srvctl relocate service -d apps -s crm -i apps1 -t apps3
```

### Obtaining the Statuses of Services with SRVCTL

Run the `srvctl status service` command from the command line to obtain the status of a service. For example, the following command returns the status of the services that are running on the `apps` database:

```
srvctl status service -d apps
```

```
Service erp is running on nodes: apps02,apps03
Service hr is running on nodes: apps02,apps03
Service sales is running on nodes: apps01,apps04
```

### Obtaining the Configuration of Services with SRVCTL

Run the `srvctl config service` command from the command line to obtain the high availability configuration of a service. For example, the following command returns the configuration of the `erp` service that is running on the `apps` database:

```
srvctl config service -d apps -s erp
```

```
Service name: erp
Service is enabled
Server pool: spl
Cardinality: UNIFORM
Disconnect: false
Service role: PRIMARY
Management policy: AUTOMATIC
DTP transaction: false
AQ HA notificaitons: false
Failover type: NONE
Failover method: NONE
TAF failover retries: 0
TAF failover delay: 0
Connection Load Balancing Goal: LONG
Runtime Load Balancing Goal: SERVICE_TIME
TAF policy specification: NONE
Edition:
Service is enabled on nodes:
Service is disabled on nodes:
```

**See Also:** [Appendix A, "Server Control Utility Reference"](#) for information about other administrative tasks that you can perform with SRVCTL

## Measuring Performance by Service Using the Automatic Workload Repository

Services add a new dimension for performance tuning. With services, workloads are visible and measurable, and therefore resource consumption and wait times are attributable by application. Tuning by using 'service and SQL' replaces tuning by 'session and SQL' in the majority of systems where all sessions are anonymous and shared.

The Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) maintains performance statistics that include information about response time, throughput, resource consumption, and wait events for all services and work that a database performs. Oracle Database also maintains metrics, statistics, wait events, wait classes, and SQL-level traces for services. You can optionally augment these statistics by defining modules within your application to monitor certain statistics. You can also define the actions within those modules that business critical transactions should execute in response to particular statistical values.

Enable module and action monitoring using the DBMS\_MONITOR PL/SQL package. For example, for connections that use the `erp` service, the following command enables monitoring for the `exceptions pay` action in the `payroll` module:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE(SERVICE_NAME => 'ERP',
MODULE_NAME=> 'PAYROLL', ACTION_NAME => 'EXCEPTIONS PAY');
```

For connections that use the `erp` service, the following command enables monitoring for all actions in the `payroll` module:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE(SERVICE_NAME => 'ERP',
MODULE_NAME=> 'PAYROLL', ACTION_NAME => NULL);
```

Use the `DBA_ENABLED_AGGREGATIONS` view to verify that you have enabled monitoring for application modules and actions.

Statistics aggregation and tracing by service are global in scope for Oracle RAC databases. In addition, these statistic aggregations are persistent across instance restarts and service relocations for both Oracle RAC and noncluster Oracle databases.

The service, module, and action names are visible in `V$SESSION`, `V$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY`, and `V$SQL` views. The call times and performance statistics are visible in `V$SERVICE_STATS`, `V$SERVICE_EVENT`, `V$SERVICE_WAIT_CLASS`, `V$SERVICEMETRIC`, and `V$SERVICEMETRIC_HISTORY`. When you enable statistics collection for an important transaction, you can see the call speed for each service, module, and action name at each database instance using the `V$SERV_MOD_ACT_STATS` view.

The following sample SQL\*Plus script provides service quality statistics for a five second interval. You can use these service quality statistics to monitor the quality of a service, to direct work, and to balance services across Oracle RAC instances:

```
SET PAGESIZE 60 COLSEP '|' NUMWIDTH 8 LINESIZE 132 VERIFY OFF FEEDBACK OFF
COLUMN service_name FORMAT A20 TRUNCATED HEADING 'Service'
COLUMN begin_time HEADING 'Begin Time' FORMAT A10
COLUMN end_time HEADING 'End Time' FORMAT A10
COLUMN instance_name HEADING 'Instance' FORMAT A10
```

```

COLUMN service_time HEADING 'Service Time|mSec/Call' FORMAT 999999999
COLUMN throughput HEADING 'Calls/sec'FORMAT 99.99
BREAK ON service_name SKIP 1
SELECT
    service_name
    , TO_CHAR(begin_time, 'HH:MI:SS') begin_time
    , TO_CHAR(end_time, 'HH:MI:SS') end_time
    , instance_name
    , elapsedpercall service_time
    , callsperssec throughput
FROM
    gv$instance i
    , gv$active_services s
    , gv$servicemetric m
WHERE s.inst_id = m.inst_id
      AND s.name_hash = m.service_name_hash
      AND i.inst_id = m.inst_id
      AND m.group_id = 10
ORDER BY
    service_name
    , i.inst_id
    , begin_time ;

```

## Automatic Workload Repository Service Thresholds and Alerts

Service level thresholds enable you to compare actual service levels against required levels of service. This provides accountability for the delivery or the failure to deliver an agreed service level. The end goal is a predictable system that achieves service levels. There is no requirement to perform as fast as possible with minimum resource consumption; the requirement is to meet the *quality* of service.

AWR allows you to explicitly specify two performance thresholds for each service: the response time for calls (ELAPSED\_TIME\_PER\_CALL), and the CPU time for calls (CPU\_TIME\_PER\_CALL). The response time threshold indicates that the elapsed time for each user call for each service should not exceed a certain value, and the CPU time for calls threshold indicates that the time spent using the CPU for each call for each service should not exceed a certain value. Response time is a fundamental measure that reflects all delays and faults that might be blocking the call from running on behalf of the user. Response time can also indicate differences in node power across the nodes of an Oracle RAC database.

You must set these thresholds on each instance of an Oracle RAC database. The elapsed time and CPU time are calculated as the moving average of the elapsed, server-side call time. The AWR monitors the elapsed time and CPU time and publishes AWR alerts when the performance exceeds the thresholds. You can schedule actions using Oracle Enterprise Manager jobs for these alerts, or you can schedule actions to occur programmatically when the alert is received. You can respond to these alerts by changing the priority of a job, stopping overloaded processes, or by relocating, starting or stopping a service. This permits you to maintain service availability despite changes in demand.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Example of Services and Thresholds Alerts](#)
- [Enable Service, Module, and Action Monitoring](#)

## Example of Services and Thresholds Alerts

In this scenario, you need to check the thresholds for the payroll service. You can use the AWR report to get this information. You should compare the results from reports run over several successive intervals during which time the system is running optimally. For example, assume that for servers accessed by a payroll application, the AWR report runs each Thursday during the peak usage times of 1:00 p.m. to 5:00 p.m. The AWR report contains the response time, or elapsed database time, and the CPU consumption time, or CPU time, for calls for each server, including the `payroll` service. The AWR report also provides a breakdown of the work done and the wait times that are contributing to the response times.

Using `DBMS_MONITOR`, you set a warning threshold for the elapsed time per call for the `payroll` service at 0.5 seconds (500000 microseconds). You also set a critical threshold for the elapsed time per call for the `payroll` service at 0.75 seconds (750000 microseconds).

In this example, thresholds are added for the `payroll` service as follows:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.SET_THRESHOLD(
METRICS_ID => DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.ELAPSED_TIME_PER_CALL
, warning_operator => DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.OPERATOR_GE
, warning_value => '500000'
, critical_operator => DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.OPERATOR_GE
, critical_value => '750000'
, observation_period => 30
, consecutive_occurrences => 5
, instance_name => NULL
, object_type => DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.OBJECT_TYPE_SERVICE
, object_name => 'payroll');
```

You can verify the threshold configuration is set on all the instances using the following `SELECT` statement:

```
SELECT METRICS_NAME, INSTANCE_NAME, WARNING_VALUE, CRITICAL_VALUE,
OBSERVATION_PERIOD FROM dba_thresholds ;
```

## Enable Service, Module, and Action Monitoring

You can enable performance data tracing for important modules and actions within each service. The performance statistics are available in the `V$SERV_MOD_ACT_STATS` view. For example, you might decide to set the following:

- For the ERP service, enable monitoring for the `exceptions pay` action in the `payroll` module.
- For the ERP service, enable monitoring for the all actions in the `payroll` module.
- For the `HOT_BATCH` service, enable monitoring for all actions in the `posting` module.

The following commands show how to enable the module and action monitoring for the services:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE(service_name => 'erp', module_name=>
'payroll', action_name => 'exceptions pay');
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE(service_name => 'erp', module_name=>
'payroll', action_name => NULL);
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE(service_name => 'hot_batch',
module_name =>'posting', action_name => NULL);
```

To verify monitoring is enabled for the service, module, and actions, use the following SELECT statement:

```
COLUMN AGGREGATION_TYPE FORMAT A21 TRUNCATED HEADING 'AGGREGATION'  
COLUMN PRIMARY_ID FORMAT A20 TRUNCATED HEADING 'SERVICE'  
COLUMN QUALIFIER_ID1 FORMAT A20 TRUNCATED HEADING 'MODULE'  
COLUMN QUALIFIER_ID2 FORMAT A20 TRUNCATED HEADING 'ACTION'  
SELECT * FROM DBA_ENABLED_AGGREGATIONS ;
```

The output might appear as follows:

AGGREGATION	SERVICE	MODULE	ACTION
SERVICE_MODULE_ACTION	ERP	PAYROLL	EXCEPTIONS PAY
SERVICE_MODULE_ACTION	ERP	PAYROLL	
SERVICE_MODULE_ACTION	HOT_BATCH	POSTING	



---

---

# Configuring Recovery Manager and Archiving

This chapter explains how to configure Recovery Manager (RMAN) for use in Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environments. This chapter also provides procedures for using for archiving in Oracle RAC environments and discusses online redo log and archived redo log considerations.

The topics in this chapter include:

- [Overview of Configuring RMAN for Oracle RAC](#)
- [Archiving Mode in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Configuring the RMAN Snapshot Control File Location](#)
- [Configuring RMAN to Automatically Backup the Control File and SPFILE](#)
- [Crosschecking on Multiple Oracle RAC Nodes](#)
- [Configuring Channels for RMAN in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Managing Archived Redo Logs Using RMAN in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Archived Redo Log File Conventions in Oracle RAC](#)
- [RMAN Archiving Configuration Scenarios](#)
- [Monitoring the Archiver Processes](#)

## Overview of Configuring RMAN for Oracle RAC

RMAN enables you to back up, restore, and recover data files, control files, server parameter files (SPFILEs) and archived redo log files. RMAN is included with Oracle Database and does not require separate installation. You can run RMAN from the command line or use RMAN in the Backup Manager in Oracle Enterprise Manager.

## Archiving Mode in Oracle RAC

In order for redo log files to be archived, the Oracle RAC database must be in ARCHIVELOG mode. You can run the `ALTER DATABASE SQL` statement to change the archiving mode in Oracle RAC, because the database is mounted by the local instance but not open in any instances. You do not need to modify parameter settings to run this statement.

---

**Notes:**

- The ARCHIVELOG mode is set at the database level, not the instance level. Either all instances archive or none do.
  - You can also change the archive log mode by using the Recovery Settings page in the **Maintenance** tab of the Oracle Enterprise Manager Oracle RAC Database Home Page.
- 

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about setting the archiving mode

## Configuring the RMAN Snapshot Control File Location

The snapshot control file is a copy of a database control file created in an operating system-specific location by RMAN. RMAN creates the snapshot control file so that it has a consistent version of a control file to use when either resynchronizing the recovery catalog or backing up the control file.

You can specify a **cluster file system** or a raw device destination for the location of your snapshot control file. This file is shared across all nodes in the **cluster** and *must* be accessible by all nodes in the cluster. Run the following RMAN command to determine the configured location of the snapshot control file:

```
SHOW SNAPSHOT CONTROLFILE NAME;
```

You can change the configured location of the snapshot control file. For example, on Linux and UNIX systems you can specify the snapshot control file location as `ORACLE_HOME/dbs/scf/snap_prod.cf` by entering the following at the RMAN prompt:

```
CONFIGURE SNAPSHOT CONTROLFILE NAME TO 'ORACLE_HOME/dbs/scf/snap_prod.cf';
```

This command sets the configuration for the location of the snapshot control file for every instance of your **cluster database**. Therefore, ensure that the directory `ORACLE_HOME/dbs/scf` exists on all nodes that perform backups.

The `CONFIGURE` command creates persistent settings across RMAN sessions. Therefore, you do not need to run this command again unless you want to change the location of the snapshot control file.

To delete a snapshot control file you must first change the snapshot control file location, then delete the file at the older location, as follows:

```
CONFIGURE SNAPSHOT CONTROLFILE NAME TO 'new_name';  
DELETE COPY OF CONTROLFILE;
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery Reference* for more information about configuring the snapshot control file

## Configuring RMAN to Automatically Backup the Control File and SPFILE

If you set `CONFIGURE CONTROLFILE AUTOBACKUP` to `ON`, then RMAN automatically creates a control file and an SPFILE backup after you run the `BACKUP` or `COPY` commands. RMAN can also automatically restore an SPFILE, if this is required to start an instance to perform recovery, because the default location for the SPFILE must be available to all nodes in your Oracle RAC database.



These features are important in disaster recovery because RMAN can restore the control file even without a recovery catalog. RMAN can restore an autobackup of the control file even after the loss of both the recovery catalog and the current control file. You can change the default name that RMAN gives to this file with the `CONFIGURE CONTROLFILE AUTOBACKUP FORMAT` command. Note that if you specify an absolute path name in this command, then this path must exist identically on all nodes that participate in backups.

RMAN performs the control file autobackup on the first allocated channel. Therefore, when you allocate multiple channels with different parameters, especially when you allocate a channel with the `CONNECT` command, determine which channel will perform the control file autobackup. Always allocate the channel for this node first.

Besides using the RMAN control file, you can also use Oracle Enterprise Manager to use the RMAN features.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for more information about using the control file autobackup feature

## Crosschecking on Multiple Oracle RAC Nodes

When crosschecking on multiple nodes (and when operating RMAN in general), configure the cluster so that all backups can be accessed by every node, regardless of which node created the backup. When the cluster is configured this way, you can allocate channels to any node in the cluster during restore or crosscheck operations.

If you cannot configure the cluster so that each node can access all backups, then during restore and crosscheck operations, you must allocate channels on multiple nodes by providing the `CONNECT` option to the `CONFIGURE CHANNEL` command, so that every backup can be accessed by at least one node. If some backups are not accessible during crosscheck because no channel was configured on the node that can access those backups, then those backups are marked `EXPIRED` in the RMAN repository after the crosscheck.

For example, you can use `CONFIGURE CHANNEL . . . CONNECT` in an Oracle RAC configuration in which tape backups are created on various nodes in the cluster and each backup is only accessible on the node on which it is created. This is described in more detail in "[Configuring Channels to Use a Specific Node](#)" on page 6-4.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for more information about crosschecking

## Configuring Channels for RMAN in Oracle RAC

This section describes how to configure channels for RMAN. You can configure channels to use automatic load balancing or you can specify specific channels for specific instances as described in the following topics:

- [Configuring Channels to Use Automatic Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Channels to Use a Specific Node](#)

### Configuring Channels to Use Automatic Load Balancing

To configure channels to use automatic load balancing, use the following syntax:

```
CONFIGURE DEVICE TYPE [disk | sbt] PARALLELISM number_of_channels;  
...
```

Where *number\_of\_channels* is the number of channels that you want to use for the operation. After you complete this one-time configuration, you can issue BACKUP or RESTORE commands.

## Configuring Channels to Use a Specific Node

To configure one RMAN channel for each policy-managed Oracle RAC database instance, use the following syntax:

```
CONFIGURE CHANNEL DEVICE TYPE sbt CONNECT '@racinst_1'  
CONFIGURE CHANNEL DEVICE TYPE sbt CONNECT '@racinst_2'  
...
```

After this one-time configuration step, you can issue the BACKUP or RESTORE commands.

## Managing Archived Redo Logs Using RMAN in Oracle RAC

When a node generates an archived redo log, Oracle Database always records the filename of the log in the control file of the target database. If you are using a recovery catalog, then RMAN also records the archived redo log filenames in the recovery catalog when a resynchronization occurs.

The archived redo log naming scheme that you use is important because when a node writes to a log with a specific file name on its file system, the file must be readable by any node that must access this archived redo log. For example, if node1 archives a log to `/oracle/arc_dest/log_1_100_23452345.arc`, then node2 can back up this archived redo log only if it can read `/oracle/arc_dest/log_1_100_23452345.arc` on its own file system.

The backup and recovery strategy that you choose depends on how you configure the archiving destinations for each node. Whether only one node or all nodes perform archived redo log backups, you must ensure that all archived redo logs are backed up. If you use RMAN parallelism during recovery, then the node that performs recovery must have read access to all archived redo logs in your cluster.

Multiple nodes can restore archived logs in parallel. However, during recovery, only one node applies the archived logs. Therefore, the node that is performing the recovery must be able to access all of the archived logs that are needed for the recovery operation. By default, the database determines the optimum number of parallel threads to use during the recovery operation. You can use the PARALLEL clause in the RECOVER command to change the number of parallel threads.

### Guidelines and Considerations for Archived Redo Logs

The primary consideration is to ensure that all archived redo logs can be read from every node during recovery, and, if possible, during backups. During recovery, if the archived log destinations are visible from the node that performs the recovery, then Oracle Database can successfully recover the archived log data.

## Archived Redo Log File Conventions in Oracle RAC

For any archived redo log configuration, uniquely identify the archived redo logs with the LOG\_ARCHIVE\_FORMAT parameter. The format of this parameter is operating system-specific and it can include text strings, one or more variables, and a filename extension.

**Table 6–1 Archived Redo Log File Name Format Parameters**

Parameter	Description	Example
%r	Resetlogs identifier, not padded	log_1_62_23452345
%R	Resetlogs identifier, left-zero-padded	log_1_62_0023452345
%s	Log sequence number, not padded	log_251
%S	Log sequence number, left-zero-padded	log_0000000251
%t	Thread number, not padded	log_1
%T	Thread number, left-zero-padded	log_0001

All of the file name format parameters for the archive redo logs, in either upper or lowercase, are mandatory for Oracle RAC. These parameters enable Oracle Database to create unique names for archive logs across the incarnation. This requirement is in effect when the COMPATIBLE parameter is set to 10.0 or greater.

Use the %R or %r parameters to include the `resetlogs` identifier to avoid overwriting the logs from a previous incarnation. If you do not specify a log format, then the default is operating system-specific and includes %t, %s, and %r.

As an example, if the instance associated with redo thread number 1 sets LOG\_ARCHIVE\_FORMAT to `log_%t_%s_%r.arc`, then its archived redo log files are named:

```
log_1_1000_23435343.arc
log_1_1001_23452345.arc
log_1_1002_23452345.arc
...
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* about specifying the archived redo log filename format and destination, and Oracle Database platform-specific documentation about the default log archiving format and destination

## RMAN Archiving Configuration Scenarios

This section describes the archiving scenarios for an Oracle RAC database. The two configuration scenarios in this chapter describe a three-node UNIX cluster for an Oracle RAC database. For both scenarios, the LOG\_ARCHIVE\_FORMAT that you specify for the instance performing recovery must be the same as the format that you specified for the instances that archived the redo log files.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Oracle Automatic Storage Management and Cluster File System Archiving Scheme](#)
- [Noncluster File System Local Archiving Scheme](#)

### Oracle Automatic Storage Management and Cluster File System Archiving Scheme

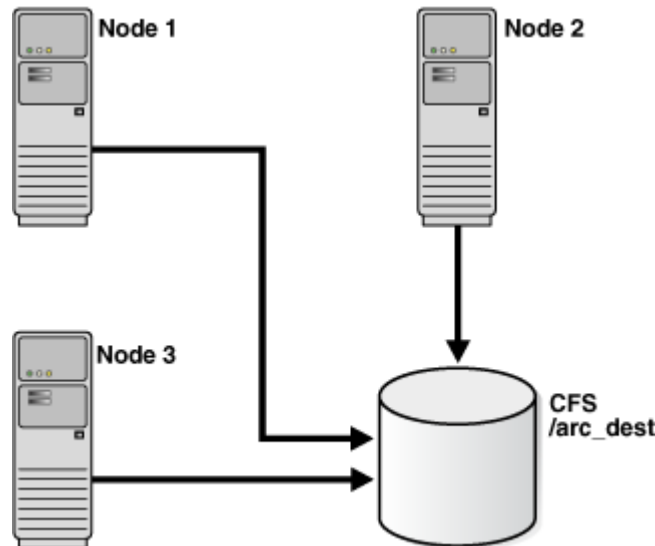
The preferred configuration for Oracle RAC is to use Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) for a recovery area using a disk group for your recovery set that is different from the disk group used for your data files. When you use Oracle ASM, it uses an Oracle Managed Files naming format.

Alternatively, you can use a cluster file system archiving scheme. If you use a cluster file system, then each node writes to a single location on the cluster file system when archiving the redo log files. Each node can read the archived redo log files of the other

nodes. For example, as shown in [Figure 6–1](#), if Node 1 archives a redo log file to `/arc_dest/log_1_100_23452345.arc` on the cluster file system, then any other node in the cluster can also read this file.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for more information about managing space in the recovery area and backing up archived redo logs with RMAN

**Figure 6–1 Cluster File System Archiving Scheme**




---

**Note:** The archive log naming format in this example is only for a cluster file system example.

---

If you do not use a cluster file system, then the archived redo log files cannot be on raw devices. This is because raw devices do not enable sequential writing of consecutive archive log files.

### Advantages of the Cluster File System Archiving Scheme

The advantage of this scheme is that none of the nodes uses the network to archive logs. Because the file name written by a node can be read by any node in the cluster, RMAN can back up all logs from any node in the cluster. Backup and restore scripts are simplified because each node has access to all archived redo logs.

### Initialization Parameter Settings for the Cluster File System Archiving Scheme

In the cluster file system scheme, each node archives to a directory that is identified with the same name on all instances within the cluster database (`/arc_dest`, in the following example). To configure this directory, set values for the `LOG_ARCH_DEST_1` parameter, as shown in the following example:

```
*.LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_1="LOCATION=/arc_dest"
```

The following list shows archived redo log entry examples that would appear in the RMAN catalog or in the control file based on the previous example. Note that any node can archive logs using any of the threads:

```
/arc_dest/log_1_999_23452345.arc
```

```

/arc_dest/log_1_1000_23435343.arc
/arc_dest/log_1_1001_23452345.arc <- thread 1 archived in node3
/arc_dest/log_3_1563_23452345.arc <- thread 3 archived in node2
/arc_dest/log_2_753_23452345.arc <- thread 2 archived in node1
/arc_dest/log_2_754_23452345.arc
/arc_dest/log_3_1564_23452345.arc

```

### Location of Archived Logs for the Cluster File System Archiving Scheme

Because the file system is shared and because each node is writing its archived redo logs to the `/arc_dest` directory in the cluster file system, each node can read the logs written by itself and any other node.

## Noncluster File System Local Archiving Scheme

When archiving locally to a noncluster file system, each node archives to a uniquely named local directory. If recovery is required, then you can configure the recovery node so that it can access directories on the other nodes remotely. For example, use NFS on Linux and UNIX computers, or mapped drives on Windows systems. Therefore, each node writes only to a local destination, but each node can also read archived redo log files in remote directories on the other nodes.

### Considerations for Using Noncluster File System Local Archiving

If you use noncluster file system local archiving for media recovery, then you must configure the node that is performing recovery for remote access to the other nodes so that it can read the archived redo log files in the archive directories on the other nodes. In addition, if you are performing recovery and you do not have all of the available archive logs, then you must perform an incomplete recovery up to the first missing archived redo log sequence number. You do not have to use a specific configuration for this scheme. However, to distribute the backup processing onto multiple nodes, the easiest method is to configure channels as described in the backup scenarios in [Chapter 7, "Managing Backup and Recovery"](#).

---

**Note:** Because different file systems are used in a noncluster case, the archive log directories must be unique on each node. For example, `/arc_dest_1` is only available on `node1`, `/arc_dest_2` is only directly mounted on `node2`, and so on.

Then `node1` mounts `/arc_dest_2` from `node2` and `/arc_dest_3` from `node3` through NFS.

---

### Initialization Parameter Settings for Noncluster File System Local Archiving

You can set the archiving destination values as follows in the initialization parameter file for either policy-managed or administrator-managed databases.

Set the the `SID.LOG_ARCH_DEST` parameter for each instance using the SID designator, as shown in the following example:

```

sid1.LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_1="LOCATION=/arc_dest_1"
sid2.LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_1="LOCATION=/arc_dest_2"
sid3.LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_1="LOCATION=/arc_dest_3"

```

For policy-managed databases, manually create a node and instance binding to ensure that `sid1` always runs on the same node, as follows:

```

$ srvctl modify database -d mydb -n node1 -i sid1
$ srvctl modify database -d mydb -n node2 -i sid2

```

```
$ srvctl modify database -d mydb -n node3 -i sid3
```

The following list shows the possible archived redo log entries in the database control file. Note that any node can read archived redo logs from any of the threads, which must happen in order for the database to recover after a failure.

```
/arc_dest_1/log_1_1000_23435343.arc
/arc_dest_2/log_1_1001_23452345.arc <- thread 1 archived in node2
/arc_dest_2/log_3_1563_23452345.arc <- thread 3 archived in node2
/arc_dest_1/log_2_753_23452345.arc <- thread 2 archived in node1
/arc_dest_2/log_2_754_23452345.arc
/arc_dest_3/log_3_1564_23452345.arc
```

### Location of Archived Logs for Noncluster File System Local Archiving

As illustrated in [Table 6–2](#), each of three nodes has a directory containing the locally archived redo logs. Additionally, if you mount directories on the other nodes remotely through NFS or mapped drives, then each node has two remote directories through which RMAN can read the archived redo log files that are archived by the remaining nodes.

---

**Note:** The archive log destinations, similar to those shown in [Table 6–2](#), must be different on each node so that if you mount the NFS directory on a different node, then it does not conflict with an existing archive log directory

---

**Table 6–2 UNIX/NFS Location Log Examples, Noncluster File System Local Archiving**

Node	Reads the archived redo log files in the directory	For logs archived by node
1	/arc_dest_1	1
1	/arc_dest_2	2 (through NFS)
1	/arc_dest_3	3 (through NFS)
2	/arc_dest_1	1 (through NFS)
2	/arc_dest_2	2
2	/arc_dest_3	3 (through NFS)
3	/arc_dest_1	1 (through NFS)
3	/arc_dest_2	2 (through NFS)
3	/arc_dest_3	3

### File System Configuration for Noncluster File System Local Archiving

If you are performing recovery and a surviving instance must read all of the logs that are on disk but not yet backed up, then you should configure NFS as shown in [Table 6–3](#).

**Table 6–3 UNIX/NFS Configuration for Shared Read Local Archiving Examples**

Node	Directory...	Is configured...	And mounted on...	On node...
1	/arc_dest_1	Local read/write	n/a	n/a
1	/arc_dest_2	NFS read	/arc_dest_2	2
1	/arc_dest_3	NFS read	/arc_dest_3	3

**Table 6–3 (Cont.) UNIX/NFS Configuration for Shared Read Local Archiving Examples**

Node	Directory...	Is configured...	And mounted on...	On node...
2	/arc_dest_1	NFS read	/arc_dest_1	1
2	/arc_dest_2	Local read/write	n/a	n/a
2	/arc_dest_3	NFS read	/arc_dest_3	3
3	/arc_dest_1	NFS read	/arc_dest_1	1
3	/arc_dest_2	NFS read	/arc_dest_2	2
3	/arc_dest_3	Local read/write	n/a	n/a

---

**Note:** Windows users can achieve the same results depicted in the examples in this section by using mapped drives.

---

## Monitoring the Archiver Processes

After your RMAN configuration is operative in your Oracle RAC environment, use the `GV$ARCHIVE_PROCESSES` and `V$ARCHIVE_PROCESSES` views to determine the status of the archiver processes. Depending on whether you query the global or local views, these views display information for all database instances, or for only the instance to which you are connected.

---

**Note:** If you use the `kill` command to stop the archiver process, then the database instance will fail.

---

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about the archiver processes
- *Oracle Database Reference* for more information about the database views





---

---

## Managing Backup and Recovery

This chapter explains instance recovery and how to use Recovery Manager (RMAN) to back up and restore Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) databases. This chapter also describes Oracle RAC instance recovery, parallel backup, recovery with SQL\*Plus, and using the Fast Recovery Area in Oracle RAC. The topics in this chapter include:

- [RMAN Backup Scenario for Noncluster File System Backups](#)
- [RMAN Restore Scenarios for Oracle RAC](#)
- [Instance Recovery in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Media Recovery in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Parallel Recovery in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Using a Fast Recovery Area in Oracle RAC](#)

---

---

**Note:** For restore and recovery in Oracle RAC environments, you do not have to configure the instance that performs the recovery to also be the sole instance that restores all of the data files. In Oracle RAC, data files are accessible from every node in the **cluster**, so any node can restore archived redo log files.

---

---

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about backing up and restoring the Oracle Clusterware components such as the Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) and the voting disk

### RMAN Backup Scenario for Noncluster File System Backups

In a non**cluster file system** environment, each node can back up only to a locally mounted noncluster file system directory. For example, `node1` cannot access the archived redo log files on `node2` or `node3` unless you configure the network file system for remote access. If you configure a network file system file for backups, then each node backs up its archived redo logs to a local directory.

### RMAN Restore Scenarios for Oracle RAC

This section describes the following common RMAN restore scenarios:

- [Restoring Backups from a Cluster File System](#)
- [Restoring Backups from a Noncluster File System](#)

- [Using RMAN or Oracle Enterprise Manager to Restore the Server Parameter File \(SPFILE\)](#)

---



---

**Note:** The restore and recovery procedures in a cluster file system scheme do not differ substantially from Oracle noncluster scenarios.

---



---

## Restoring Backups from a Cluster File System

The scheme that this section describes assumes that you are using the ["Oracle Automatic Storage Management and Cluster File System Archiving Scheme"](#) on page 6-5. In this scheme, assume that `node3` performed the backups to a cluster file system. If `node3` is available for the restore and recovery operation, and if all of the archived logs have been backed up or are on disk, then run the following commands to perform complete recovery:

```
RESTORE DATABASE;
RECOVER DATABASE;
```

If `node3` performed the backups but is unavailable, then configure a media management device for one of the remaining nodes and make the backup media from `node3` available to this node.

---



---

**Note:** If you configured RMAN as described in ["Configuring Channels to Use Automatic Load Balancing"](#) on page 6-3, then, in order to load balance the channels across nodes, note that channels cannot be load balanced before at least one instance has successfully opened the database. This means that the channels will not be load balanced across the nodes during a full database restore. To achieve load balancing of channels for `RESTORE` and `RECOVER` commands, you can temporarily reallocate channels by running commands similar to the following:

```
run {
  ALLOCATE CHANNEL DEVICE TYPE sbt C1 CONNECT '@racinst_1'
  ALLOCATE CHANNEL DEVICE TYPE sbt C2 CONNECT '@racinst_2'
  ...
}
```

---



---

## Restoring Backups from a Noncluster File System

The scheme that this section describes assumes that you are using the ["Noncluster File System Local Archiving Scheme"](#) on page 6-7. In this scheme, each node archives locally to a different directory. For example, `node1` archives to `/arc_dest_1`, `node2` archives to `/arc_dest_2`, and `node3` archives to `/arc_dest_3`. You must configure a network file system file so that the recovery node can read the archiving directories on the remaining nodes.

If all nodes are available and if all archived redo logs have been backed up, then you can perform a complete restore and recovery by mounting the database and running the following commands from any node:

```
RESTORE DATABASE;
RECOVER DATABASE;
```

Because the network file system configuration enables each node read access to the redo log files on other nodes, then the recovery node can read and apply the archived

redo logs located on the local and remote disks. No manual transfer of archived redo logs is required.

## Using RMAN or Oracle Enterprise Manager to Restore the Server Parameter File (SPFILE)

RMAN can restore the server parameter file either to the default location or to a location that you specify.

You can also use Oracle Enterprise Manager to restore the SPFILE. From the Backup/Recovery section of the **Maintenance** tab, click **Perform Recovery**. The Perform Recovery link is context-sensitive and navigates you to the SPFILE restore only when the database is closed.

## Instance Recovery in Oracle RAC

Instance failure occurs when software or hardware problems disable an instance. After instance failure, Oracle Database automatically uses the online redo logs to perform recovery as described in this section.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Single Node Failure in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Multiple-Node Failures in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Using RMAN to Create Backups in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Node Affinity Awareness of Fast Connections](#)
- [Deleting Archived Redo Logs after a Successful Backup](#)
- [Autolocation for Backup and Restore Commands](#)

### Single Node Failure in Oracle RAC

Instance recovery in Oracle RAC does not include the recovery of applications that were running on the failed instance. Oracle Clusterware restarts the instance automatically.

Applications that were running on a node before it failed continue running by using failure recognition and recovery. This provides consistent and uninterrupted service if hardware or software fails. When one instance performs recovery for another instance, the surviving instance reads online redo logs generated by the failed instance and uses that information to ensure that committed transactions are recorded in the database. Thus, data from committed transactions is not lost. The instance performing recovery rolls back transactions that were active at the time of the failure and releases resources used by those transactions.

---

---

**Note:** All online redo logs must be accessible for instance recovery. Therefore, Oracle recommends that you mirror your online redo logs.

---

---

### Multiple-Node Failures in Oracle RAC

When multiple node failures occur, if one instance survives, then Oracle RAC performs instance recovery for any other instances that fail. If all instances of an Oracle RAC database fail, then Oracle Database automatically recovers the instances the next time one instance opens the database. The instance performing recovery can mount

the database in either **cluster database** or exclusive mode from any node of an Oracle RAC database. This recovery procedure is the same for Oracle Database running in shared mode as it is for Oracle Database running in exclusive mode, except that one instance performs instance recovery for all of the failed instances.

## Using RMAN to Create Backups in Oracle RAC

Oracle Database provides RMAN for backing up and restoring the database. RMAN enables you to back up, restore, and recover data files, control files, SPFILEs, and archived redo logs. RMAN is included with the Oracle Database server and it is installed by default. You can run RMAN from the command line or you can use it from the Backup Manager in Oracle Enterprise Manager. In addition, RMAN is the recommended backup and recovery tool if you are using Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM). The procedures for using RMAN in Oracle RAC environments do not differ substantially from those for Oracle noncluster environments.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for more information about noncluster RMAN backup procedures

### Channel Connections to Cluster Instances with RMAN

Channel connections to the instances are determined using the connect string defined by channel configurations. For example, in the following configuration, three channels are allocated using `dbauser/pwd@service_name`. If you configure the SQL Net service name with load balancing turned on, then the channels are allocated at a node as decided by the load balancing algorithm.

```
CONFIGURE DEVICE TYPE sbt PARALLELISM 3;
CONFIGURE DEFAULT DEVICE TYPE TO sbt;
CONFIGURE CHANNEL DEVICE TYPE SBT CONNECT 'dbauser/pwd@service_name'
```

However, if the service name used in the connect string is not for load balancing, then you can control at which instance the channels are allocated using separate connect strings for each channel configuration, as follows:

```
CONFIGURE DEVICE TYPE sbt PARALLELISM 3;
CONFIGURE CHANNEL 1.. CONNECT 'dbauser/pwd@mydb_1';
CONFIGURE CHANNEL 2.. CONNECT 'dbauser/pwd@mydb_2';
CONFIGURE CHANNEL 3.. CONNECT 'dbauser/pwd@mydb_3';
```

In the previous example, it is assumed that `mydb_1`, `mydb_2` and `mydb_3` are SQL\*Net service names that connect to pre-defined nodes in your Oracle RAC environment. Alternatively, you can also use manually allocated channels to backup your database files. For example, the following command backs up the SPFILE, controlfile, data files and archived redo logs:

```
RUN
{
  ALLOCATE CHANNEL CH1 CONNECT 'dbauser/pwd@mydb_1';
  ALLOCATE CHANNEL CH2 CONNECT 'dbauser/pwd@mydb_2';
  ALLOCATE CHANNEL CH3 CONNECT 'dbauser/pwd@mydb_3';
  BACKUP DATABASE PLUS ARCHIVED LOG;
}
```

During a backup operation, if at least one channel allocated has access to the archived log, then RMAN automatically schedules the backup of the specific log on that channel. Because the control file, SPFILE, and data files are accessible by any channel, the backup operation of these files is distributed across the allocated channels.

For a local archiving scheme, there must be at least one channel allocated to all of the nodes that write to their local archived logs. For a cluster file system archiving scheme, if every node writes the archived logs in the same cluster file system, then the backup operation of the archived logs is distributed across the allocated channels.

During a backup, the instances to which the channels connect must be either all mounted or all open. For example, if the instance on `node1` has the database mounted while the instances on `node2` and `node3` have the database open, then the backup fails.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery Reference* for more information about the `CONNECT` clause of the `CONFIGURE CHANNEL` statement

## Node Affinity Awareness of Fast Connections

In some cluster database configurations, some nodes of the cluster have faster access to certain data files than to other data files. RMAN automatically detects this situation, which is known as node affinity awareness. When deciding which channel to use to back up a particular data file, RMAN gives preference to the nodes with faster access to the data files that you want to back up. For example, if you have a three-node cluster, and if `node1` has faster read/write access to data files 7, 8, and 9 than the other nodes, then `node1` has greater node affinity to those files than `node2` and `node3`.

## Deleting Archived Redo Logs after a Successful Backup

If you have configured the automatic channels as defined in section "[Channel Connections to Cluster Instances with RMAN](#)" on page 7-4, then you can use the following example to delete the archived logs that you backed up  $n$  times. The device type can be `DISK` or `SBT`:

```
DELETE ARCHIVELOG ALL BACKED UP  $n$  TIMES TO DEVICE TYPE device_type;
```

During a delete operation, if at least one channel allocated has access to the archived log, then RMAN automatically schedules the deletion of the specific log on that channel. For a local archiving scheme, there must be at least one channel allocated that can delete an archived log. For a cluster file system archiving scheme, assuming that every node writes to the archived logs on the same cluster file system, the archived log can be deleted by any allocated channel.

If you have not configured automatic channels, then you can manually allocate the maintenance channels as follows and delete the archived logs.

```
ALLOCATE CHANNEL FOR MAINTENANCE DEVICE TYPE DISK CONNECT 'SYS/oracle@node1';
ALLOCATE CHANNEL FOR MAINTENANCE DEVICE TYPE DISK CONNECT 'SYS/oracle@node2';
ALLOCATE CHANNEL FOR MAINTENANCE DEVICE TYPE DISK CONNECT 'SYS/oracle@node3';
DELETE ARCHIVELOG ALL BACKED UP  $n$  TIMES TO DEVICE TYPE device_type;
```

## Autolocation for Backup and Restore Commands

RMAN automatically performs autolocation of all files that it must back up or restore. If you use the noncluster file system local archiving scheme, then a node can only read the archived redo logs that were generated by an instance on that node. RMAN never attempts to back up archived redo logs on a channel it cannot read.

During a restore operation, RMAN automatically performs the autolocation of backups. A channel connected to a specific node only attempts to restore files that were backed up to the node. For example, assume that log sequence 1001 is backed up to the drive attached to `node1`, while log 1002 is backed up to the drive attached to

node2. If you then allocate channels that connect to each node, then the channel connected to node1 can restore log 1001 (but not 1002), and the channel connected to node2 can restore log 1002 (but not 1001).

## Media Recovery in Oracle RAC

Media recovery must be user-initiated through a client application, whereas instance recovery is automatically performed by the database. In these situations, use RMAN to restore backups of the data files and then recover the database. The procedures for RMAN media recovery in Oracle RAC environments do not differ substantially from the media recovery procedures for noncluster environments.

The node that performs the recovery must be able to restore all of the required data files. That node must also be able to either read all of the required archived redo logs on disk or be able to restore them from backups.

When recovering a database with encrypted tablespaces (for example after a `SHUTDOWN ABORT` or a catastrophic error that brings down the database instance), you must open the Oracle Wallet after database mount and before you open the database, so the recovery process can decrypt data blocks and redo.

## Parallel Recovery in Oracle RAC

Oracle Database automatically selects the optimum degree of parallelism for instance, crash, and media recovery. Oracle Database applies archived redo logs using an optimal number of parallel processes based on the availability of CPUs. You can use parallel instance recovery and parallel media recovery in Oracle RAC databases as described under the following topics:

- [Parallel Recovery with RMAN](#)
- [Disabling Parallel Recovery](#)

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for more information on these topics

### Parallel Recovery with RMAN

With RMAN's `RESTORE` and `RECOVER` commands, Oracle Database automatically makes parallel the following three stages of recovery:

**Restoring Data Files** When restoring data files, the number of channels you allocate in the RMAN recover script effectively sets the parallelism that RMAN uses. For example, if you allocate five channels, you can have up to five parallel streams restoring data files.

**Applying Incremental Backups** Similarly, when you are applying incremental backups, the number of channels you allocate determines the potential parallelism.

**Applying Archived Redo Logs** With RMAN, the application of archived redo logs is performed in parallel. Oracle Database automatically selects the optimum degree of parallelism based on available CPU resources.

### Disabling Parallel Recovery

You can override parallel recovery using the procedures under the following topics:

- [Disabling Instance and Crash Recovery Parallelism](#)

- [Disabling Media Recovery Parallelism](#)

### Disabling Instance and Crash Recovery Parallelism

To disable parallel instance and crash recovery on a system with multiple CPUs, set the `RECOVERY_PARALLELISM` parameter in the database initialization parameter file, `SPFILE`, to 0 or 1.

### Disabling Media Recovery Parallelism

Use the `NOPARALLEL` clause of the `RMAN RECOVER` command or the `ALTER DATABASE RECOVER` statement to force Oracle Database to use non-parallel media recovery.

## Using a Fast Recovery Area in Oracle RAC

To use a fast recovery area in Oracle RAC, you must place it on an Oracle ASM disk group, a Cluster File System, or on a shared directory that is configured through a network file system file for each Oracle RAC instance. In other words, the fast recovery area must be shared among all of the instances of an Oracle RAC database. In addition, set the parameter `DB_RECOVERY_FILE_DEST` to the same value on all instances.

Oracle Enterprise Manager enables you to set up a fast recovery area. To use this feature:

1. From the Cluster Database home page, click the **Maintenance** tab.
2. Under the Backup/Recovery options list, click **Configure Recovery Settings**.
3. Specify your requirements in the Fast Recovery Area section of the page.
4. Click **Help** on this page for more information.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for information about setting up and configuring the fast recovery area





---

---

# Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster

This chapter describes how to clone Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database homes on Linux and UNIX systems to nodes in a new cluster. To extend Oracle RAC to nodes in an existing cluster, see [Chapter 9, "Using Cloning to Extend Oracle RAC to Nodes in the Same Cluster"](#).

This chapter describes a noninteractive cloning technique that you implement with scripts. The cloning techniques described in this chapter are best suited for performing multiple simultaneous cluster installations. Creating the scripts is a manual process and can be error prone. If you only have one cluster to install, then you should use the traditional automated and interactive installation methods, such as Oracle Universal Installer, or the Provisioning Pack feature of Oracle Enterprise Manager.

---

---

**Note:** Cloning is not a replacement for Oracle Enterprise Manager cloning that is a part of the Provisioning Pack. During Oracle Enterprise Manager cloning, the provisioning process interactively asks you the details about the Oracle home (such as the location to which you want to deploy the clone, the name of the Oracle Database home, a list of the nodes in the cluster, and so on).

The Provisioning Pack feature of Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control provides a framework to make it easy for you to automate the provisioning of new nodes and clusters. For data centers with many Oracle RAC clusters, the investment in creating a cloning procedure to easily provision new clusters and new nodes to existing clusters is worth the effort.

---

---

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Introduction to Cloning Oracle RAC](#)
- [Preparing to Clone Oracle RAC](#)
- [Deploying Oracle RAC Clone to Nodes in a Cluster](#)
- [Locating and Viewing Log Files Generated During Cloning](#)

## Introduction to Cloning Oracle RAC

Cloning is the process of copying an existing Oracle RAC installation to a different location and updating the copied bits to work in the new environment. The changes made by one-off patches applied on the source Oracle home, would also be present

after the clone operation. The source and the destination path (host to be cloned) need not be the same.

Some situations in which cloning is useful are:

- Cloning provides a way to prepare an Oracle home once and deploy it to many hosts simultaneously. You can complete the installation silently, as a noninteractive process. You do not need to use a graphical user interface (GUI) console and you can perform cloning from a Secure Shell (SSH) terminal session, if required.
- Cloning enables you to create an installation (copy of a production, test, or development installation) with all patches applied to it in a single step. Once you have performed the base installation and applied all patch sets and patches on the source system, the clone performs all of these individual steps as a single procedure. This is in contrast to going through the installation process to perform the separate steps to install, configure, and patch the installation on each node in the cluster.
- Installing Oracle RAC by cloning is a very quick process. For example, cloning an Oracle home to a new cluster of more than two nodes requires a few minutes to install the Oracle base software, plus a few minutes more for each node (approximately the amount of time it takes to run the `root.sh` script).

The cloned installation behaves the same as the source installation. For example, the cloned Oracle home can be removed using Oracle Universal Installer or patched using OPatch. You can also use the cloned Oracle home as the source for another cloning operation. You can create a cloned copy of a test, development, or production installation by using the command-line cloning scripts. The default cloning procedure is adequate for most usage cases. However, you can also customize various aspects of cloning, for example, to specify custom port assignments, or to preserve custom settings.

The cloning process works by copying all of the files from the source Oracle home to the destination Oracle home. Thus, any files used by the source instance that are located outside the source Oracle home's directory structure are not copied to the destination location.

The size of the binaries at the source and the destination may differ because these are relinked as part of the clone operation and the operating system patch levels may also differ between these two locations. Additionally, the number of files in the cloned home would increase because several files copied from the source, specifically those being instantiated, are backed up as part of the clone operation.

## Preparing to Clone Oracle RAC

In the preparation phase, you create a copy of an Oracle home that you then use to perform the cloning procedure on one or more nodes. You also install Oracle Clusterware.

### Step 1 Install Oracle RAC

Use the detailed instructions in the *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide* to install the Oracle RAC software and patches:

1. Install Oracle RAC and choose the **Software only** installation option.
2. Patch the release to the required level (for example, 11.2.0.*n*).
3. Apply one-off patches, if necessary.

**Step 2 Create a backup of the source home**

Create a copy of the Oracle RAC home. Use this file to copy the Oracle RAC home to each node in the cluster (as described in ["Deploying Oracle RAC Clone to Nodes in a Cluster"](#) on page 8-3).

When creating the backup (tar) file, the best practice is to include the release number in the name of the file. For example:

```
# cd /opt/oracle/product/11g/db_1
# tar -zcvf /pathname/db1120.tgz .
```

**Step 3 Install and start Oracle Clusterware**

Before you can use cloning to create an Oracle RAC home, you must first install and start Oracle Clusterware on the node or nodes to which you want to copy a cloned Oracle RAC home. In other words, you configure an Oracle RAC home that you cloned from a source cluster onto the nodes in a target cluster in the same order that you installed the Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC software components on the original nodes.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about cloning Oracle Clusterware homes to create new clusters, and starting Oracle Clusterware by issuing the `crsctl start crs` command

## Deploying Oracle RAC Clone to Nodes in a Cluster

After you complete the prerequisite tasks described in ["Preparing to Clone Oracle RAC"](#) on page 8-2, you can deploy cloned Oracle homes.

Deploying the Oracle RAC database home to a cluster is a multiple-step process.

This section provides step-by-step instructions that describe how to:

1. [Prepare the new cluster nodes](#)
2. [Deploy the Oracle RAC database software](#)
3. [Run the clone.pl script on each node](#)
4. [Run the \\$ORACLE\\_HOME/root.sh script on each node](#)
5. [Run DBCA on one node to create the Oracle RAC instances on each node](#)

**Step 1 Prepare the new cluster nodes**

Perform the Oracle RAC preinstallation steps, including such things as:

- Specify the kernel parameters.
- Ensure Oracle Clusterware is active.
- Ensure that Oracle ASM is active and that at least one Oracle ASM disk group exists and is mounted.

See your platform-specific Oracle RAC installation guide for a complete preinstallation checklist.

**Step 2 Deploy the Oracle RAC database software**

To deploy the Oracle RAC software, you must:

1. Copy the clone of the Oracle home to all nodes. For example:

```
[root@node1 root]# mkdir -p /opt/oracle/product/11g/db
```

```
[root@node1 root]# cd /opt/oracle/product/11g/db
[root@node1 db]# tar -zxvf /path_name/db1120.tgz
```

When providing the home location and *path\_name*, the home location can be in the same directory path or in a different directory path from the source home that you used to create the tar.

2. If either the `oracle` user or the `oinstall` group, or both is different between the source and destination nodes, then change the ownership of the Oracle Inventory files, as follows:

```
[root@node1]# chown -R oracle:oinstall /opt/oracle/product/11g/db
```

When you run the preceding command on the Grid home, it clears `setuid` and `setgid` information from the Oracle binary.

---

**Note:** You can perform this step at the same time you perform Step 3 and Step 4 to run the `clone.pl` and `$ORACLE_HOME/root.sh` scripts on each cluster node.

---

### Step 3 Run the `clone.pl` script on each node

To run the `clone.pl` script, which performs the main Oracle RAC cloning tasks, you must:

- Supply the environment variables and cloning parameters in the `start.sh` script, as described in [Table 8–2](#) and [Table 8–3](#). Because the `clone.pl` script is sensitive to the parameters being passed to it, you must be accurate in your use of brackets, single quotation marks, and double quotation marks.
- Run the script as `oracle` or the user that owns the Oracle RAC software.

[Table 8–1](#) lists and describes the `clone.pl` script parameters.

**Table 8–1** *clone.pl* Script Parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home</code>	The complete path to the Oracle home you want to clone. If you specify an invalid path, then the script exits. This parameter is required.
<code>ORACLE_BASE=ORACLE_BASE</code>	The complete path to the Oracle base you want to clone. If you specify an invalid path, then the script exits. This parameter is required.
<code>ORACLE_HOME_NAME=Oracle_home_name   -defaultHomeName</code>	The Oracle home name of the home you want to clone. Optionally, you can specify the <code>-defaultHomeName</code> flag. This parameter is optional.
<code>OSDBA_GROUP=group_name</code>	Specify the operating system group you want to use as the OSDBA privileged group. This parameter is optional.
<code>OSOPER_GROUP=group_name</code>	Specify the operating system group you want to use as the OSOPER privileged group. This parameter is optional.
<code>OSASM_GROUP=group_name</code>	Specify the operating system group you want to use as the OSASM privileged group. This parameter is optional.
<code>-O</code>	The <code>clone.pl</code> script passes anything following this flag to the Oracle Universal Installer command line.
<code>-debug</code>	Specify this option to run the <code>clone.pl</code> script in debug mode

**Table 8–1 (Cont.) clone.pl Script Parameters**

Parameter	Description
-help	Specify this option to obtain help for the clone.pl script.

[Example 8–1](#) shows an excerpt from the start.sh script that calls the clone.pl script.

**Example 8–1 Excerpt From the start.sh Script to Clone Oracle RAC for Linux and UNIX**

```
ORACLE_BASE=/opt/oracle
ORACLE_HOME=/opt/oracle/product/11g/db
cd $ORACLE_HOME/clone
THISNODE=`hostname -s`

E01=ORACLE_HOME=/opt/oracle/product/11g/db
E02=ORACLE_HOME_NAME=OraDBRAC
E03=ORACLE_BASE=/opt/oracle
C01="-O\"CLUSTER_NODES={node1, node2}\""
C02="-O\"LOCAL_NODE=$THISNODE\""

perl $ORACLE_HOME/clone/bin/clone.pl $E01 $E02 $E03 $C01 $C02
```

[Example 8–2](#) shows an excerpt from the start.bat script that the user must create that calls the clone.pl script.

**Example 8–2 Excerpt From the start.bat Script to Clone Oracle RAC for Windows**

```
set ORACLE_home=C:\oracle\product\11g\db1
cd %ORACLE_home%\clone\bin
set THISNODE=%hostname%
set E01=ORACLE_HOME=%ORACLE_home%
set E02=ORACLE_HOME_NAME=OraDBRAC
set E03=ORACLE_BASE=Oracle_Base
set C01="-O\"CLUSTER_NODES={node1,node2}\""
set C02="-O\"LOCAL_NODE=%THISNODE%\""
perl clone.pl %E01% %E02% %E03% %C01% %C02%
```

[Table 8–2](#) describes the environment variables E01, E02, and E03 that are shown in bold typeface in [Example 8–1](#).

**Table 8–2 Environment Variables Passed to the clone.pl Script**

Symbol	Variable	Description
E01	ORACLE_HOME	The location of the Oracle RAC database home. This directory location must exist and must be owned by the Oracle operating system group: oinstall.
E02	ORACLE_HOME_NAME	The name of the Oracle home for the Oracle RAC database. This is stored in the Oracle Inventory.
E03	ORACLE_BASE	The location of the Oracle Base directory.

[Table 8–3](#) describes the cloning parameters C01 and C02, that are shown in bold typeface in [Example 8–1](#).

**Table 8–3 Cloning Parameters Passed to the clone.pl Script.**

Variable	Name	Parameter	Description
C01	Cluster Nodes	CLUSTER_NODES	Lists the nodes in the cluster.
C02	Local Node	LOCAL_NODE	The name of the local node.

**Step 4 Run the \$ORACLE\_HOME/root.sh script on each node**


---

**Note:** This step applies to Linux and UNIX installations, only.

---

Run the `$ORACLE_HOME/root.sh` as the `root` operating system user as soon as the `clone.pl` procedure completes on the node.

```
[root@node1 root]# /opt/oracle/product/11g/db/root.sh -silent
```

Note that you can run the script on each node simultaneously:

```
[root@node2 root]# /opt/oracle/product/11g/db/root.sh -silent
```

Ensure the script has completed on each node before proceeding to the next step.

**Step 5 Run DBCA on one node to create the Oracle RAC instances on each node**


---

**Note:** You need only run DBCA on one node in the cluster to create Oracle RAC instances on all nodes.

---

This step shows how to run the DBCA in silent mode and provide response file input to create the Oracle RAC instances.

The following example creates an Oracle RAC database named ERI on each node, creates database instances on each node, registers the instances in OCR, creates the database files in the Oracle ASM disk group called `DATA`, and creates sample schemas. It also sets the `SYS`, `SYSTEM`, `SYSMAN` and `DBSNMP` passwords to `password`, which is the password for each account:

```
[oracle@node1 oracle]$ export ORACLE_HOME=/opt/oracle/product/11g/db
[oracle@node1 oracle]$ cd $ORACLE_HOME/bin/
[oracle@node1 bin]$ ./dbca -silent -createDatabase -templateName General_
Purpose.dbc \
-gdbName ERI -sid ERI \
-sysPassword password -systemPassword password \
-sysmanPassword password -dbsnmpPassword password \
-emConfiguration LOCAL \
-storageType ASM -diskGroupName DATA \
-datafileJarLocation $ORACLE_HOME/assistants/dbca/templates \
-nodelist node1,node2 -characterSet WE8ISO8859P1 \
-obfuscatedPasswords false -sampleSchema true
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day DBA* for information about using DBCA to create and configure a database

## Locating and Viewing Log Files Generated During Cloning

The cloning script runs multiple tools, each of which may generate its own log files. After the `clone.pl` script finishes running, you can view log files to obtain more information about the cloning process.

The following log files that are generated during cloning are the key log files of interest for diagnostic purposes:

- `Central_Inventory/logs/cloneActionstimestamp.log`  
Contains a detailed log of the actions that occur during the Oracle Universal Installer part of the cloning.
- `Central_Inventory/logs/oraInstalltimestamp.err`  
Contains information about errors that occur when Oracle Universal Installer is running.
- `Central_Inventory/logs/oraInstalltimestamp.out`  
Contains other miscellaneous messages generated by Oracle Universal Installer.
- `$ORACLE_HOME/clone/logs/clonetimestamp.log`  
Contains a detailed log of the actions that occur before cloning and during the cloning operations.
- `$ORACLE_HOME/clone/logs/errortimestamp.log`  
Contains information about errors that occur before cloning and during cloning operations.

[Table 8–4](#) describes how to find the location of the Oracle inventory directory.

**Table 8–4 Finding the Location of the Oracle Inventory Directory**

Type of System...	Location of the Oracle Inventory Directory
All UNIX computers except Linux and IBM AIX	<code>/var/opt/oracle/oraInst.loc</code>
IBM AIX and Linux	<code>/etc/oraInst.loc</code> file.
Windows	<code>C:\Program Files\Oracle\Inventory</code>





---

---

## Using Cloning to Extend Oracle RAC to Nodes in the Same Cluster

This chapter provides information about using cloning to extend Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) to nodes in an existing cluster. To add Oracle RAC to nodes in a new cluster, see [Chapter 8, "Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster"](#).

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [About Adding Nodes Using Cloning in Oracle RAC Environments](#)
- [Cloning Local Oracle Homes on Linux and UNIX Systems](#)
- [Cloning Shared Oracle Homes on Linux and UNIX Systems](#)
- [Cloning Oracle Homes on Windows Systems](#)

**See Also:**

- ["Introduction to Cloning Oracle RAC"](#) on page 8-1 for an overview of cloning and a discussion about the benefits of cloning
- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about adding nodes to your cluster

### About Adding Nodes Using Cloning in Oracle RAC Environments

The cloning procedures assume that you have successfully installed and configured an Oracle RAC environment to which you want to add nodes and instances. To add nodes to an Oracle RAC environment using cloning, first extend the Oracle Clusterware configuration, then extend the Oracle Database software with Oracle RAC, and then add the listeners and instances by running the Oracle assistants

The cloning script runs multiple tools, each of which may generate its own log files. After the `clone.pl` script finishes running, you can view log files to obtain more information about the cloning process. See ["Locating and Viewing Log Files Generated During Cloning"](#) on page 8-7 for more information.

### Cloning Local Oracle Homes on Linux and UNIX Systems

This section explains how to add nodes to existing Oracle RAC environments by cloning a local (non-shared) Oracle home in Linux and UNIX system environments.

Complete the following steps to clone Oracle Database with Oracle RAC software:

1. Follow the steps in the "[Preparing to Clone Oracle RAC](#)" on page 8-2 to create a copy of an Oracle home that you then use to perform the cloning procedure on one or more nodes.
2. Use the `tar` utility to create an archive of the Oracle home on the existing node and copy it to the new node. If the location of the Oracle home on the source node is `$ORACLE_HOME`, then you must use this same directory as the destination location on the new node.
3. On the new node, configure the environment variables `ORACLE_HOME` and `ORACLE_BASE`. Then go to the `$ORACLE_HOME/clone/bin` directory and run the following command where *existing\_node* is the name of the node that you are cloning, *new\_node2* and *new\_node3* are the names of the new nodes, and *Oracle\_home\_name* is the name of the Oracle home:

```
perl clone.pl '-O"CLUSTER_NODES={existing_node,new_node2,new_node3}"'
'-O"LOCAL_NODE=new_node2"' ORACLE_BASE=$ORACLE_BASE ORACLE_HOME=$ORACLE_HOME
ORACLE_HOME_NAME=Oracle_home_name '-O-noConfig'
```

---

---

**Note:** If you run this command on Windows, then *do not* use the `-O` option.

---

---

4. Run the following command to run the configuration assistants to configure Oracle RAC on the new nodes:

```
$ORACLE_HOME/cfgtoollogs/configToolFailedCommands
```

This script contains all commands that failed, were skipped, or were cancelled during the installation. You can use this script to run the database configuration assistants outside of Oracle Universal Installer. Note that before you run the script you should check the script to see if any passwords within it need to be updated.

5. Run the following command on the existing node from the `$ORACLE_HOME/oui/bin` directory to update the inventory in the Oracle Database home with Oracle RAC, specified by *Oracle\_home*, where *existing\_node* is the name of the original node that you are cloning and *new\_node2* and *new\_node3* are the names of the new nodes:

```
./runInstaller -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=$ORACLE_HOME "CLUSTER_
NODES={existing_node,new_node2,new_node3}"
```

6. On each new node, go to the `$ORACLE_HOME` directory and run the following command:

```
./root.sh
```

7. From the node that you cloned, run Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) to add Oracle RAC database instances on the new nodes.

## Cloning Shared Oracle Homes on Linux and UNIX Systems

This section explains how to add nodes to existing Oracle RAC environments by cloning a shared Oracle home in Linux and UNIX system environments.

Complete the following steps to clone Oracle Database with Oracle RAC software:

1. Follow the steps in the "[Preparing to Clone Oracle RAC](#)" on page 8-2 to create a copy of an Oracle home that you then use to perform the cloning procedure on one or more nodes.

2. On the new node, configure the environment variables `ORACLE_HOME` and `ORACLE_BASE`. Then go to the `$ORACLE_HOME/clone/bin` directory and run the following command where *existing\_node* is the name of the node that you are cloning, *new\_node2* and *new\_node3* are the names of the new nodes, *Oracle\_home\_name* is the name of the Oracle home, and the `-O-cfs` option indicates the Oracle home is shared:

```
perl clone.pl '-O"CLUSTER_NODES={existing_node,new_node2,new_node3}"'
'-O"LOCAL_NODE=new_node2"' ORACLE_BASE=$ORACLE_BASE ORACLE_HOME=$ORACLE_HOME
ORACLE_HOME_NAME=Oracle_home_name '-O-noConfig' '-O-cfs'
```

---

**Note:** If you run this command on Windows, then *do not* use the `-O` option.

---

3. Run the following command to run the configuration assistants to configure Oracle RAC on the new nodes:

```
$ORACLE_HOME/cfgtoollogs/configToolFailedCommands
```

4. Run the following command on the existing node from the `$ORACLE_HOME/oui/bin` directory to update the inventory in the Oracle Database home with Oracle RAC, specified by *Oracle\_home*, where *existing\_node* is the name of the original node that you are cloning and *new\_node2* and *new\_node3* are the names of the new nodes:

```
./runInstaller -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=$ORACLE_HOME "CLUSTER_
NODES={existing_node,new_node2,new_node3}"
```

5. On each new node, go to the `$ORACLE_HOME` directory and run the following command:

```
./root.sh
```

6. From the node that you cloned, run Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) to add Oracle RAC database instances to the new nodes.

## Cloning Oracle Homes on Windows Systems

This section explains how to add nodes to existing Oracle RAC environments by cloning a shared or local Oracle home in Windows system environments.

Complete the following steps to clone Oracle Database with Oracle RAC software:

1. If you have a local Oracle home, then use the ZIP utility to create an archive of the Oracle Database home with Oracle RAC on the existing node and copy it to the new node. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.

Extract the Oracle Database with Oracle RAC home files from the ZIP file on the new node in the same directory in which the Oracle Database home with Oracle RAC resided on the existing node. For example, assume that the location of the destination Oracle RAC home on the new node is `%ORACLE_HOME%`.

2. On the new node, go to the `%ORACLE_HOME%\clone\bin` directory and run the following command where *Oracle\_Home* is the Oracle Database home, *Oracle\_Home\_Name* is the name of the Oracle Database home, *Oracle\_Base* is the Oracle base directory, *existing\_node* is the name of the existing node, and *new\_node* is the name of the new node:

```
perl clone.pl ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_Home ORACLE_BASE=Oracle_Base
```

```
ORACLE_HOME_NAME=Oracle_Home_Name -O "CLUSTER_NODES={existing_node,new_node}" '
-O "LOCAL_NODE=new_node" '
```

---

---

**Note:** If you run this command on Windows, then *do not* use the `-O` option.

---

---

If you have a shared Oracle Database home with Oracle RAC, then append the `-cfs` option to the command to indicate that the Oracle home is shared, as shown in the following example:

```
perl clone.pl ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_Home ORACLE_BASE=Oracle_Base
ORACLE_HOME_NAME=Oracle_Home_Name -O "CLUSTER_NODES={existing_node,new_node}" '
-O "LOCAL_NODE=new_node" ' -O-noConfig' '-O-cfs'
```

---

---

**Note:** If you run this command on Windows, then *do not* use the `-O` option.

---

---

3. On the existing node, from the `%ORACLE_HOME%\oui\bin` directory run the following command to update the inventory in the Oracle Database home with Oracle RAC, specified by *Oracle\_home*, where *existing\_node* is the name of the existing node, and *new\_node* is the name of the new node:

```
setup.exe -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home "CLUSTER_NODES={existing_
node,new_node}" LOCAL_NODE=existing_node
```

4. From the node that you cloned, run DBCA to add Oracle RAC database instances to the new nodes.

---

---

## Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Linux and UNIX Systems

This chapter describes how to extend an existing Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) home to other nodes and instances in the cluster, and delete Oracle RAC from nodes and instances in the cluster. This chapter provides instructions for Linux and UNIX systems.

If your goal is to clone an existing Oracle RAC home to create multiple new Oracle RAC installations across the cluster, then use the cloning procedures that are described in [Chapter 8, "Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster"](#).

The topics in this chapter include the following:

- [Adding Oracle RAC to Nodes with Oracle Clusterware Installed](#)
- [Deleting Oracle RAC from a Cluster Node](#)

---

---

### Notes:

- Ensure that you have a current backup of Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) before adding or deleting Oracle RAC by running the `ocrconfig -showbackup` command.
  - The phrase "target node" as used in this chapter refers to the node to which you plan to extend the Oracle RAC environment.
- 
- 

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for additional information about configuring a new Oracle RAC cluster or scaling up an existing Oracle RAC cluster
- [Chapter 11, "Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Windows Systems"](#)

## Adding Oracle RAC to Nodes with Oracle Clusterware Installed

Before beginning this procedure, ensure that your existing nodes have the correct path to the `Grid_home` and that the `$ORACLE_HOME` environment variable is set to the Oracle RAC home.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about extending the Oracle Clusterware home to new nodes in a cluster

If you are using a local (non-shared) Oracle home, you must extend the Oracle RAC database home that is on an existing node (*node1* in this procedure) to a target node (*node3* in this procedure).

1. Navigate to the `$ORACLE_HOME/oui/bin` directory on *node1* and run the `addNode.sh` script using the following syntax:

```
$ ./addNode.sh -silent "CLUSTER_NEW_NODES={node3}"
```

2. Run the `$ORACLE_HOME/root.sh` script on *node3* as `root`.

If you are using a shared Oracle home (such as storing the Oracle home on Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS)), then you do not have to extend the Oracle RAC database home to the target nodes because the home is shared across the nodes in the cluster.

Instead, you must first create a mount point for the Oracle RAC database home on the target node, mount and attach the Oracle home, and update the Oracle inventory, as follows:

1. Run the `srvctl config db -d db_name` command on an existing node in the cluster to obtain the mount point information.
2. Run the following command as `root` on *node3* to create the mount point:

```
# mkdir -p mount_point_path
```

3. Mount the file system that hosts the Oracle RAC database home.
4. Run the following command from the `Oracle_home/oui/bin` directory on the node you are adding to add the Oracle RAC database home:

```
$ ./runInstaller -attachHome ORACLE_HOME="ORACLE_HOME" "CLUSTER_NODES={node_list}" LOCAL_NODE="node_name"
```

5. Update the Oracle Inventory, as follows:

```
$ ./runInstaller -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=mount_point_path "CLUSTER_NODES={node_list}"
```

In the preceding command, *node\_list* refers to a list of all nodes where the Oracle RAC database home is installed, including the node you are adding.

6. Run the `Grid_home/root.sh` script on the *node3* as `root` and run the subsequent script, as instructed.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle recommends that you back up the OCR after you complete the node addition process.

---

---

You can now add an Oracle RAC database instance to the target node using either of the procedures in the following sections.

- [Adding Policy-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes](#)
- [Adding Administrator-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes](#)

## Adding Policy-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes

Before adding an Oracle RAC database instance, run the following command on an existing node to configure Oracle Enterprise Manager on the node where you plan to add the database instance:

```
$ emca -addNode db
```

The Oracle Enterprise Manager Configuration Assistant prompts you for database and node information.

**See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide for Linux and UNIX* for more information about configuring Oracle Enterprise Manager

You must manually add undo and redo logs, unless you store your policy-managed database on Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) and **Oracle Managed Files** is enabled.

If there is space in a server pool to add a node and the database has been started at least once, then Oracle Clusterware adds the Oracle RAC database instance to the newly added node and no further action is necessary.

---



---

**Note:** The database must have been started at least once before you can add the database instance to the newly added node.

---



---

If there is no space in any server pool, then the newly added node moves into the Free server pool. Use the `srvctl modify srvpool` command to increase the cardinality of a server pool to accommodate the newly added node, after which the node moves out of the Free server pool and into the modified server pool, and Oracle Clusterware adds the Oracle RAC database instance to the node.

## Adding Administrator-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes

---



---

**Note:** The procedures in this section only apply to administrator-managed databases. Policy-managed databases use nodes when the nodes are available in the databases' server pool.

---



---

You can use either Oracle Enterprise Manager or DBCA to add Oracle RAC database instances to the target nodes. To add a database instance to a target node with Oracle Enterprise Manager, see the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for complete information.

This section describes using DBCA to add Oracle RAC database instances under the following topics:

- [Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes](#)
- [Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes](#)

These tools guide you through the following tasks:

- Creating a new database instance on each target node
- Creating and configuring high availability components
- Creating the Oracle Net configuration for a non-default listener from the Oracle home
- Starting the new instance
- Creating and starting services if you entered services information on the Services Configuration page

After adding the instances to the target nodes, you should perform any necessary service configuration procedures, as described in [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#).

### Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes

To add a database instance to a target node with DBCA in interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Ensure that your existing nodes have the `$ORACLE_HOME` environment variable set to the Oracle RAC home.
2. Start DBCA by entering `dbca` at the system prompt from the `Oracle_home/bin` directory.

DBCA performs certain CVU checks while running. However, you can also run CVU from the command line to perform various verifications.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about CVU

DBCA displays the Welcome page for Oracle RAC. Click **Help** on any DBCA page for additional information.

3. Select **Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) database**, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Operations page.
4. Select **Instance Management**, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Instance Management page.
5. Select **Add Instance** and click **Next**. DBCA displays the List of Cluster Databases page that shows the databases and their current status, such as `ACTIVE` or `INACTIVE`.
6. From the List of Cluster Databases page, select the active Oracle RAC database to which you want to add an instance. Enter user name and password for the database user that has `SYSDBA` privileges. Click **Next** and DBCA displays the List of Cluster Database Instances page showing the names of the existing instances for the Oracle RAC database that you selected.
7. Click **Next** to add a new instance and DBCA displays the Adding an Instance page.
8. On the Adding an Instance page, enter the instance name in the field at the top of this page if the instance name that DBCA provides does not match your existing instance naming scheme.
9. Review file locations for undo tablespaces and redo log groups of the new instance and click **Finish** on the Instance Storage page.
10. Review the information on the Summary dialog and click **OK** or click **Cancel** to end the instance addition operation. DBCA displays a progress dialog showing DBCA performing the instance addition operation. When DBCA completes the instance addition operation, DBCA displays a dialog asking whether you want to perform another operation.
11. After you terminate your DBCA session, run the following command to verify the administrative privileges on the target node and obtain detailed information about these privileges where `nodelist` consists of the names of the nodes on which you added database instances:

```
cluvfy comp admprv -o db_config -d Oracle_home -n nodelist [-verbose]
```



12. Perform any necessary service configuration procedures, as described in [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#).

### Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes

You can use DBCA in silent mode to add instances to nodes on which you have extended an Oracle Clusterware home and an Oracle Database home. Before you run the `dbca` command, ensure that you have set the `ORACLE_HOME` environment variable correctly on the existing nodes. Run DBCA, supplying values for the variables described in [Table 10–1](#), as follows:

```
dbca -silent -addInstance -nodeList node_name -gdbName gdb_name
[-instanceName instance_name -sysDBAUserName sysdba -sysDBAPassword password]
```

**Table 10–1** Variables in the DBCA Silent Mode Syntax

Variable	Description
<i>node_name</i>	The node on which you want to add (or delete) the instance.
<i>gdb_name</i>	Global database name.
<i>instance_name</i>	Name of the instance. Provide an instance name only if you want to override the Oracle naming convention for Oracle RAC instance names.
<i>sysdba</i>	Name of the Oracle user with SYSDBA privileges.
<i>password</i>	Password for the SYSDBA user.

Perform any necessary service configuration procedures, as described in [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#).

## Deleting Oracle RAC from a Cluster Node

To remove Oracle RAC from a cluster node, you must delete the database instance and the Oracle RAC software before removing the node from the cluster.

---

**Note:** If there are no database instances on the node you want to delete, then proceed to ["Removing Oracle RAC"](#) on page 10-8.

---

This section includes the following procedures to delete nodes from clusters in an Oracle RAC environment:

- [Deleting Instances from Oracle RAC Databases](#)
- [Removing Oracle RAC](#)
- [Deleting Nodes from the Cluster](#)

### Deleting Instances from Oracle RAC Databases

The procedures for deleting database instances are different for policy-managed and administrator-managed databases. Deleting a policy-managed database instance involves reducing the number of servers in the server pool in which the database instance resides. Deleting an administrator-managed database instance involves using DBCA to delete the database instance.

### Deleting Policy-Managed Database Instances

If you plan to delete the node on which the database instance resides from the cluster, then, before deleting the database instance, run the following command on a remaining node to deconfigure Oracle Enterprise Manager on the node you plan to delete:

```
$ emca -deleteNode db
```

The Oracle Enterprise Manager Configuration Assistant prompts you for database and node information.

To delete a policy-managed database, reduce the number of servers in the server pool in which a database instance resides by relocating the server on which the database instance resides to another server pool. This effectively removes the instance without having to remove the Oracle RAC software from the node or the node from the cluster.

For example, you can delete a policy-managed database by running the following commands on any node in the cluster:

```
$ srvctl stop instance -d db_unique_name -n node_name  
$ srvctl relocate server -n node_name -g Free
```

The first command stops the database instance on a particular node and the second command moves the node out of its current server pool and into the Free server pool.

**See Also:** ["Removing Oracle RAC"](#) on page 10-8 for information about removing the Oracle RAC software from a node

### Deleting Instances from Administrator-Managed Databases

---

---

**Note:** Before deleting an instance from an Oracle RAC database, use either SRVCTL or Oracle Enterprise Manager to do the following:

- If you have services configured, then relocate the services
  - Modify the services so that each service can run on one of the remaining instances
  - Ensure that the instance to be removed from an administrator-managed database is neither a preferred nor an available instance of any service
- 
- 

**See Also:** ["Administering Services with Oracle Enterprise Manager"](#) on page 5-31 and ["Administering Services with SRVCTL"](#) on page 5-32

The procedures in this section explain how to use DBCA in interactive or silent mode, to delete an instance from an Oracle RAC database.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for information about how to delete a database instance from a target node with Oracle Enterprise Manager

This section includes the following topics:

- [Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes](#)
- [Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes](#)

## Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes

To delete an instance using DBCA in interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Start DBCA.

Start DBCA on a node *other than* the node that hosts the instance that you want to delete. The database and the instance that you plan to delete should be running during this step.

2. On the DBCA Welcome page select **Oracle Real Application Clusters Database**, click **Next**. DBCA displays the Operations page.
3. On the DBCA Operations page, select **Instance Management** and click **Next**. DBCA displays the Instance Management page.
4. On the DBCA Instance Management page, select the instance to be deleted, select **Delete Instance**, and click **Next**.
5. On the List of Cluster Databases page, select the Oracle RAC database from which to delete the instance, as follows:
  - a. On the List of Cluster Database Instances page, DBCA displays the instances that are associated with the Oracle RAC database that you selected and the status of each instance. Select the cluster database from which you will delete the instance.
  - b. Enter a user name and password for the database user that has SYSDBA privileges. Click **Next**.
  - c. Click **OK** on the Confirmation dialog to proceed to delete the instance.

DBCA displays a progress dialog showing that DBCA is deleting the instance. During this operation, DBCA removes the instance and the instance's Oracle Net configuration. When DBCA completes this operation, DBCA displays a dialog asking whether you want to perform another operation.

Click **No** and exit DBCA or click **Yes** to perform another operation. If you click **Yes**, then DBCA displays the Operations page.

6. Verify that the dropped instance's redo thread has been removed by using SQL\*Plus on an existing node to query the GV\$LOG view. If the redo thread is not disabled, then disable the thread. For example:

```
SQL> ALTER DATABASE DISABLE THREAD 2;
```

7. Verify that the instance has been removed from OCR by running the following command, where *db\_unique\_name* is the database unique name for your Oracle RAC database:

```
srvctl config database -d db_unique_name
```

8. If you are deleting more than one node, then repeat these steps to delete the instances from all the nodes that you are going to delete.

## Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes

You can use DBCA in silent mode to delete a database instance from a node.

Run the following command, where the variables are the same as those shown in [Table 10-1](#) on page 10-5 for the DBCA command to add an instance. Provide a node name only if you are deleting an instance from a node other than the one on where DBCA is running as shown in the following example where *password* is the password:

```
dbca -silent -deleteInstance [-nodeList node_name] -gdbName gdb_name
-instanceName instance_name -sysDBAUserName sysdba -sysDBAPassword password
```

At this point, you have accomplished the following:

- Deregistered the selected instance from its associated Oracle Net Services listeners
- Deleted the selected database instance from the instance's configured node
- Removed the Oracle Net configuration
- Deleted the Oracle Flexible Architecture directory structure from the instance's configured node.

## Removing Oracle RAC

This procedure removes Oracle RAC software from the node you are deleting from the cluster and updates inventories on the remaining nodes.

1. If there is a listener in the Oracle RAC home on the node you are deleting, then you must disable and stop it before deleting the Oracle RAC software. Run the following commands on any node in the cluster, specifying the name of the listener and the name of the node you are deleting:

```
$ srvctl disable listener -l listener_name -n name_of_node_to_delete
$ srvctl stop listener -l listener_name -n name_of_node_to_delete
```

2. Run the following command from `$ORACLE_HOME/oui/bin` on the node that you are deleting to update the inventory on that node:

```
$ ./runInstaller -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home_location
"CLUSTER_NODES={name_of_node_to_delete}" -local
```

3. Depending on whether you have a shared or nonshared Oracle home, complete one of the following two procedures to remove the Oracle RAC software:

- For a shared home, detach the node instead of deinstalling it by running the following command from the `$ORACLE_HOME/oui/bin` directory on each of the nodes that you want to delete:

```
$ ./runInstaller -detachHome ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home_location
```

- For a nonshared home, deinstall the Oracle home from the node that you are deleting by running the following command:

```
$ORACLE_HOME/deinstall/deinstall -local
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about deleting nodes

4. Run the following command from the `$ORACLE_HOME/oui/bin` directory on any one of the remaining nodes in the cluster to update the inventories of those nodes, specifying a comma-delimited list of remaining node names:

```
$ ./runInstaller -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home_location
"CLUSTER_NODES={remaining_node_list}"
```

If you have a shared Oracle Grid Infrastructure home, then append the `-cfs` option to the command example in this step and provide a complete path location for the cluster file system.

## Deleting Nodes from the Cluster

After you delete the database instance and the Oracle RAC software, you can begin the process of deleting the node from the cluster. You accomplish this by running scripts on the node you want to delete to remove the Oracle Clusterware installation and then you run scripts on the remaining nodes to update the node list.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about deleting nodes from the cluster



---

---

## Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Windows Systems

This chapter describes how to extend an existing Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) home to other nodes and instances in the cluster, and delete Oracle RAC from nodes and instances in the cluster. This chapter provides instructions for Windows systems.

---

---

**Notes:** In this chapter, the entries for *Grid\_home* refer to the full path name for the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home, and the entries for *Oracle\_home* refer to substitutes for environment variables for the Oracle home with Oracle RAC.

---

---

If your goal is to clone an existing Oracle RAC home to create multiple new Oracle RAC installations across the cluster, then use the cloning procedures that are described in [Chapter 8, "Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster"](#).

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Adding Oracle RAC to Nodes with Oracle Clusterware Installed](#)
- [Deleting Oracle RAC from a Cluster Node](#)

---

---

**Notes:**

- Ensure that you have a current backup of Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) before adding or deleting Oracle RAC by running the `ocrconfig -showbackup` command.
  - Using Oracle Enterprise Manager to add and delete nodes and instances is not supported on Windows.
  - For all of the add node and delete node procedures, temporary directories such as `%TEMP%` or `C:\Temp` *should not be* shared directories. If your temporary directories are shared, then set your temporary environment variable, such as `%TEMP%`, to a location on a local node. In addition, use a directory path that exists on all of the nodes.
- 
- 

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for additional information about configuring a new Oracle RAC cluster or adding to and deleting nodes from an existing Oracle RAC cluster.

## Adding Oracle RAC to Nodes with Oracle Clusterware Installed

Before beginning this procedure, ensure that your existing nodes have the correct path to the *Grid\_home* and that the *Oracle\_home* environment variables are set correctly.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about adding nodes to a cluster

To add Oracle RAC database instances to nodes that already have Oracle Clusterware installed, you must extend the Oracle RAC home that is on an existing node (*node1* in this procedure) of the cluster to the target nodes.

1. Navigate to the *Oracle\_home\oui\bin* directory on *node1* and run the *addNode.bat* script using the following syntax, where *node2* is the name of the node you are adding:

```
addNode.bat "CLUSTER_NEW_NODES={node2}"
```

2. If you store your policy-managed database on Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM), **Oracle Managed Files** is enabled, and if there is space in a server pool for *node2*, then *crsd* adds the Oracle RAC database instance to *node2* and no further action is necessary. If Oracle Managed Files is not enabled, then you must manually add undo and redo logs.

If there is no space in a server pool, then *node2* moves into the Free server pool. Use the *srvctl modify srvpool* command to increase the cardinality of the server pool to accommodate *node2*, after which time *node2* moves out of the Free server pool and into the modified server pool, and *crsd* adds the Oracle RAC database instance to *node2*.

3. If you have an administrator-managed database, then add a new instance on *node2* as described in "[Adding Administrator-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes](#)" on page 11-2.

---



---

**Note:** Oracle recommends that you back up your voting disk and Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) files after you complete the node addition process.

---



---

### Adding Administrator-Managed Oracle RAC Database Instances to Target Nodes

Before adding an Oracle RAC database instance, run the following command on an existing node to configure Oracle Enterprise Manager on the node where you plan to add the database instance:

```
C:\>emca -addNode db
```

The Oracle Enterprise Manager Configuration Assistant prompts you for database and node information.

**See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide for Microsoft Windows* for more information about configuring Oracle Enterprise Manager

You can use either Oracle Enterprise Manager or DBCA to add Oracle RAC database instances to the target nodes. To add a database instance to a target node with Oracle Enterprise Manager, see the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for complete information.



This section describes using DBCA to add Oracle RAC database instances under the following topics:

- [Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes](#)
- [Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes](#)

These tools guide you through the following tasks:

- Creating a new database instance on each target node
- Creating and configuring high availability components
- Creating the Oracle Net configuration for a non-default listener from the Oracle home
- Starting the new instance
- Creating and starting services if you entered services information on the Services Configuration page

After adding the instances to the target nodes, you should perform any necessary service configuration procedures, as described in [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#).

### Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes

To add a database instance to a target node using DBCA in interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Ensure that your existing nodes have the Oracle home environment variable set correctly.
2. Start DBCA by entering `dbca` at the system prompt from the `Oracle_home\bin` directory on an existing node.

DBCA performs certain CVU checks while running. However, you can also run CVU from the command line to perform various verifications.

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about CVU

DBCA displays the Welcome page for Oracle RAC. Click **Help** on any DBCA page for additional information.

3. Select **Oracle Real Application Clusters database**, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Operations page.
4. Select **Instance Management**, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Instance Management page.
5. Select **Add Instance** and click **Next**. DBCA displays the List of Cluster Databases page that shows the databases and their current status, such as `ACTIVE` or `INACTIVE`.
6. From the List of Cluster Databases page, select the active Oracle RAC database to which you want to add an instance. Enter the user name and password for a database user that has `SYSDBA` privileges. Click **Next** and DBCA displays the List of Cluster Database Instances page showing the names of the existing instances for the Oracle RAC database that you selected.
7. Click **Next** to add a new instance and DBCA displays the Adding an Instance page.

8. On the Adding an Instance page, enter the instance name in the field at the top of this page if the instance name that DBCA provides does not match your existing instance naming scheme. Then select the new node name from the list, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Services Page.
9. Enter the services information for the new node's instance, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Instance Storage page.
10. If you are using Oracle ASM or a cluster file system, then click **Finish** on the Instance Storage page.
11. Review the information on the Summary dialog and click **OK** or click **Cancel** to end the instance addition operation. The DBCA displays a progress dialog showing DBCA performing the instance addition operation. When DBCA completes the instance addition operation, DBCA displays a dialog asking whether you want to perform another operation.
12. After you terminate your DBCA session, run the following command to verify the administrative privileges on the new node and obtain detailed information about these privileges where *nodelist* consists of the newly added nodes:
 

```
cluvfy comp admprv -o db_config -d oracle_home -n nodelist [-verbose]
```
13. Perform any necessary service configuration procedures, as described in [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#).

### Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Add Database Instances to Target Nodes

You can use DBCA in silent mode to add instances to nodes on which you have extended an Oracle Clusterware home and an Oracle Database home. Use the following syntax:

```
dbca -silent -addInstance -nodeList node_name -gdbName gdb_name
[-instanceName instance_name -sysDBAUserName sysdba -sysDBAPassword password]
```

**See Also:** [Table 10-1](#) on page 10-5 for definitions of the variables used in the preceding syntax

Perform any necessary service configuration procedures, as described in [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#).

## Deleting Oracle RAC from a Cluster Node

To remove Oracle RAC from a cluster node, you must delete the database instance and the Oracle RAC software prior to removing the node from the cluster.

---



---

**Note:** If there are no database instances on the node you want to delete, then proceed to ["Removing Oracle RAC"](#) on page 11-7.

---



---

This section includes the following procedures to delete nodes from clusters in an Oracle RAC environment:

- [Deleting Instances from Oracle RAC Databases](#)
- [Removing Oracle RAC](#)
- [Deleting Nodes from the Cluster](#)

## Deleting Instances from Oracle RAC Databases

The procedures for deleting instances are different for policy-managed and administrator-managed databases. Deleting a policy-managed database instance involves reducing the size of the server pool in which the database instance resides. Deleting an administrator-managed database instance involves using DBCA to delete the database instance.

### Deleting Policy-Managed Databases

If you plan to delete the node on which the database resides from the cluster, then, before deleting the database instance, run the following command on a node that you *are not deleting* to deconfigure Oracle Enterprise Manager on the node you plan to delete:

```
emca -deleteNode db
```

The Oracle Enterprise Manager Configuration Assistant prompts you for database and node information.

To delete a policy-managed database, decrease the size of the server pool in which a database instance resides. This effectively removes the instance without having to remove the Oracle RAC software from the node or the node from the cluster.

For example, you can delete a policy-managed database by running the following commands on any node in the cluster:

```
srvctl stop instance -d db_unique_name -n node_name
srvctl relocate server -n node_name -g Free
```

The first command stops the instance on a particular node and the second command moves the node out of its current server pool and into the Free server pool.

**See Also:** ["Removing Oracle RAC"](#) on page 11-7 for information about removing the Oracle RAC software from a node

### Deleting Instances from Administrator-Managed Databases

---

**Note:** Before deleting an instance from an Oracle RAC database, use either SRVCTL or Oracle Enterprise Manager to do the following:

- If you have services configured, then relocate the services
  - Modify the services so that each service can run on one of the remaining instances
  - Ensure that the instance to be removed from an administrator-managed database is neither a preferred nor an available instance of any service
- 

**See Also:** ["Administering Services with Oracle Enterprise Manager"](#) on page 5-31 and ["Administering Services with SRVCTL"](#) on page 5-32

The procedures in this section explain how to use DBCA in interactive or silent mode, to delete an instance from an Oracle RAC database.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for information about how to delete a database instance from a target node with Oracle Enterprise Manager

This section includes the following topics:

- [Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes](#)
- [Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes](#)

### Using DBCA in Interactive Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes

To delete an instance using DBCA in interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Verify there is a current backup of OCR.  
Run the `ocrconfig -showbackup` command to ensure there is a valid backup.
2. Start DBCA.  
Start DBCA on a node *other than* the node that hosts the instance that you want to delete. The database and the instance that you plan to delete should continue to be started and running during this step.
3. On the DBCA Welcome page select **Oracle Real Application Clusters Database**, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Operations page.
4. On the DBCA Operations page, select **Instance Management**, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the Instance Management page.
5. On the Instance Management page, select **Delete Instance**, click **Next**, and DBCA displays the List of Cluster Databases page.
6. Select an Oracle RAC database from which to delete an instance. Enter a user name and password for the database user that has SYSDBA privileges. Click **Next** and DBCA displays the List of Cluster Database Instances page. The List of Cluster Database Instances page shows the instances that are associated with the Oracle RAC database that you selected and the status of each instance.
7. On the List of Cluster Databases page, select the Oracle RAC database from which to delete the instance, as follows:
  - a. On the List of Cluster Database Instances page, DBCA displays the instances that are associated with the Oracle RAC database that you selected and the status of each instance. Select the cluster database from which you will delete the instance. Click **Finish**.
  - b. Click **OK** on the Confirmation dialog to proceed to delete the instance.
  - c. Click **OK** on the next Confirmation dialog to delete the instance and related Optimal Flexible Architecture (OFA) directory structure.  
DBCA displays a progress dialog showing that DBCA is deleting the instance. During this operation, DBCA removes the instance and the instance's Oracle Net configuration. When DBCA completes this operation, DBCA displays a dialog asking whether you want to perform another operation.  
Click **No** and exit DBCA or click **Yes** to perform another operation. If you click **Yes**, then DBCA displays the Operations page.
8. Verify that the dropped instance's redo thread has been removed using SQL\*Plus to query the V\$LOG view from an existing instance. If the redo thread is not disabled, then disable the thread. For example:

```
SQL> ALTER DATABASE DISABLE THREAD 2;
```
9. Verify that the instance has been removed from OCR by running the following command, where `db_unique_name` is the name of the database:

```
srvctl config database -d db_unique_name
```

10. If you are deleting more than one node, then repeat these steps to delete the instances from all the nodes that you are going to delete.

### Using DBCA in Silent Mode to Delete Instances from Nodes

You can use DBCA in silent mode to delete a database instance from a node.

Run the following command, where the variables are the same as those shown in [Table 10-1](#) on page 10-5 for the DBCA command to add an instance. Provide a node name only if you are deleting an instance from a node other than the one on where DBCA is running as shown in the following example where *password* is the SYSDBA password:

```
dbca -silent -deleteInstance [-nodeList node_name] -gdbName gdb_name
-instanceName instance_name -sysDBAUserName sysdba -sysDBAPassword password
```

At this point, you have accomplished the following:

- Deregistered the selected instance from its associated Oracle Net Services listeners
- Deleted the selected database instance from the instance's configured node
- Removed the Oracle Net configuration
- Deleted the Oracle Flexible Architecture directory structure from the instance's configured node.

## Removing Oracle RAC

This procedure removes the Oracle RAC software from the node you are deleting from the cluster and updates inventories on the remaining nodes.

1. If there is a listener in the Oracle RAC home on the node you are deleting, then you must disable and stop it before deleting the Oracle RAC software. Run the following commands on any node in the cluster, specifying the name of the listener and the name of the node you are deleting:

```
srvctl disable listener -l listener_name -n name_of_node_to_delete
srvctl stop listener -l listener_name -n name_of_node_to_delete
```

2. Run the following command from `%ORACLE_HOME%\oui\bin` on the node that you are deleting to update the inventory on that node:

```
setup.exe -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home_location
"CLUSTER_NODES={name_of_node_to_delete}" -local
```

3. Depending on whether you have a shared or nonshared Oracle home, complete one of the following two procedures:

- For a shared home, detach the node instead of deinstalling it by running the following command from the `Oracle_home\oui\bin` directory on each of the nodes that you want to delete:

```
setup.exe -detachHome ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home
```

- For a nonshared home, deinstall the Oracle home from the node that you are deleting by running the following command from the `Oracle_home\deinstall` directory:

```
deinstall -local
```

4. Run the following command from the *Oracle\_home\oui\bin* directory on any one of the remaining nodes in the cluster to update the inventories of those nodes, specifying a comma-delimited list of remaining node names:

```
setup.exe -updateNodeList ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_home_location  
"CLUSTER_NODES={remaining_node_list}"
```

## Deleting Nodes from the Cluster

After you delete the instance, you can begin the process of deleting the node from the cluster. You accomplish this by running scripts on the node you want to delete to remove the Oracle Clusterware installation and you run scripts on the remaining nodes to update the node list.

### See Also:

- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about deleting nodes from the cluster
- *Oracle Grid Infrastructure Installation Guide for Microsoft Windows* for more information about removing Oracle Clusterware and Oracle ASM

---

---

## Design and Deployment Techniques

This chapter briefly describes database design and deployment techniques for Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environments. It also describes considerations for high availability and provides general guidelines for various Oracle RAC deployments.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Deploying Oracle RAC for High Availability](#)
- [General Design Considerations for Oracle RAC](#)
- [General Database Deployment Topics for Oracle RAC](#)

### Deploying Oracle RAC for High Availability

Many customers implement Oracle RAC to provide high availability for their Oracle Database applications. For true high availability, you must make the entire infrastructure of the application highly available. This requires detailed planning to ensure there are no single points of failure throughout the infrastructure. Even though Oracle RAC makes your database highly available, if a critical application becomes unavailable, then your business can be negatively affected. For example, if you choose to use the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) for authentication, then you must make the LDAP server highly available. If the database is up but the users cannot connect to the database because the LDAP server is not accessible, then the entire system appears to be down to your users.

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Designing a High Availability System](#)
- [Best Practices for Deploying Oracle RAC in a High Availability Environment](#)
- [Consolidating Multiple Applications in a Database or Multiple Databases in a Cluster](#)
- [Scalability of Oracle RAC](#)

#### About Designing a High Availability System

For mission critical systems, you must be able to perform failover and recovery, and your environment must be resilient to all types of failures. To reach these goals, start by defining service level requirements for your business. The requirements should include definitions of maximum transaction response time and recovery expectations for failures within the datacenter (such as for node failure) or for disaster recovery (if the entire data center fails). Typically, the service level objective is a target response time for work, regardless of failures. Determine the recovery time for each redundant

component. Even though you may have hardware components that are running in an active/active mode, do not assume that if one component fails the other hardware components can remain operational while the faulty components are being repaired. Also, when components are running in active/passive mode, perform regular tests to validate the failover time. For example, recovery times for storage channels can take minutes. Ensure that the outage times are within your business' service level agreements, and where they are not, work with the hardware vendor to tune the configuration and settings.

When deploying mission critical systems, the testing should include functional testing, destructive testing, and performance testing. Destructive testing includes the injection of various faults in the system to test the recovery and to make sure it satisfies the service level requirements. Destructive testing also allows the creation of operational procedures for the production system.

To help you design and implement a mission critical or highly available system, Oracle provides a range of solutions for every organization regardless of size. Small workgroups and global enterprises alike are able to extend the reach of their critical business applications. With Oracle and the Internet, applications and their data are now reliably accessible everywhere, at any time. The Oracle Maximum Availability Architecture (MAA) is the Oracle best practices blueprint that is based on proven Oracle high availability technologies and recommendations. The goal of the MAA is to remove the complexity in designing an optimal high availability architecture.

**See Also:** ■

- *Oracle Database High Availability Overview*
- Oracle Maximum Availability Architecture (MAA) Web site at

<http://www.oracle.com/technology/deploy/availability/hdocs/maa.htm>

## Best Practices for Deploying Oracle RAC in a High Availability Environment

Applications can take advantage of many Oracle Database, Oracle Clusterware, and Oracle RAC features and capabilities to minimize or mask any failure in the Oracle RAC environment. For example, you can:

- Remove TCP/IP timeout waits by using the VIP address to connect to the database.
- Create detailed operational procedures and ensure you have the appropriate support contracts in place to match defined service levels for all components in the infrastructure.
- Take advantage of the Oracle RAC Automatic Workload Management features such as connect time failover, Fast Connection Failover, Fast Application Notification, and the Load Balancing Advisory. See [Chapter 5, "Introduction to Automatic Workload Management"](#) for more details.
- Place voting disks on separate volume groups to mitigate outages due to slow I/O throughput. To survive the failure of  $x$  voting devices, configure  $2x + 1$  mirrors.
- Use Oracle Database Quality of Service Management (Oracle Database QoS Management) to monitor your system and detect performance bottlenecks
- Place OCR with I/O service times in the order of 2 milliseconds (ms) or less.
- Tune database recovery using the `FAST_START_MTTR_TARGET` initialization parameter.



- Use Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) to manage database storage.
- Ensure that strong change control procedures are in place.
- Check the surrounding infrastructure for high availability and resiliency, such as LDAP, NIS, and DNS. These entities affect the availability of your Oracle RAC database. If possible, perform a local backup procedure routinely.
- Use Oracle Enterprise Manager to administer your entire Oracle RAC environment, not just the Oracle RAC database. Use Oracle Enterprise Manager to create and modify services, and to start and stop the cluster database instances and the cluster database. See the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information using Oracle Enterprise Manager in an Oracle RAC environment.
- Use Recovery Manager (RMAN) to back up, restore, and recover data files, control files, server parameter files (SPFILEs) and archived redo log files. You can use RMAN with a media manager to back up files to external storage. You can also configure parallelism when backing up or recovering Oracle RAC databases. In Oracle RAC, RMAN channels can be dynamically allocated across all of the Oracle RAC instances. Channel failover enables failed operations on one node to continue on another node. You can start RMAN from Oracle Enterprise Manager Backup Manager or from the command line. See [Chapter 6, "Configuring Recovery Manager and Archiving"](#) for more information about using RMAN.
- If you use sequence numbers, then always use `CACHE` with the `NOORDER` option for optimal performance in sequence number generation. With the `CACHE` option, however, you may have gaps in the sequence numbers. If your environment cannot tolerate sequence number gaps, then use the `NOCACHE` option or consider pre-generating the sequence numbers. If your application requires sequence number ordering but can tolerate gaps, then use `CACHE` and `ORDER` to cache and order sequence numbers in Oracle RAC. If your application requires ordered sequence numbers without gaps, then use `NOCACHE` and `ORDER`. The `NOCACHE` and `ORDER` combination has the most negative effect on performance compared to other caching and ordering combinations.

---

---

**Note:** If your environment cannot tolerate sequence number gaps, then consider pre-generating the sequence numbers or use the `ORDER` and `CACHE` options.

---

---

- If you use indexes, then consider alternatives, such as reverse key indexes to optimize index performance. Reverse key indexes are especially helpful if you have frequent inserts to one side of an index, such as indexes that are based on insert date.

## Consolidating Multiple Applications in a Database or Multiple Databases in a Cluster

Many people want to consolidate multiple applications in a single database or consolidate multiple databases in a single cluster. Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC support both types of consolidation.

Creating a cluster with a single pool of storage managed by Oracle ASM provides the infrastructure to manage multiple databases whether they are single instance databases or Oracle RAC databases.

With Oracle RAC databases, you can adjust the number of instances and which nodes run instances for a given database, based on workload requirements. Features such as cluster-managed services allow you to manage multiple workloads on a single database or across multiple databases.

It is important to properly manage the capacity in the cluster when adding work. The processes that manage the cluster—including processes both from Oracle Clusterware and the database—must be able to obtain CPU resources in a timely fashion and must be given higher priority in the system. Oracle Database Quality of Service Management (Oracle Database QoS Management) can assist consolidating multiple applications in a cluster or database by dynamically allocating CPU resources to meet performance objectives.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Quality of Service Management User's Guide* for more information

Oracle recommends that the number of real time Global Cache Service Processes (LMS $n$ ) on a server is less than or equal to the number of processors. (Note that this is the number of recognized CPUs that includes cores. For example, a dual-core CPU is considered to be two CPUs.) It is important that you load test your system when adding instances on a node to ensure that you have enough capacity to support the workload.

If you are consolidating many small databases into a cluster, you may want to reduce the number of LMS $n$  created by the Oracle RAC instance. By default, Oracle Database calculates the number of processes based on the number of CPUs it finds on the server. This calculation may result in more LMS $n$  processes than is needed for the Oracle RAC instance. One LMS process may be sufficient for up to 4 CPUs.

To reduce the number of LMS $n$  processes, set the GC\_SERVER\_PROCESSES initialization parameter minimally to a value of 1. Add a process for every four CPUs needed by the application. In general, it is better to have few busy LMS $n$  processes. Oracle Database calculates the number of processes when the instance is started, and you must restart the instance if you want to change the value.

## Scalability of Oracle RAC

Oracle RAC provides concurrent, transactionally consistent access to a single copy of the data from multiple systems. It provides scalability beyond the capacity of a single server. If your application scales transparently on symmetric multiprocessing (SMP) servers, then it is realistic to expect the application to scale well on Oracle RAC, without the need to make changes to the application code.

Traditionally, when a database server runs out of capacity, it is replaced with a new larger server. As servers grow in capacity, they become more expensive. However, for Oracle RAC databases, you have alternatives for increasing the capacity:

- You can migrate applications that traditionally run on large SMP servers to run on clusters of small servers.
- You can maintain the investment in the current hardware and add a new server to the cluster (or create or add a new cluster) to increase the capacity.

Adding servers to a cluster with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC does not require an outage. As soon as the new instance is started, the application can take advantage of the extra capacity.

All servers in the cluster must run the same operating system and same version of Oracle Database but the servers do not have to be exactly the same capacity. With

Oracle RAC, you can build a cluster that fits your needs, whether the cluster is made up of servers where each server is a two-CPU commodity server or clusters where the servers have 32 or 64 CPUs in each server. The Oracle parallel execution feature allows a single SQL statement to be divided up into multiple processes, where each process completes a subset of work. In an Oracle RAC environment, you can define the parallel processes to run only on the instance where the user is connected or to run across multiple instances in the cluster.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 8, "Cloning Oracle RAC to Nodes in a New Cluster"](#)
- [Chapter 9, "Using Cloning to Extend Oracle RAC to Nodes in the Same Cluster"](#)
- [Chapter 10, "Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Linux and UNIX Systems"](#)
- [Chapter 11, "Adding and Deleting Oracle RAC from Nodes on Windows Systems"](#)

## General Design Considerations for Oracle RAC

This section briefly describes database design and deployment techniques for Oracle RAC environments. It also describes considerations for high availability and provides general guidelines for various Oracle RAC deployments.

Consider performing the following steps during the design and development of applications that you are deploying on an Oracle RAC database:

1. Tune the design and the application
2. Tune the memory and I/O
3. Tune contention
4. Tune the operating system

---

---

**Note:** If an application does not scale on an SMP system, then moving the application to an Oracle RAC database cannot improve performance.

---

---

Consider using hash partitioning for insert-intensive online transaction processing (OLTP) applications. Hash partitioning:

- Reduces contention on concurrent inserts into a single database structure
- Affects sequence-based indexes when indexes are locally partitioned with a table and tables are partitioned on sequence-based keys
- Is transparent to the application

If you use hash partitioning for tables and indexes for OLTP environments, then you can greatly improve performance in your Oracle RAC database. Note that you cannot use index range scans on an index with hash partitioning.

## General Database Deployment Topics for Oracle RAC

This section describes considerations when deploying Oracle RAC databases. Oracle RAC database performance is not compromised if you do not employ these

techniques. If you have an effective noncluster design, then your application will run well on an Oracle RAC database.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Tablespace Use in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Object Creation and Performance in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Node Addition and Deletion and the SYSAUX Tablespace in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Distributed Transactions and Oracle RAC](#)
- [Deploying OLTP Applications in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Flexible Implementation with Cache Fusion](#)
- [Deploying Data Warehouse Applications with Oracle RAC](#)
- [Data Security Considerations in Oracle RAC](#)

## Tablespace Use in Oracle RAC

In addition to using locally managed tablespaces, you can further simplify space administration by using automatic segment space management (ASSM) and automatic undo management.

ASSM distributes instance workloads among each instance's subset of blocks for inserts. This improves Oracle RAC performance because it minimizes block transfers. To deploy automatic undo management in an Oracle RAC environment, each instance must have its own undo tablespace.

## Object Creation and Performance in Oracle RAC

As a general rule, only use DDL statements for maintenance tasks and avoid executing DDL statements during peak system operation periods. In most systems, the amount of new object creation and other DDL statements should be limited. Just as in noncluster Oracle databases, excessive object creation and deletion can increase performance overhead.

## Node Addition and Deletion and the SYSAUX Tablespace in Oracle RAC

If you add nodes to your Oracle RAC database environment, then you may need to increase the size of the SYSAUX tablespace. Conversely, if you remove nodes from your **cluster database**, then you may be able to reduce the size of your SYSAUX tablespace.

**See Also:** Your platform-specific Oracle RAC installation guide for guidelines about sizing the SYSAUX tablespace for multiple instances

## Distributed Transactions and Oracle RAC

If you are running XA Transactions in an Oracle RAC environment and the performance is poor, direct all branches of a tightly coupled distributed transaction to the same instance.

To ensure this, create multiple Oracle Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP) services, with one or more on each Oracle RAC instance. Each DTP service is a singleton service that is available on one and only one Oracle RAC instance. All access to the database server for distributed transaction processing must be done by way of the DTP services. Ensure that all of the branches of a single global distributed

transaction use the same DTP service. In other words, a network connection descriptor, such as a TNS name, a JDBC URL, and so on, must use a DTP service to support distributed transaction processing.

**See Also:**

- ["Services and Distributed Transaction Processing in Oracle RAC"](#) on page 5-27 for more details about enabling services and distributed transactions
- *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* for more information about distributed transactions in Oracle RAC

## Deploying OLTP Applications in Oracle RAC

Cache Fusion makes Oracle RAC databases the optimal deployment servers for online transaction processing (OLTP) applications. This is because these types of applications require:

- High availability in the event of failures
- Scalability to accommodate increased system demands
- Load balancing according to demand fluctuations

The high availability features of Oracle Database and Oracle RAC can re-distribute and load balance workloads to surviving instances without interrupting processing. Oracle RAC also provides excellent scalability so that if you add or replace a node, then Oracle Database re-masters resources and re-distributes processing loads.

## Flexible Implementation with Cache Fusion

To accommodate the frequently changing workloads of online transaction processing systems, Oracle RAC remains flexible and dynamic despite changes in system load and system availability. Oracle RAC addresses a wide range of [service levels](#) that, for example, fluctuate due to:

- Varying user demands
- Peak scalability issues like trading storms (bursts of high volumes of transactions)
- Varying availability of system resources

## Deploying Data Warehouse Applications with Oracle RAC

This section discusses how to deploy data warehouse systems in Oracle RAC environments by briefly describing the data warehouse features available in shared disk architectures.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Speed-Up for Data Warehouse Applications on Oracle RAC](#)
- [Parallel Execution in Data Warehouse Systems and Oracle RAC](#)

### Speed-Up for Data Warehouse Applications on Oracle RAC

Oracle RAC is ideal for data warehouse applications because it augments the noncluster benefits of Oracle Database. Oracle RAC does this by maximizing the processing available on all of the nodes that belong to an Oracle RAC database to provide speed-up for data warehouse systems.

The query optimizer considers parallel execution when determining the optimal execution plans. The default cost model for the query optimizer is **CPU+I/O** and the cost unit is **time**. In Oracle RAC, the query optimizer dynamically computes intelligent defaults for parallelism based on the number of processors in the nodes of the cluster. An evaluation of the costs of alternative access paths, table scans versus indexed access, for example, takes into account the degree of parallelism (DOP) available for the operation. This results in Oracle Database selecting the execution plans that are optimized for your Oracle RAC configuration.

### **Parallel Execution in Data Warehouse Systems and Oracle RAC**

Oracle Database's parallel execution feature uses multiple processes to run SQL statements on one or more CPUs. Parallel execution is available on both noncluster Oracle databases and Oracle RAC databases.

Oracle RAC takes full advantage of parallel execution by distributing parallel processing across all available instances. The number of processes that can participate in parallel operations depends on the DOP assigned to each table or index.

#### **See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about the query optimizer
- *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about parallel execution

## **Data Security Considerations in Oracle RAC**

This section describes the following two Oracle RAC security considerations:

- [Transparent Data Encryption and Wallets](#)
- [Windows Firewall Considerations](#)

### **Transparent Data Encryption and Wallets**

Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) enables Oracle RAC nodes to share the **wallet**. This eliminates the need to manually copy and synchronize the wallet across all nodes. Oracle recommends that you create the wallet on a shared file system. This allows all instances to access the same shared wallet.

Oracle RAC uses wallets in the following ways:

1. Any wallet operation, like opening or closing the wallet, performed on any one Oracle RAC instance is applicable for all other Oracle RAC instances. This means that when you open and close the wallet for one instance, then it opens and closes the wallet for all Oracle RAC instances.
2. When using a shared file system, ensure that the `ENCRYPTION_WALLET_LOCATION` parameter for all Oracle RAC instances points to the same shared wallet location. The security administrator must also ensure security of the shared wallet by assigning appropriate directory permissions.

---

**Note:** If Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS) is available for your operating system, then Oracle recommends that you store the wallet in Oracle ACFS. If you do not have Oracle ACFS in Oracle ASM, then use the Oracle ASM Configuration Assistant (ASMCA) to create it. You must add the mount point to the `sqlnet.ora` file in each instance, as follows:

```
ENCRYPTION_WALLET_LOCATION=
(SOURCE = (METHOD = FILE)
(METHOD_DATA =
(DIRECTORY = /opt/oracle/acfsmounts/data_wallet)))
```

This file system is mounted automatically when the instances start. Opening and closing the wallet, as well as commands to set or rekey and rotate the TDE master encryption key, are synchronized between all nodes.

---

3. A master key rekey performed on one instance is applicable for all instances. When a new Oracle RAC node comes up, it is aware of the current wallet open or close status.
4. Do not issue any wallet `open` or `close` commands while setting up or changing the master key.

Deployments where shared storage does not exist for the wallet require that each Oracle RAC node maintain a local wallet. After you create and provision a wallet on a single node, you must copy the wallet and make it available to all of the other nodes, as follows:

- For systems using Transparent Data Encryption with encrypted wallets, you can use any standard file transport protocol, though Oracle recommends using a secured file transport.
- For systems using Transparent Data Encryption with obfuscated wallets, file transport through a secured channel is recommended.

To specify the directory in which the wallet must reside, set the `ENCRYPTION_WALLET_LOCATION` parameter in the `sqlnet.ora` file. The local copies of the wallet need not be synchronized for the duration of Transparent Data Encryption usage until the server key is re-keyed though the `ALTER SYSTEM SET KEY SQL` statement. Each time you issue the `ALTER SYSTEM SET KEY` statement on a database instance, you must again copy the wallet residing on that node and make it available to all of the other nodes. Then, you must close and reopen the wallet on each of the nodes. To avoid unnecessary administrative overhead, reserve re-keying for exceptional cases where you believe that the server master key may have been compromised and that not re-keying it could cause a serious security problem.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide* for more information about creating and provisioning a wallet

## Windows Firewall Considerations

By default, all installations of Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1 and higher enable the Windows Firewall to block virtually all TCP network ports to incoming connections. As a result, any Oracle products that listen for incoming connections on a TCP port will not receive any of those connection requests, and the clients making those connections will report errors.

Depending upon which Oracle products you install and how they are used, you may need to perform additional Windows post-installation configuration tasks so that the Firewall products are functional on Windows Server 2003.

**See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide for Microsoft Windows* for more information about Oracle RAC executables requiring Windows Firewall exceptions



---

---

## Monitoring Performance

This chapter describes how to monitor and tune Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) performance.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview of Monitoring and Tuning Oracle RAC Databases](#)
- [Verifying the Interconnect Settings for Oracle RAC](#)
- [Influencing Interconnect Processing](#)
- [Performance Views in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Creating Oracle RAC Data Dictionary Views with CATCLUST.SQL](#)
- [Oracle RAC Performance Statistics](#)
- [Automatic Workload Repository in Oracle RAC Environments](#)
- [Active Session History Reports for Oracle RAC](#)
- [Monitoring Oracle RAC Statistics and Wait Events](#)

### Overview of Monitoring and Tuning Oracle RAC Databases

This section includes the following topics:

- [Monitoring Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware](#)
- [Tuning Oracle RAC Databases](#)

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide*
- The Oracle Enterprise Manager Online Help
- *Oracle Database 2 Day DBA* for more information about basic database tuning
- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about general performance tuning
- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about diagnosing problems for Oracle Clusterware components

## Monitoring Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware

Using Oracle Enterprise Manager is the preferred method for monitoring Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware. Oracle Enterprise Manager is an Oracle Web-based integrated management solution for monitoring and administering your computing environment. From any location where you can access a web browser, you can manage Oracle RAC databases, application servers, host computers, and Web applications, as well as related hardware and software. For example, you can monitor your Oracle RAC database performance from your office, home, or a remote site, as long as you have access to a Web browser.

Both Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control and Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control are cluster-aware and provide a central console to manage your cluster database. From the Cluster Database Home page, you can do all of the following:

- View the overall system status, such as the number of nodes in the cluster and their current status. This high-level view capability means that you do not have to access each individual database instance for details if you just want to see inclusive, aggregated information.
- View alert messages aggregated across all the instances with lists for the source of each alert message. An **alert message** is an indicator that signifies that a particular metric condition has been encountered. A **metric** is a unit of measurement used to report the system's conditions.
- Review issues that are affecting the entire cluster as well as those that are affecting individual instances.
- Monitor cluster cache coherency statistics to help you identify processing trends and optimize performance for your Oracle RAC environment. Cache coherency statistics measure how well the data in caches on multiple instances is synchronized. If the data caches are completely synchronized with each other, then reading a memory location from the cache on any instance will return the most recent data written to that location from any cache on any instance.

Oracle Enterprise Manager accumulates data over specified periods of time, called collection-based data. Oracle Enterprise Manager also provides current data, called real-time data.

*Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* provides complete information about monitoring performance with Oracle Enterprise Manager, including:

- Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor and Oracle RAC Performance
- [The Cluster Database Home Page](#)
- [The Interconnects Page](#)
- [The Cluster Performance Page](#)

### The Cluster Database Home Page

When you log in to Oracle Enterprise Manager using a client browser, the Cluster Database Home page appears where you can monitor the status of both Oracle Clusterware and the Oracle RAC environments. Monitoring can include such things as:

- Notification if there are any VIP relocations
- Status of the Oracle Clusterware on each node of the cluster using information obtained through the Cluster Verification Utility (`cluvfy`)
- Notification if node applications (`nodeapps`) start or stop

- Notification of issues in the Oracle Clusterware alert log for OCR, voting disk issues (if any), and node evictions

The Cluster Database Home page is similar to a noncluster Database Home page. However, on the Cluster Database Home page, Oracle Enterprise Manager displays the system state and availability. This includes a summary about alert messages and job activity, as well as links to all the database and Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) instances. For example, you can track problems with services on the cluster including when a service is not running on all of the preferred instances or when a service response time threshold is not being met.

### The Interconnects Page

You can use the Oracle Enterprise Manager Interconnects page to monitor the Oracle Clusterware environment. The Interconnects page shows the public and private interfaces on the cluster and the load contributed by database instances on the interconnect, including:

- Overall throughput across the private interconnect
- Notification if a database instance is using public interface due to misconfiguration
- Throughput and errors (if any) on the interconnect
- Throughput contributed by individual instances on the interconnect

All of this information is also available as collections that have a historic view. This is useful in conjunction with cluster cache coherency, such as when diagnosing problems related to cluster wait events. You can access the Interconnects page by clicking the Interconnect tab on the Cluster Database home page or clicking the Interconnect Alerts link under Diagnostic Findings on the Oracle RAC database home page.

### The Cluster Performance Page

The Oracle Enterprise Manager Cluster Database Performance page provides a quick glimpse of the performance statistics for a database. Statistics are rolled up across all the instances in the cluster database in charts. Using the links next to the charts, you can get more specific information and perform any of the following tasks:

- Identify the causes of performance issues.
- Decide whether resources need to be added or redistributed.
- Tune your SQL plan and schema for better optimization.
- Resolve performance issues

The charts on the Cluster Database Performance page include the following:

- **Chart for Cluster Host Load Average:** The Cluster Host Load Average chart in the Cluster Database Performance page shows potential problems that are outside the database. The chart shows maximum, average, and minimum load values for available nodes in the cluster for the previous hour.
- **Chart for Global Cache Block Access Latency:** Each cluster database instance has its own buffer cache in its System Global Area (SGA). Using Cache Fusion, Oracle RAC environments logically combine each instance's buffer cache to enable the database instances to process data as if the data resided on a logically combined, single cache.
- **Chart for Average Active Sessions:** The Average Active Sessions chart in the Cluster Database Performance page shows potential problems inside the database.

Categories, called wait classes, show how much of the database is using a resource, such as CPU or disk I/O. Comparing CPU time to wait time helps to determine how much of the response time is consumed with useful work rather than waiting for resources that are potentially held by other processes.

- **Chart for Database Throughput:** The Database Throughput charts summarize any resource contention that appears in the Average Active Sessions chart, and also show how much work the database is performing on behalf of the users or applications. The Per Second view shows the number of transactions compared to the number of logons, and the amount of physical reads compared to the redo size per second. The Per Transaction view shows the amount of physical reads compared to the redo size per transaction. Logons is the number of users that are logged on to the database.

In addition, the **Top Activity** drill down menu on the Cluster Database Performance page enables you to see the activity by wait events, services, and instances. Plus, you can see the details about SQL/sessions by going to a prior point in time by moving the slider on the chart.

The **Cluster Database Performance** page provides a quick glimpse of the performance statistics for an Oracle RAC database. Statistics are rolled up across all of the instances in the cluster database so that users can identify performance issues without going through all the instances. To help triage the performance issues related to services, Oracle Enterprise Manager aggregates the activity data at the following levels:

- **Aggregate by waits**  
All the activity data is presented in 12 categories: CPU, Scheduler, User I/O, System I/O, Concurrency, Application, Commit, Configuration, Administrative, Network, Cluster and Other. The data presented is rolled up from all of the running instances.
- **Aggregate by services**  
All the activity data is rolled up for each service. When the activity data is presented in this way, it is easy to identify which service is most active, and needs more analysis.
- **Aggregate by instances**  
As a similar effort, the activity data is rolled up for each instance, if services are not the interested ones.

The aggregates are provided on the pages where the activity data is presented including: Database Performance Page, Top Activity Page, Wait Details Page and Service Details Page.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide*

## Tuning Oracle RAC Databases

All noncluster tuning practices for Oracle Database apply to Oracle RAC databases. Therefore, implement the noncluster tuning methodologies described in the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Performance Tuning Guide* and the *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide*.

## Verifying the Interconnect Settings for Oracle RAC

The interconnect and internode communication protocols can affect **Cache Fusion** performance. In addition, the interconnect bandwidth, its latency, and the efficiency of

the IPC protocol determine the speed with which Cache Fusion processes block transfers.

To verify the interconnect settings of the Oracle RAC database instance to which you are connected, query the `V$CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` and `V$CONFIGURED_INTERCONNECTS` views. For example:

**Example 13–1 Verify Interconnect Settings with `V$CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS`**

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM V$CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS;
```

NAME	IP_ADDRESS	IS_PUBLIC	SOURCE
eth2	10.137.20.181	NO	Oracle Cluster Repository

---

**Note:** You can query the `GV$CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` view to display the entries for all of the instances in the cluster.

---

**Example 13–2 Verify Interconnect Settings with `V$CONFIGURED_INTERCONNECTS`**

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM V$CONFIGURED_INTERCONNECTS;
```

NAME	IP_ADDRESS	IS_PUBLIC	SOURCE
eth2	10.137.20.181	NO	Oracle Cluster Repository
eth0	10.137.8.225	YES	Oracle Cluster Repository

## Influencing Interconnect Processing

Once your interconnect is operative, you cannot significantly influence its performance. However, you can influence an interconnect protocol's efficiency by adjusting the interprocess communication (IPC) buffer sizes.

The Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) stores your system's interconnect information. Use the Oracle Interface Configuration (OIFCFG) command-line utility `oifcfg getif` command or the `OCRDUMP` utility to identify the interconnect that you are using. You can then change the interconnect that you are using by running an OIFCFG command.

**See Also:**

- Your vendor-specific interconnect documentation for more information about adjusting IPC buffer sizes
- *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about enabling and using the OIFCFG and OCRDUMP utilities

Although you *rarely* need to set the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` parameter, you can use it to assign a private network IP address or NIC as in the following example:

```
CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS=10.0.0.1
```

If you are using an operating system-specific vendor IPC protocol, then the trace information may not reveal the IP address.

---

**Note:** You can also use OIFCFG command to assign private network or private IP addresses.

---

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Reference* for more information about the `CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` parameter

## Performance Views in Oracle RAC

Each instance has a set of instance-specific views, which are prefixed with `V$`. You can also query global dynamic performance views to retrieve performance information from all of the qualified instances. Global dynamic performance view names are prefixed with `GV$`.

Querying a `GV$` view retrieves the `V$` view information from all qualified instances. In addition to the `V$` information, each `GV$` view contains an extra column named `INST_ID` of data type `NUMBER`. The `INST_ID` column displays the instance number from which the associated `V$` view information was obtained.

You can use the `INST_ID` column as a filter to retrieve `V$` information from a subset of available instances. For example, the following query retrieves the information from the `V$LOCK` view for instances 2 and 5:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM GV$LOCK WHERE INST_ID = 2 OR INST_ID = 5;
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Reference* for complete descriptions of `GV$` views

## Creating Oracle RAC Data Dictionary Views with `CATCLUST.SQL`

If you did not create your Oracle RAC database with the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA), then you must run the `CATCLUST.SQL` script to create views and tables related to Oracle RAC. You must have `SYSDBA` privileges to run this script.

**See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Installation Guide* installation guides for more information about creating your Oracle RAC database

## Oracle RAC Performance Statistics

Oracle RAC statistics appear as message request counters or as timed statistics. Message request counters include statistics showing the number of certain types of block mode conversions. Timed statistics reveal the total or average time waited for read and write I/O for particular types of operations.

## Automatic Workload Repository in Oracle RAC Environments

You can use **Automatic Workload Repository (AWR)** to monitor performance statistics related to Oracle RAC databases. AWR automatically generates snapshots of the performance data once every hour and collects the statistics in the workload repository. In Oracle RAC environments, each AWR snapshot captures data from all active instances in the cluster. The data for each snapshot set is captured from the same point in time. AWR stores the snapshot data for all instances in the same table and the data is identified by an instance qualifier. For example, the `BUFFER_BUSY_WAIT` statistic shows the number of buffer waits on each instance. AWR does not store data that is aggregated from across the entire cluster. In other words, the data is stored for each individual instance.

Using the Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (ADDM), you can analyze the information collected by AWR for possible performance problems with Oracle Database. ADDM presents performance data from a cluster-wide perspective, thus

enabling you to analyze performance on a global basis. In an Oracle RAC environment, ADDM can analyze performance using data collected from all instances and present it at different levels of granularity, including:

- Analysis for the entire cluster
- Analysis for a specific database instance
- Analysis for a subset of database instances

To perform these analyses, you can run the ADDM Advisor in ADDM for Oracle RAC mode to perform an analysis of the entire cluster; in Local ADDM mode to analyze the performance of an individual instance; or in Partial ADDM mode to analyze a subset of instances. Activate ADDM analysis using the advisor framework through Advisor Central in Oracle Enterprise Manager, or through the `DBMS_ADVISOR` and `DBMS_ADDM` PL/SQL packages.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for information about AWR and ADDM
- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about how to access and analyze global and local ADDM data using Oracle Enterprise Manager
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information about the `DBMS_ADVISOR` and `DBMS_ADDM` packages

## Active Session History Reports for Oracle RAC

This section describes Active Session History (ASH) reports for Oracle RAC under the following topics:

- [Overview of ASH Reports for Oracle RAC](#)
- [ASH Report for Oracle RAC: Top Cluster Events](#)
- [ASH Report for Oracle RAC: Top Remote Instance](#)

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about ASH reports

### Overview of ASH Reports for Oracle RAC

ASH is an integral part of the Oracle Database self-management framework and is useful for diagnosing performance problems in Oracle RAC environments. ASH report statistics provide details about Oracle Database session activity. Oracle Database records information about active sessions for all active Oracle RAC instances and stores this data in the System Global Area (SGA). Any session that is connected to the database and using CPU is considered an active session. The exception to this is sessions that are waiting for an event that belongs to the idle wait class.

ASH reports present a manageable set of data by capturing only information about active sessions. The amount of the data is directly related to the work being performed, rather than the number of sessions allowed on the system.

ASH statistics that are gathered over a specified duration can be put into ASH reports. Each ASH report is divided into multiple sections to help you identify short-lived performance problems that do not appear in the ADDM analysis. Two ASH report sections that are specific to Oracle RAC are Top Cluster Events and Top Remote Instance as described in the next two sections.

## ASH Report for Oracle RAC: Top Cluster Events

The ASH report Top Cluster Events section is part of the Top Events report that is specific to Oracle RAC. The Top Cluster Events report lists events that account for the highest percentage of session activity in the cluster wait class event along with the instance number of the affected instances. You can use this information to identify which events and instances caused a high percentage of cluster wait events.

## ASH Report for Oracle RAC: Top Remote Instance

The ASH report Top Remote Instance section is part of the Top Load Profile report that is specific to Oracle RAC. The Top Remote Instance report shows cluster wait events along with the instance numbers of the instances that accounted for the highest percentages of session activity. You can use this information to identify the instance that caused the extended cluster wait period.

## Monitoring Oracle RAC Statistics and Wait Events

This section explains wait events and statistics specific to Oracle RAC and how to interpret them when assessing performance data generated by the Automatic Workload Repository (AWR), Statspack, or by ad-hoc queries of the dynamic performance views.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Oracle RAC Statistics and Events in AWR and Statspack Reports](#)
- [Oracle RAC Wait Events](#)
- [Monitoring Performance by Analyzing GCS and GES Statistics](#)
- [Analyzing Cache Fusion Transfer Impact Using GCS Statistics](#)
- [Analyzing Response Times Based on Wait Events](#)

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about wait event analysis and the `spdoc.txt` file for details about the Statspack utility

## Oracle RAC Statistics and Events in AWR and Statspack Reports

The statistics snapshots generated by AWR and Statspack can be evaluated by producing reports displaying summary data such as load and cluster profiles based on regular statistics and wait events gathered on each instance.

Most of the relevant data is summarized on the Oracle RAC Statistics Page. This information includes:

- Global cache load profile
- Global cache efficiency percentages—workload characteristics
- Global cache and Enqueue Service (GES)—messaging statistics

Additional Oracle RAC sections appear later in the report:

- Global enqueue statistics
- Global CR statistics
- Global CURRENT served statistics
- Global cache transfer statistics.



## Oracle RAC Wait Events

Analyzing and interpreting what causes sessions to wait is an important method to determine where time is spent. In Oracle RAC, the wait time is attributed to an event which reflects the exact outcome of a request. For example, when a session on an instance is looking for a block in the global cache, it does not know whether it will receive the data cached by another instance or whether it will receive a message to read from disk. The wait events for the global cache convey precise information and waiting for global cache blocks or messages is:

- Summarized in a broader category called Cluster Wait Class
- Temporarily represented by a placeholder event which is active while waiting for a block, for example:
  - `gc current block request`
  - `gc cr block request`
- Attributed to precise events when the outcome of the request is known, for example:
  - `gc current block 3-way`
  - `gc current block busy`
  - `gc cr block grant 2-way`

In summary, the wait events for Oracle RAC convey information valuable for performance analysis. They are used in Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (ADDM) to enable precise diagnostics of the effect of cache fusion.

## Monitoring Performance by Analyzing GCS and GES Statistics

In order to determine the amount of work and cost related to inter-instance messaging and contention, examine block transfer rates, remote requests made by each transaction, the number and time waited for global cache events as described under the following headings:

- [Analyzing the Effect of Cache Fusion in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Analyzing Performance Using GCS and GES Statistics](#)

### Analyzing the Effect of Cache Fusion in Oracle RAC

The effect of accessing blocks in the global cache and maintaining coherency is represented by:

- The Global Cache Service (GCS) statistics for `current` and `cr` blocks, for example, `gc current blocks received`, `gc cr blocks received`, and so on
- The GCS wait events, for `gc current block 3-way`, `gc cr grant 2-way`, and so on.

The response time for cache fusion transfers is determined by the messaging and processing times imposed by the physical interconnect components, the IPC protocol and the GCS protocol. It is not affected by disk I/O factors other than occasional log writes. The cache fusion protocol does not require I/O to data files in order to guarantee **cache coherency** and Oracle RAC inherently does not cause any more I/O to disk than a nonclustered instance.

### Analyzing Performance Using GCS and GES Statistics

This section describes how to monitor GCS performance by identifying data blocks and objects which are frequently used (*hot*) by all instances. High concurrency on certain blocks may be identified by GCS wait events and times.

The `gc current block busy` wait event indicates that the access to cached data blocks was delayed because they were busy either in the remote or the local cache. This could be caused by any of the following:

- The blocks were pinned
- The blocks were held up by sessions
- The blocks were delayed by a log write on a remote instance
- A session on the same instance was already accessing a block which was in transition between instances and the current session needed to wait behind it (for example, `gc current block busy`)

Use the `V$SESSION_WAIT` view to identify objects and data blocks with contention. The GCS wait events contain the file and block number for a block request in `p1` and `p2`, respectively.

An additional segment statistic, `gc buffer busy`, has been added to quickly determine the busy objects without having to query the `V$SESSION_WAIT` view mentioned earlier.

The AWR infrastructure provides a view of active session history which can also be used to trace recent wait events and their arguments. It is therefore useful for hot block analysis. Most of the reporting facilities used by AWR and Statspack contain the object statistics and cluster wait class category, so that sampling of the views mentioned earlier is largely unnecessary.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle recommends using ADDM and AWR. However, Statspack is available for backward compatibility. Statspack provides reporting only. You must run Statspack at level 7 to collect statistics related to block contention and segment block waits.

---

---

It is advisable to run ADDM on the snapshot data collected by the AWR infrastructure to obtain an overall evaluation of the impact of the global cache. The advisory will also identify the busy objects and SQL highest cluster wait time.

### Analyzing Cache Fusion Transfer Impact Using GCS Statistics

This section describes how to monitor GCS performance by identifying objects read and modified frequently and the service times imposed by the remote access. Waiting for blocks to arrive may constitute a significant portion of the response time, in the same way that reading from disk could increase the block access delays, only that cache fusion transfers in most cases are faster than disk access latencies.

The following wait events indicate that the remotely cached blocks were shipped to the local instance without having been busy, pinned or requiring a log flush:

- `gc current block 2-way`
- `gc current block 3-way`
- `gc cr block 2-way`
- `gc cr block 3-way`

The object statistics for `gc current blocks received` and `gc cr blocks received` enable quick identification of the indexes and tables which are shared by the active instances. As mentioned earlier, creating an ADDM analysis will, in most cases, point you to the SQL statements and database objects that could be impacted by inter-instance contention.

Any increases in the average wait times for the events mentioned in the preceding list could be caused by the following occurrences:

- High load: CPU shortages, long run queues, scheduling delays
- Misconfiguration: using public instead of private interconnect for message and block traffic

If the average wait times are acceptable and no interconnect or load issues can be diagnosed, then the accumulated time waited can usually be attributed to a few SQL statements which need to be tuned to minimize the number of blocks accessed.

The column `CLUSTER_WAIT_TIME` in `V$SQLAREA` represents the wait time incurred by individual SQL statements for global cache events and will identify the SQL which may need to be tuned.

## Analyzing Response Times Based on Wait Events

Most global cache wait events that show a high total time as reported in the AWR and Statspack reports or in the dynamic performance views are normal and may present themselves as the top database time consumers without actually indicating a problem. This section describes frequent wait events that you should be aware of when interpreting performance data.

If user response times increase and a high proportion of time waited is for global cache, then you should determine the cause. Most reports include a breakdown of events sorted by percentage of the total time.

It is useful to start with an ADDM report, which analyzes the routinely collected performance statistics with respect to their impact, and points to the objects and SQL contributing most to the time waited, and then moves on to the more detailed reports produced by AWR and Statspack.

Wait events for Oracle RAC include the following categories:

- [Block-Related Wait Events](#)
- [Message-Related Wait Events](#)
- [Contention-Related Wait Events](#)
- [Load-Related Wait Events](#)

### Block-Related Wait Events

The main wait events for block-related waits are:

- `gc current block 2-way`
- `gc current block 3-way`
- `gc cr block 2-way`
- `gc cr block 3-way`

The block-related wait event statistics indicate that a block was received as either the result of a 2-way or a 3-way message, that is, the block was sent from either the

resource master requiring 1 message and 1 transfer, or was forwarded to a third node from which it was sent, requiring 2 messages and 1 block transfer.

### Message-Related Wait Events

The main wait events for message-related waits are:

- `gc current grant 2-way`
- `gc cr grant 2-way`

The message-related wait event statistics indicate that no block was received because it was not cached in any instance. Instead a global grant was given, enabling the requesting instance to read the block from disk or modify it.

If the time consumed by these events is high, then it may be assumed that the frequently used SQL causes a lot of disk I/O (in the event of the `cr grant`) or that the workload inserts a lot of data and needs to find and format new blocks frequently (in the event of the `current grant`).

### Contention-Related Wait Events

The main wait events for contention-related waits are:

- `gc current block busy`
- `gc cr block busy`
- `gc buffer busy acquire/release`

The contention-related wait event statistics indicate that a block was received which was pinned by a session on another node, was deferred because a change had not yet been flushed to disk or because of high concurrency, and therefore could not be shipped immediately. A buffer may also be busy locally when a session has already initiated a cache fusion operation and is waiting for its completion when another session on the same node is trying to read or modify the same data. High service times for blocks exchanged in the global cache may exacerbate the contention, which can be caused by frequent concurrent read and write accesses to the same data.

The `gc current block busy` and `gc cr block busy` wait events indicate that the local instance that is making the request did not immediately receive a current or consistent read block. The term *busy* in these events' names indicates that the sending of the block was delayed on a remote instance. For example, a block cannot be shipped immediately if Oracle Database has not yet written the redo for the block's changes to a log file.

In comparison to `block busy` wait events, a `gc buffer busy` event indicates that Oracle Database cannot immediately grant access to data that is stored in the local buffer cache. This is because a global operation on the buffer is pending and the operation has not yet completed. In other words, the buffer is busy and all other processes that are attempting to access the local buffer must wait to complete.

The existence of `gc buffer busy` events also means that there is block contention that is resulting in multiple requests for access to the local block. Oracle Database must queue these requests. The length of time that Oracle Database needs to process the queue depends on the remaining service time for the block. The service time is affected by the processing time that any network latency adds, the processing time on the remote and local instances, and the length of the wait queue.

The average wait time and the total wait time should be considered when being alerted to performance issues where these particular waits have a high impact.

Usually, either interconnect or load issues or SQL execution against a large shared working set can be found to be the root cause.

### **Load-Related Wait Events**

The main wait events for load-related waits are:

- gc current block congested
- gc cr block congested

The load-related wait events indicate that a delay in processing has occurred in the GCS, which is usually caused by high load, CPU saturation and would have to be solved by additional CPUs, load-balancing, off loading processing to different times or a new cluster node. For the events mentioned, the wait time encompasses the entire round trip from the time a session starts to wait after initiating a block request until the block arrives.



---

---

## Server Control Utility Reference

This appendix includes a complete reference for the Server Control Utility (SRVCTL).

**See Also:** [Chapter 3, "Administering Database Instances and Cluster Databases"](#) for more information about using SRVCTL to manage an Oracle RAC database

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Using SRVCTL](#)
  - [Overview of SRVCTL](#)
  - [Operational Notes for SRVCTL](#)
  - [Additional Topics on SRVCTL](#)
  - [Deprecated Subprograms or Commands](#)
- [SRVCTL Command Reference](#)

## Using SRVCTL

This section includes topics that relate to using the SRVCTL utility.

- [Overview of SRVCTL](#)
- [Operational Notes for SRVCTL](#)
- [Additional Topics on SRVCTL](#)



## Overview of SRVCTL

Use SRVCTL to manage configuration information. You can use SRVCTL commands to add, remove, start, stop, modify, enable, and disable a number of entities, such as databases, instances, listeners, SCAN listeners, services, grid naming service (GNS), and Oracle ASM.

Some SRVCTL operations modify the configuration data stored in the Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR). SRVCTL performs other operations, such as starting and stopping instances, by sending requests to the Oracle Clusterware process (CRSD), which then starts or stops the Oracle Clusterware resources.

---

---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---

---

## Operational Notes for SRVCTL

SRVCTL is installed on each node by default.

This section discusses the following topics:

- [Usage Information](#)
- [Character Set and Case Sensitivity of Object Values](#)
- [Summary of Tasks for Which SRVCTL Is Used](#)
- [Using SRVCTL Help](#)
- [Privileges and Security](#)

### Usage Information

To use SRVCTL, log in to the operating system of a node and enter the SRVCTL command and its options in case-sensitive syntax as described in "[SRVCTL Command Reference](#)" on page A-11.

Guidelines for using SRVCTL are:

- Only use the version of SRVCTL that is provided with Oracle Database 11g on Oracle RAC databases that are created or upgraded for Oracle Database 11g. The version of SRVCTL must be the same as the version of the object (listeners, Oracle ASM instances, Oracle RAC databases and their instances, and services) being managed. To ensure the versions are the same release, issue SRVCTL commands from the Oracle home of the database or object you are managing.
- SRVCTL does not support concurrent executions of commands on the same object. Therefore, run only one SRVCTL command at a time for each database, service, or other object.

#### Using Comma-Delimited Lists

When specifying a comma-delimited list as part of a SRVCTL command, there should not be any spaces between the items in the list. For example:

```
srvctl add database -g serverpool1,serverpool3
```

When you specify a comma-delimited list in a Windows environment, you must enclose the list in double quotation marks (" "). You can enclose a comma-delimited list in double quotation marks in a Linux or UNIX environment but they will be ignored.

#### Specifying a Continuation of Command Line Entries

If you are entering a SRVCTL command, and you want to continue the input on a new line, then you can use the operating system continuation character. In Linux, this is the backslash (\) symbol.

#### SRVCTL Command Feedback

A SRVCTL command that produces no output is a successful command. Not all SRVCTL commands return a message when it completes, successfully. However, if a SRVCTL command fails, then it always returns an error message.

## Character Set and Case Sensitivity of Object Values

SRVCTL interacts with many different types of objects. The character set and name length limitations, and whether or not the object name is case sensitive, can vary between object types.

**Table A-1 String Restrictions for SRVCTL Object Names**

Object Type	Character Set Limitations	Case Sensitive?	Maximum Length
db_domain	Alpha-numeric characters, underscore (_), and number sign (#)		128 characters
db_unique_name	Alpha-numeric characters, underscore (_), number sign (#), and dollar sign (\$); the first 8 characters must be unique because those characters are used to form instance names for policy-managed databases	No	30 characters but the first 8 characters must be unique relative to any other database in the same cluster
diskgroup_name	Naming disk groups have the same limitations as naming other database objects. <b>See Also:</b> <i>Oracle Database SQL Language Reference</i> for more information about database object naming rules	No (all names are converted to uppercase)	
instance_name	Alpha-numeric characters	Depends on the platform	15 characters
listener_name			
node_name		No	
scan_name	The first character must be an alphabetic character	No	
server_pool	Alpha-numeric characters, underscore (_), number sign (#), period (.), and dollar sign (\$); the name cannot begin with a period, contain single quotation marks ( ' '), nor can the name be "Generic" or "Free" because those two names are reserved for the built-in server pools		250 characters
service_name			250 characters
volume_name	Alphanumeric characters; dashes (-) are not allowed and the first character must be an alphabetic character.	No	11 characters

## Summary of Tasks for Which SRVCTL Is Used

SRVCTL is used to manage databases, instances, cluster databases, cluster database instances, Oracle ASM instance and disk groups, services, listeners, or other clusterware resources.

- Cluster Database Configuration Tasks
  - Add, modify, and delete cluster database configuration information.

- Add an instance or a service to, and delete an instance or service from the configuration of a cluster database.
- Move instances and services in a cluster database configuration and modify service configurations.
- Set and unset the environment for an instance or service in a cluster database configuration.
- Set and unset the environment for an entire cluster database in a cluster database configuration.
- General Cluster Database Administration Tasks
  - Start and stop cluster databases
  - Start and stop cluster database instances
  - Start, stop, and relocate cluster database services
  - Obtain statuses of cluster databases, cluster database instances, or cluster database services
- Node-Level Tasks
  - Adding and deleting node level applications, server pools, and VIPs
  - Setting and unsetting the environment for node-level applications
  - Administering disk groups
  - Administering server pools
  - Administering node applications
  - Administering Oracle ASM instances
  - Starting and stopping a group of programs that includes virtual IP addresses (VIPs), listeners, and Oracle Notification Services

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for information

## Using SRVCTL Help

To see help for all SRVCTL commands, from the command line enter:

```
srvctl -h
```

To see the command syntax and a list of options for each SRVCTL command, from the command line enter:

```
srvctl command (or verb) object (or noun) -h
```

To see the SRVCTL version number enter:

```
$ srvctl -V
```

## Privileges and Security

To use SRVCTL to change your Oracle RAC database configuration, log in to the operating system as the software owner of the home that you want to manage.

For example, if different users installed Oracle Database and the Oracle Grid Infrastructure, then log in as the database software owner (for example, `ora_db`) to manage databases and log in as the Oracle Grid Infrastructure software owner (for example, `ora_asm`) to manage the Oracle ASM instances.

Users who are members of the OSDBA operating system group can start and stop the database. To stop and start an Oracle ASM instance, you must be a member of the OSASM operating system group.

To create or register objects such as listeners, Oracle Notification Services, and services, you must be logged in to the operating system as the software owner of the Oracle home. The objects you create or register for that Oracle home will run under the user account of the owner of the Oracle home. Databases run as the database installation owner of the home from which they run.

To perform `srvctl add` operations on any object, you must be logged in as the Oracle account owner of the home on which the object runs.

For some SRVCTL commands, on Linux and UNIX systems, you must be logged in as `root`, and on Windows systems, you must be logged in as a user with Administrator privileges to run them. In this appendix, those commands are preceded by the `root` prompt (`#`) in the command examples.

## Additional Topics on SRVCTL

### Difference between Using SRVCTL and CRSCTL

Use SRVCTL to manage Oracle-supplied resources such as listener, instances, disk groups, and networks, and CRSCTL for managing Oracle Clusterware and its resources.

---

---

**Note:** Oracle strongly discourages directly manipulating Oracle-supplied resources (resources whose names begin with *ora*) using CRSCTL. This could adversely impact the cluster configuration.

---

---

### Stopping Active SRVCTL Commands

Although you may be able to cancel running SRVCTL commands by pressing the Control-C keys, you may corrupt your configuration data by doing this.

You are strongly advised not to attempt to terminate SRVCTL in this manner.

## Deprecated Subprograms or Commands

The following command options have been deprecated for Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2):

**Table A–2** *Deprecated Commands and Options for SRVCTL*

Command	Deprecated Options
srvctl add asm	-n <i>node_name</i> -i <i>instance_name</i> -o <i>Oracle_home</i> -p <i>spfile</i>
srvctl add database	-A { <i>name</i>   <i>IP_address</i> }/ <i>netmask</i>
srvctl add listener	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl config database	-t
srvctl config listener	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl config nodeapps	-n <i>node_name</i> -l
srvctl config asm	-i <i>instance_name</i>
srvctl disable nodeapps	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl enable asm	-i <i>instance_name</i>
srvctl enable nodeapps	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl getenv instance	-d <i>db_unique_name</i> -i <i>instance_name</i> -t " <i>name=val_list</i> "
srvctl getenv nodeapps	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl getenv service	-d <i>db_unique_name</i> -s <i>service_name</i> -t " <i>name=val_list</i> "
srvctl modify asm	-o <i>Oracle_home</i>
srvctl modify instance	-s <i>asm_inst_name</i> -r
srvctl remove asm	-n <i>node_name</i> -i <i>instance_name</i>
srvctl remove listener	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl remove nodeapps	-n " <i>node_name_list</i> "
srvctl setenv instance	-d <i>db_unique_name</i> -i <i>instance_name</i> -t " <i>name=val_list</i> " -T " <i>name=val</i> "
srvctl setenv nodeapps	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl setenv service	-d <i>db_unique_name</i> -s <i>service_name</i> -t " <i>name=val_list</i> " -T " <i>name=val</i> "
srvctl start asm	-i <i>instance_name</i>

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Deprecated Commands and Options for SRVCTL**

<b>Command</b>	<b>Deprecated Options</b>
srvctl status instance	-S <i>level</i>
srvctl status nodeapps	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl stop asm	-i <i>instance_name</i>
srvctl unsetenv instance	-d <i>db_unique_name</i> -i <i>instance_name</i> -t " <i>name=val_list</i> "
srvctl unsetenv nodeapps	-n <i>node_name</i>
srvctl unsetenv service	-d <i>db_unique_name</i> -s <i>service_name</i> -t " <i>name=val_list</i> "



## SRVCTL Command Reference

### SRVCTL Command Syntax and Options

SRVCTL commands, object names, and options are case sensitive. Database, instance, listener, and service names are case insensitive and case preserving. You cannot create listener names that differ only in case, such as LISTENER and listener. SRVCTL uses the following command syntax:

```
srvctl command object [options]
```

In SRVCTL syntax:

- *command* is a verb such as *start*, *stop*, or *remove*
- *object* is the target or object on which SRVCTL performs the command, such as database or instance. You can also use object abbreviations.
- *options* extend the use of a preceding command combination to include additional parameters for the command. For example, the *-i* option indicates that a comma-delimited list of preferred instance names follows; sometimes the *-i* option only permits one value and not a list of names. The *-n* option indicates that a node name or a comma-delimited list of node names follows. Do not use spaces between the items in a comma-delimited list.

---



---

**Note:** If specifying a comma-delimited list in Windows, then you must enclose the list within double quotation marks ( " ").

---



---

**Table A-3 Summary of SRVCTL Commands**

Command	Description
<a href="#">add</a> on page A-14	Adds node applications, databases, database instances, Grid Naming Service (GNS), listeners, single client access names (SCANs), Oracle ASM instances, server pools, services, or virtual IPs (VIPs).
<a href="#">config</a> on page A-29	Lists the configuration for GNS, the node applications, database, Oracle ASM instance, or service.
<a href="#">convert</a> on page A-37	Converts a database either to or from an Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node (Oracle RAC One Node) database.
<a href="#">disable</a> on page A-38	Disables the database, database instance, GNS, Oracle ASM instance, or service.
<a href="#">downgrade</a> on page A-46	Downgrades the database configuration after you manually downgrade the database.
<a href="#">enable</a> on page A-47	Enables the database, database instance, GNS, Oracle ASM instance, or service.
<a href="#">getenv</a> on page A-55	Displays the environment variable in the configuration for the node applications, database, VIP, listener or Oracle ASM.
<a href="#">modify</a> on page A-58	Modifies the node applications, database, database instance, GNS, or service configuration.

**Table A-3 (Cont.) Summary of SRVCTL Commands**

Command	Description
<a href="#">relocate</a> on page A-72	Relocates GNS, OC4J, SCANs, Oracle RAC One Node databases, servers, and VIPs from one node to another.
<a href="#">remove</a> on page A-78	Removes the node applications, database, database instance, GNS, Oracle ASM instance, or service.
<a href="#">setenv</a> on page A-86	Sets the environment variable in the configuration for the node applications, database, VIP, listener or Oracle ASM.
<a href="#">start</a> on page A-89	Starts the node applications, database, database instance, GNS, Oracle ASM instance, or service.
<a href="#">status</a> on page A-99	Displays the status of the node applications, database, database instance, GNS, Oracle ASM instance, or service.
<a href="#">stop</a> on page A-109	Stops the node applications, database, database instance, GNS, Oracle ASM instance, or service.
<a href="#">unsetenv</a> on page A-119	Unsets the environment variable in the configuration for the node applications, database, VIP, listener or Oracle ASM.
<a href="#">upgrade</a> on page A-122	Upgrades the configuration to the version of the software on which it is running.

### SRVCTL Objects Summary

[Table A-4](#) lists the keywords that can be used for the *object* portion of SRVCTL commands. You can use either the full name or the abbreviation for each object keyword. The **Purpose** column describes the object and the actions that can be performed on that object.

**Table A-4 Object Keywords and Abbreviations**

Object	Keyword	Purpose
Cluster Verification Utility	cvu	To add, modify, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, relocate, obtain the status of, and remove CVU resources.
Database	database	To add, modify, manage environment variables for, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, and obtain the status of databases, and also to upgrade, downgrade, and remove database configuration information about databases.
Disk Group	diskgroup	To add, modify, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, obtain the status of, and remove Oracle ASM disk groups
File system	filesystem	To add, modify, list the configuration of, enable, disable, stop, start, obtain the status of, and remove disk devices for Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS).
Grid Naming Service (GNS)	gns	To add, modify, list the configuration of, enable, disable, stop, start, obtain the status of, and remove a GNS daemon.

**Table A-4 (Cont.) Object Keywords and Abbreviations**

<b>Object</b>	<b>Keyword</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
Home directory (for patching)	home	To start, stop, and obtain the status of all clusterware resources related to a Home directory.f
Instance	instance	To add, modify, enable, disable, start, stop, obtain the status of, and remove database instances.
Listener	listener	To add, modify, manage environment variables for, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, obtain the status of, and remove listeners.
Network	network	To add, modify, list the configuration of, and remove a non-default Network.  <b>Note:</b> The node applications object, and the <code>config</code> and <code>modify</code> commands also manage the default network.
Node applications	nodeapps	To add, modify, manage environment variables for, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, obtain the status of, and remove node applications.
Oracle Automatic Storage Management	asm	To add, modify, manage environment variables for, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, obtain the status of, and remove Oracle ASM instances.
Oracle Grid Foundation OC4J container	oc4j	To add, modify, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, relocate, obtain the status of, and remove OC4J instances
Oracle Notification Service	ons	To add, configure, enable, start, obtain the status of, stop, disable, and remove Oracle Notification Service instances for Oracle Restart
Single client access name (SCAN)	scan	To add, list the configuration of, modify, enable, disable, start, stop, relocate, obtain the status of, and remove SCAN VIPs
SCAN listener	scan_listener	To add, list the configuration of, modify, enable, disable, start, stop, relocate, obtain the status of, and remove SCAN listeners
Server pool	srvpool	To add, modify, list the configuration of, obtain the status of, and remove server pools
Service	service	To add, modify, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, obtain the status of, relocate, and remove services
Virtual IP	VIP	To add, manage environment variables for, list the configuration of, enable, disable, start, stop, obtain the status of, and remove a VIP

## add

The `srvctl add` command adds the configuration and the Oracle Clusterware applications to OCR for the cluster database, named instances, named services, or for the named nodes. To perform `srvctl add` operations, you must be logged in as the database administrator and be the Oracle account owner on Linux and UNIX systems, or you must be logged on as a user with Administrator privileges on Windows systems.

When adding an instance, the name that you specify with `-i` must match the `ORACLE_SID` parameter. The database name given with `-d db_unique_name` must match the `DB_UNIQUE_NAME` initialization parameter setting. If `DB_UNIQUE_NAME` is unspecified, then match the `DB_NAME` initialization parameter setting. The default setting for `DB_UNIQUE_NAME` uses the setting for `DB_NAME`. Also, the domain name given with `-m db_domain` must match the `DB_DOMAIN` setting.

**Table A-5** *srvctl add Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl add asm</code> on page A-14	Adds Oracle ASM instances
<code>srvctl add cvu</code> on page A-15	Adds the Cluster Verification Utility resource to an Oracle Clusterware configuration
<code>srvctl add database</code> on page A-15	Adds a database and configuration
<code>srvctl add filesystem</code> on page A-17	Adds a volume to Oracle ACFS
<code>srvctl add gns</code> on page A-18	Adds the Grid Naming Service (GNS) to a cluster
<code>srvctl add instance</code> on page A-19	Adds one or more instance and configuration
<code>srvctl add listener</code> on page A-19	Adds a listener to the node
<code>srvctl add network</code> on page A-20	Adds a DHCP or static network
<code>srvctl add nodeapps</code> on page A-21	Adds node applications
<code>srvctl add oc4j</code> on page A-22	Adds OC4J instances
<code>srvctl add ons</code> on page A-22	Adds Oracle Notification Service daemons
<code>srvctl add scan</code> on page A-23	Adds SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl add scan_listener</code> on page A-24	Adds SCAN listeners
<code>srvctl add service</code> on page A-24	Adds services
<code>srvctl add srvpool</code> on page A-27	Adds a server pool to a cluster
<code>srvctl add vip</code> on page A-28	Adds a VIP to a node

### srvctl add asm

Adds a record for an Oracle ASM instance to the entire cluster. This command needs to be run only one time from the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home.

---



---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---



---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl add asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add asm [-l listener_name]
```

This command has only one option, `-l`, which calls for the name of a listener. If you do not specify this option, then the listener name defaults to `LISTENER`.

### Example

To add a clusterware resource for Oracle ASM on every node in the cluster, use the following command:

```
srvctl add asm
```

## srvctl add cvu

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command adds the [Cluster Verification Utility \(CVU\)](#) to an Oracle Clusterware configuration.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl add cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add cvu [-t check_interval_in_minutes]
```

**Table A-6** *srvctl add cvu Options*

Option	Description
<code>-t</code> <code>check_interval_in_minut</code> <code>es</code>	By default, CVU runs once every 6 hours and verifies the health of cluster. The shortest interval you can specify for CVU check is 10 minutes.

### Examples

An example of this command to add CVU with a check interval of 6 hours is:

```
$ srvctl add cvu -t 360
```

## srvctl add database

Adds a database configuration to your cluster database configuration.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl add database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add database -d db_unique_name -o oracle_home
  [-x node_name] [-m domain_name] [-p spfile]
  [-c {RACONENODE | RAC | SINGLE} [-e server_list] [-i instance_name] [-w
timeout]]
  [-r {PRIMARY | PHYSICAL_STANDBY | LOGICAL_STANDBY | SNAPSHOT_STANDBY}]
  [-s start_options] [-t stop_options] [-n db_name -j "acfs_path_list"]
  [-y {AUTOMATIC | MANUAL | NORESTART}] [-g server_pool_list] [-a
disk_group_list]
```

**Table A-7** *srvctl add database Options*

Syntax	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database.
-o <i>oracle_home</i>	The path for the Oracle database home directory.
-x <i>node_name</i>	Node name on which you want to register a noncluster Oracle database.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware and can be used with the -g option to create a policy-managed, noncluster database.
-m <i>db_domain</i>	The domain for the database  <b>Note:</b> You must use this option if you set the DB_DOMAIN initialization parameter set for the database.
-p <i>spfile</i>	The path name of the database server parameter file.
-c {RACONENODE   RAC   SINGLE}	(version 11.2.0.2 or higher) The type of database you are adding: Oracle RAC One Node, Oracle RAC, or single instance. The default is RAC unless you specify the -x <i>node_name</i> option, and the -c option defaults to SINGLE.
-e <i>server_list</i>	(version 11.2.0.2 or higher) List candidate servers for Oracle RAC One Node databases.  <b>Notes:</b> You can use this option only with administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases. If your Oracle RAC One Node database is policy managed, you <i>cannot</i> use this option.
-i <i>instance_name</i>	(version 11.2.0.2 or higher) Instance name prefix for Oracle RAC One Node databases. The default value for this option is the first 12 characters of the global unique name of the database.  <b>Notes:</b> You can use this option only with administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases. If your Oracle RAC One Node database is policy managed, you <i>cannot</i> use this option.
-w <i>timeout</i>	(version 11.2.0.2 or higher) Online database relocation timeout, in minutes, for Oracle RAC One Node databases. The default is 30.
-r {PRIMARY   PHYSICAL_STANDBY   LOGICAL_STANDBY   SNAPSHOT_STANDBY}	The role of the database in an Oracle Data Guard configuration. The default is PRIMARY.  <b>See Also:</b> <i>Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration</i> for more information about database roles
-s <i>start_options</i>	Startup options for the database, such as OPEN, MOUNT, and NOMOUNT. The default value is OPEN.  <b>Note:</b> For multi-word startup options, such as read only and read write, separate the words with a space and enclose in double quotation marks (" "). For example, "read only".  <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about startup options

**Table A-7 (Cont.) *srvctl add database Options***

Syntax	Description
-t <i>stop_options</i>	Stop options for the database, such as NORMAL, TRANSACTIONAL, IMMEDIATE, and ABORT  <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about shutdown options
-n <i>db_name</i>	The name of the database, if it is different from the unique name given by the -d option
-j " <i>acfs_path_list</i> "	A single Oracle ACFS path or a comma-delimited list of Oracle ACFS paths enclosed in double quotation marks (" ") where the database's dependency is set.  Use this option to create dependencies on Oracle ACFS file systems other than ORACLE_HOME, such as for when the database uses ORACLE_BASE on a file system that is different from the ORACLE_HOME file system.
-y {AUTOMATIC   MANUAL   NORESTART}	Management policy for the database. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ AUTOMATIC (default): The database is automatically restored to its previous running condition (started or stopped) upon restart of the database host computer.</li> <li>■ MANUAL: The database is never automatically restarted upon restart of the database host computer. A MANUAL setting does not prevent Oracle Clusterware from monitoring the database while it is running and restarting it if a failure occurs.</li> <li>■ NORESTART: Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.3), you can use the NORESTART value. Similar to the MANUAL setting, the database is never automatically restarted upon restart of the database host computer. A NORESTART setting, however, never restarts the database even if a failure occurs.</li> </ul>
-g " <i>server_pool_list</i> "	Comma-delimited list of server pool names used to control database placement. If you do not specify this option, then it defaults to the Generic server pool.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware and cannot be used with the -x option.
-a " <i>disk_group_list</i> "	Comma-delimited list of Oracle ASM disk groups if database uses Oracle ASM storage

**Examples**

An example of this command to add a policy-managed database is:

```
srvctl add database -d crm -o /u01/oracle/product/112/mydb -m foo.com
-p +diskgroup1/crm/spfilecrm.ora -r PHYSICAL_STANDBY -s MOUNT -t NORMAL
-n database2 -y MANUAL -g svrpool1,svrpool2 -a "diskgroup1,diskgroup2"
```

An example of this command to add an administrator-managed database is:

```
srvctl add database -d crm -o /u01/oracle/product/112/mydb -m foo.com
```

**srvctl add filesystem**

Adds a disk device to Oracle ACFS. This command needs to be run only one time from the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home.

An Oracle ACFS file system resource is typically created for use with application resource dependency lists. For example, if an Oracle ACFS file system is configured for use as an Oracle Database home, then a resource created for the file system can be included in the resource dependency list of the Oracle Database application. This will cause the file system and stack to be automatically mounted as a result of the start action of the database application.

---



---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ACFS on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ACFS.

---



---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl add filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add filesystem -d volume_device -v volume_name -g diskgroup_name
                    [-m mountpoint_path] [-u user_name]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-8** *srvctl add filesystem Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d volume_device</code>	The volume device path.
<code>-v volume_name</code>	The name of the volume.
<code>-g diskgroup_name</code>	The name of the Oracle ACFS disk group to which the device should be added.
<code>-m mountpoint_path</code>	The mount point path name for the disk device. This must be an absolute path.  <b>Note:</b> If the file system is not currently mounted, then you <i>must</i> use this parameter.
<code>-u user_name</code>	The name of the user authorized to mount and unmount the filesystem.

### Example

An example of this command is the following:

```
srvctl add filesystem -d /dev/asm/d1volume1-295 -v VOLUME1 -g RAC_DATA \
                    -m /oracle/cluster1/acfs1
```

## srvctl add gns

Use this command to add the Grid Naming Service (GNS) to a cluster when you are using a DHCP public network.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl add gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add gns -i ip_address -d domain
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---



**Table A–9** *srvctl add gns Options*

Option	Description
-i <i>ip_address</i>	The Virtual IP (VIP) address on which GNS is to listen for DNS requests
-d <i>domain</i>	The network subdomain that is used for Forward DNS Lookup of cluster IP addresses

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
srvctl add gns -i 192.168.16.17 -d cluster.mycompany.com
```

**srvctl add instance**

Adds a configuration for an instance to your cluster database configuration.

You can only use this command for administrator-managed databases. If you have a policy-managed database, then use the `srvctl modify srvpool` command to add an instance to increase either the maximum size, minimum size, or both, of the server pool used by the database.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl add instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add instance -d db_unique_name -i instance_name -n node_name
```

**Notes:**

- This command increments the `CARDINALITY` resource attribute.
- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
- If you attempt to use this command on an Oracle RAC One Node database, then the command returns an error stating you must convert the database to Oracle RAC.

**Table A–10** *srvctl add instance Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	The unique name of the database you are adding the instance to
-i <i>instance_name</i>	The name of the instance you are adding
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node on which you are creating the instance

**Examples**

Examples of this command are:

```
$ srvctl add instance -d crm -i crm01 -n gm01
$ srvctl add instance -d crm -i crm02 -n gm02
$ srvctl add instance -d crm -i crm03 -n gm03
```

**srvctl add listener**

Adds a listener to every node in a cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl add listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add listener [-l listener_name] [-o Oracle_home]
  [-p "[TCP:]port_list[/IPC:key][/NMP:pipe_name][/TCPS:s_port][/SDP:port]" ]
  [-k network_number] [-s]
```

**Table A-11** *srvctl add listener Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	Specify a listener name. If this option is not specified, the default name of LISTENER is used.
-o <i>oracle_home</i>	Specify an Oracle home for the cluster database. If you do not include this option, then it uses the Grid home by default.
-p "[TCP:] <i>port_list</i> [/IPC: <i>key</i> ] [/NMP: <i>pipe_name</i> ] [/TCPS: <i>s_port</i> ] [/SDP: <i>port</i> ]	Protocol specifications for the listener. <i>port_list</i> is a comma-delimited list of TCP ports or listener endpoints.
-k <i>network_number</i>	The optional network number from which VIPs are obtained. If not specified, the VIPs are obtained from the same default network from which the nodeapps VIP is obtained.
-s	Indicates you want to skip the checking of ports

**Example**

The following command adds a listener named `listener112` that is listening on port 1341 and runs from the `/ora/ora112` home directory on every node in the cluster:

```
$ srvctl add listener -l listener112 -p 1341 -o /ora/ora112
```

**srvctl add network**

Adds a DHCP or static network. If your server connects to more than one network, then you can use this command to configure an additional network interface for Oracle RAC, allowing you to create VIPs on multiple public networks. You can also use the `LISTENER_NETWORKS` database initialization parameter to control client redirects to the appropriate network

---

**Note:** Oracle only supports DHCP-assigned networks for the default network, not for subsequent networks.

---

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl add network` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add network [-k net_number] -S subnet/netmask[/if1[/if2|...]]
  [-w network_type] [-v]
```

**Table A-12** *srvctl add network Options*

Option	Description
-k <i>net_number</i>	Specify a network number. The default is 1.

**Table A-12 (Cont.) *srvctl add network Options***

Option	Description
<code>-S subnet/netmask</code> [/ <i>if1</i> [  <i>if2</i>  ...]]	Creates a subnet, the type of which you specify with the <code>-w</code> option. If you do not specify any interface names, then the network uses any interface on the given subnet.
<code>-w network_type</code>	Specify the network type: <code>static</code> , <code>dhcp</code> , or <code>mixed</code> .
<code>-v</code>	Verbose output.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl add network -k 3 -S 1.2.3.4/255.255.255.0
```

**srvctl add nodeapps**

Adds a node application configuration to the specified node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl add nodeapps` command with one the following syntax models:

```
srvctl add nodeapps -n node_name -A {name | ip}/netmask[/if1[|if2|...]]
[-e em_port] [-l ons_local_port] [-r ons_remote_port]
[-t host[:port][,host[:port],...]] [-v]
```

```
srvctl add nodeapps -S subnet/netmask[/if1[|if2|...]] [-e em_port]
[-l ons_local_port] [-r ons_remote_port]
[-t host[:port][,host[:port],...]] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-13 *srvctl add nodeapps Options***

Option	Description
<code>-n node_name</code>	The name of the node on which you want to create the node application. Node name is optional and unnecessary if you run the command on the local node.
<code>-A {name   ip}</code> /netmask[/if1  if2 ...]]	This specification creates a traditional VIP node application on the specified node. <b>Note:</b> This option must be used for upgrade configurations and new, non-DHCP configurations.
<code>-S subnet/netmask</code> [/if1 [  if2  ...]]	Creates a DHCP subnet. If you do not specify any interface names, then the VIPs use any interface on the given subnet.
<code>-e em_port</code>	Local port on which Oracle Enterprise Manager listens. The default port is 2016.
<code>-l ons_local_port</code>	The Oracle Notification Service daemon listener port on its node. If you do not specify this value, the Oracle Notification Service daemon listener port defaults to 6100. <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.

**Table A-13 (Cont.) *srvctl add nodeapps* Options**

Option	Description
-r <i>ons_remote_port</i>	The port number for remote Oracle Notification Service daemon connections.  If you do not specify a port number, the default value of 6200 is used for the Oracle Notification Service remote port.  <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.
-t <i>host[:port]</i> , [ <i>host[:port]</i> ], [...]	A list of <i>host:port</i> pairs of remote hosts that are part of the Oracle Notification Service network but are not part of the Oracle Clusterware cluster  <b>Note:</b> If <i>port</i> is not specified for a remote host, then <i>ons_remote_port</i> is used.
-v	Verbose output

---

**Note:** On Linux and UNIX systems, you must be logged in as `root` and on Windows, you must be logged in as a user with Administrator privileges to run this command.

---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
# srvctl add nodeapps -n crmnode1 -A 1.2.3.4/255.255.255.0
```

**srvctl add oc4j**

Adds an OC4J instance to all the nodes in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

```
srvctl add oc4j [-v]
```

This command has only one option, `-v`, which displays verbose output.

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
srvctl add oc4j
```

**srvctl add ons**

Adds an Oracle Notification Service daemon to an Oracle Restart configuration.

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Restart.

---

**Syntax and options**

```
srvctl add ons [-l ons_local_port] [-r ons_remote_port]  
[-t host[:port] [, host[:port]] [...]] [-v]
```

**Table A–14** *srvctl add ons Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>ons_local_port</i>	The Oracle Notification Service daemon listening port for local client connections <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.
-r <i>ons_remote_port</i>	The Oracle Notification Service daemon listening port for connections from remote hosts <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.
-t <i>host[:port][,host[:port]][...]</i>	A list of comma-delimited <i>host:port</i> pairs of remote hosts that are part of the Oracle Notification Service network but are not part of the Oracle Clusterware cluster <b>Note:</b> If <i>port</i> is not specified for a remote host, then <i>ons_remote_port</i> is used.
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl add ons -l 6200
```

**srvctl add scan**

Adds Oracle Clusterware resources for the given SCAN. This command creates the same number of SCAN VIP resources as the number of IP addresses that SCAN resolves to, or 3 when *network\_number* identifies a DHCP network and Oracle GNS configuration.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl add scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add scan -n scan_name [-k network_number]  
[-S subnet/netmask[/if1[|if2|...]]]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–15** *srvctl add scan Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>scan_name</i>	A fully qualified host name, which includes the domain name.
-k <i>network_number</i>	The optional network number from which SCAN VIPs are obtained. If not specified, the SCAN VIPs are obtained from the same default network from which the <code>nodeapps</code> VIP is obtained.
-S <i>subnet/netmask</i> [/if1 [ if2 ...]]	Creates the <i>network_number</i> . This option must be specified when <i>network_number</i> does not exist.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
# srvctl add scan -n scan.mycluster.example.com
```

## srvctl add scan\_listener

Adds Oracle Clusterware resources to the SCAN listeners. The number of SCAN listener resources created is the number of SCAN VIP resources.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl add scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add scan_listener [-l lsnr_name_prefix] [-s]
  [-p "[TCP:]port_list[/IPC:key]/[NMP:pipe_name]/[TCPS:s_port] [/SDP:port"]]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-16** *srvctl add scan\_listener Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>lsnr_name_prefix</i>	The SCAN listener name prefix.
-s	Use the -s option to skip checking of the ports.
-p "[TCP:] <i>port_list</i> [/IPC: <i>key</i> ]/[NMP: <i>pipe_name</i> ] [/TCPS: <i>s_port</i> ] [/SDP: <i>port</i> "]	Protocol specifications for the listener. <i>port_list</i> is a comma-delimited list of TCP ports or listener endpoints.  If this option is not specified, then the default TCP port of 1521 is used.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
# srvctl add scan_listener -l myscanlistener
```

## srvctl add service

Adds services to a database and assigns them to instances. If you have multiple instances of a cluster database on the same node, then always use only one instance on that node for all of the services that node manages.

---

**Note:** The `srvctl add service` command does not accept placement options for Oracle RAC One Node databases.

---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl add service` command to create a service, using the first of the following syntax models, or to update an existing service, using the second syntax model:

```
srvctl add service -d db_unique_name -s service_name {-r "preferred_list"
  [-a "available_list"]} [-P {BASIC | NONE | PRECONNECT}] | -g server_pool
  [-c {UNIFORM | SINGLETON}] [-k network_number]
  [-l [PRIMARY | PHYSICAL_STANDBY | LOGICAL_STANDBY | SNAPSHOT_STANDBY]
  [-y {AUTOMATIC | MANUAL}] [-q {TRUE | FALSE}] [-x {TRUE | FALSE}]
  [-j {SHORT | LONG}][-B {NONE | SERVICE_TIME | THROUGHPUT}]
  [-e {NONE | SESSION | SELECT}] [-m {NONE | BASIC}] [-z failover_retries]
  [-w failover_delay]
```

```
srvctl add service -d db_unique_name -s service_name
  -u {-r preferred_list | -a available_list} [-f]
```

Table A-17 lists and describes all the `srvctl add service` options and whether they can be used when adding a service to a noncluster or Oracle RAC database.

**Table A-17** *srvctl add service Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d db_unique_name</code>	Unique name for the database.
<code>-s service_name</code>	The <code>service_name.service_domain</code> should be unique within the cluster unless you want to spread connections across multiple databases that offer the same service. If you do not specify the service domain as part of the service name (such as <code>sales.foo.com</code> ), then the <code>DB_DOMAIN</code> database attribute is the default.
<code>-r preferred_list</code>	A list of preferred instances on which the service runs when the database is administrator managed.  The list of preferred instances must be mutually exclusive with the list of available instances.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle RAC and only for administrator-managed databases.
<code>-a available_list</code>	A list of available instances to which the service fails over when the database is administrator managed.  The list of available instances must be mutually exclusive with the list of preferred instances.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle RAC and only for administrator-managed databases.
<code>-P {BASIC   NONE   PRECONNECT}</code>	TAF policy specification (for administrator-managed databases only).  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ You can only use <code>PRECONNECT</code> when you specify the <code>-r</code> and <code>-a</code> options.</li> <li>■ For administrator-managed databases, you <i>cannot</i> set the client-side TAF policy to <code>PRECONNECT</code>.</li> </ul>
<code>-g server_pool</code>	The name of a server pool used when the database is policy managed.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle RAC and only for policy-managed databases.
<code>-c {UNIFORM   SINGLETON}</code>	The cardinality of the service, either <code>UNIFORM</code> (offered on all instances in the server pool) or <code>SINGLETON</code> (runs on only one instance at a time).  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ This option is available only with Oracle RAC and only for policy-managed databases.</li> <li>■ For policy-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases, all services must be <code>SINGLETON</code>.</li> </ul>
<code>-k network_number</code>	Use this option to determine on which network this service is offered. The service is configured to depend on VIPs from the specified network.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle RAC and Oracle RAC One Node database configurations.

**Table A-17 (Cont.) *srvctl add service Options***

Option	Description
-l {[PRIMARY]   [PHYSICAL_STANDBY]   [LOGICAL_STANDBY]   [SNAPSHOT_STANDBY]}	<p>The service role.</p> <p>Use this option to indicate that the service should only be automatically started upon database open when the Oracle Data Guard database role matches one of the specified service roles.</p> <p>Using SRVCTL to manually start a service is not affected by the service role.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The -l parameter is only used at database startup and by the Oracle Data Guard Broker. All manual service startup must specify the name of the service to be started by the user.</p> <p><b>See Also:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>Oracle Data Guard Broker</i> if you specify -l</li> <li>■ <i>Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration</i> for more information about database roles</li> </ul>
-y {AUTOMATIC   MANUAL}	<p>Service management policy.</p> <p>If <b>AUTOMATIC</b> (the default), then the service is automatically started upon restart of the database, either by a planned restart (with SRVCTL) or after a failure. Automatic restart is also subject to the service role, however (the -l option).</p> <p>If <b>MANUAL</b>, then the service is never automatically restarted upon planned restart of the database (with SRVCTL). A <b>MANUAL</b> setting does not prevent Oracle Clusterware from monitoring the service when it is running and restarting it if a failure occurs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Using CRSCCTL to stop and start the Oracle Clusterware restarts the service in the same way that a failure does.</p>
-q {TRUE   FALSE}	Indicates whether AQ HA notifications should be enabled (TRUE) for this service.
-x {TRUE   FALSE}	Indicates whether or not Distributed Transaction Processing should be enabled for this service. This service will either be a singleton service in a policy-managed database or a preferred service on a single node in an administrator-managed database.
	<b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle RAC.
-j {SHORT   LONG}	Assign a connection load balancing goal to the service: <b>SHORT</b> if using an integrated connection pool, <b>LONG</b> for long running connections that you want balanced by the number of sessions per node for the service
-B {NONE   SERVICE_TIME   THROUGHPUT}	Goal for the Load Balancing Advisory.
-e {NONE   SESSION   SELECT}	Failover type.
-m {NONE   BASIC}	Failover method.
	If the failover type (-e) is set to a value other than <b>NONE</b> , then you should choose <b>BASIC</b> for this option.
	<b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle RAC.
-z <i>failover_retries</i>	The number of failover retry attempts.
-w <i>failover_delay</i>	The time delay between failover attempts.



**Table A-17 (Cont.) *srvctl add service Options***

Option	Description
-u	Add a new preferred or available instance to an existing service configuration.
-f	Force the add operation even though a listener is not configured for the network.

**Examples**

Use this example syntax to add the `gl.example.com` service to the `my_rac` database with AQ HA notifications enabled, a failover method of `BASIC`, a Connection Load Balancing Goal of `LONG`, a failover type of `SELECT`, and 180 failover retries with a delay of 5:

```
srvctl add service -d my_rac -s gl.example.com -m BASIC -e SELECT \
-z 180 -w 5 -j LONG
```

Use this example syntax to add a named service to a database with preferred instances in list one and available instances in list two, using preconnect failover for the available instances:

```
srvctl add service -d crm -s sales -r crm01,crm02 -a crm03 -P PRECONNECT
```

**srvctl add srvpool**


---

**Caution:** By default, any named user may create a server pool. To restrict the operating system users that have this privilege, Oracle strongly recommends that you add specific users to the CRS Administrators list.

---

**See Also:** *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about adding users to the CRS Administrators list

Adds a server pool that is configured to host Oracle databases to a cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl add srvpool` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add srvpool -g server_pool [-i importance] [-l min_size] [-u max_size]
[-n "node_list"] [-f]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-18 *srvctl add srvpool Options***

Option	Description
-g <i>server_pool</i>	The name of the server pool.
-i <i>importance</i>	The importance of the server pool (default is 0).
-l <i>min_size</i>	The minimum size of the server pool (default is 0).
-u <i>max_size</i>	The maximum size of the server pool. The default value is -1, which indicates that the size is unlimited.

**Table A–18 (Cont.) *srvctl add srvpool Options***

Option	Description
-n "node_names"	A comma-separated list of candidate node names enclosed in double quotation marks (" "). The server pool will only include nodes on the candidate list, but not all nodes on the candidate list will necessarily be in the server pool.
-f	Add the server pool, even if requires stopping resources in other server pools.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl add srvpool -g SP1 -i 1 -l 3 -u 7 -n "mynode1,mynode2"
```

**srvctl add vip**

Adds a VIP to a node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl add vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl add vip -n node_name -A {name|ip}/netmask[/if1[if2|...]]
[-k network_number] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–19 *srvctl add vip Options***

Option	Description
-n node_name	The name of the node on which you are adding the VIP
-A {name ip}/netmask [/if1[if2 ...]]	This specification creates a traditional VIP node application on the specified node
-k network_number	The optional network number from which VIPs are obtained. If not specified, the VIPs are obtained from the same default network from which the nodeapps VIP is obtained.
-v	Verbose output

---



---

**Note:** You cannot have multiple VIPs on the same net number (subnet or interface pair) on the same node.

---



---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
# srvctl add vip -n node7 -A 192.168.16.17/255.255.255.0 -k 2
```

The preceding example creates a network number, 2, for the VIP just added. You can specify the network number after the `-k` option in other SRVCTL commands.

## config

The `srvctl config` command displays the configuration stored in the Oracle Clusterware resource attributes.

---

**Note:** If you disabled an object for which you are trying to obtain configuration information using the `srvctl disable object -n node_name` command, then bear in mind that using the `srvctl disable object -n node_name` command on a per-node basis in your cluster to disable an object throughout the cluster *is not the same* as globally disabling an object using the `srvctl disable object` command without the `-n` option. In the former case, the `srvctl config object` command may report that the object is still enabled.

---

**See Also:** ["disable"](#) on page A-38 for more information about the `srvctl disable` command

**Table A-20** *srvctl config Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl config asm</code> on page A-29	Displays the configuration for the Oracle ASM instances on the node
<code>srvctl config cvu</code> on page A-30	Displays the time interval between CVU checks
<code>srvctl config database</code> on page A-30	Displays the configuration information of the cluster database
<code>srvctl config filesystem</code> on page A-31	Displays the configuration information for an ACFS volume
<code>srvctl config gns</code> on page A-31	Displays the GNS configuration
<code>srvctl config listener</code> on page A-32	Displays a list of configured listeners that are registered with Oracle Clusterware on a given node
<code>srvctl config nodeapps</code> on page A-32	Displays the configuration information for the node applications
<code>srvctl config oc4j</code> on page A-33	Displays the configuration of the OC4J instance
<code>srvctl config ons</code> on page A-33	Displays configuration information for Oracle Notification Service
<code>srvctl config scan</code> on page A-33	Displays the configuration information for SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl config scan_listener</code> on page A-34	Displays the configuration information for SCAN listeners
<code>srvctl config service</code> on page A-34	Displays the configuration information for the services
<code>srvctl config srvpool</code> on page A-35	Displays configuration information for a specific server pool
<code>srvctl config vip</code> on page A-36	Displays the configuration information for the VIP

### srvctl config asm

Displays the configuration for all Oracle ASM instances.

---



---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---



---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl config asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config asm [-a]
```

**Table A–21** *srvctl config asm Options*

Option	Description
-a	Print detailed configuration information

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
srvctl config asm -a
```

## srvctl config cvu

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command displays the time interval, in minutes, between CVU checks.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl config cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config cvu
```

This command has no options.

### Examples

The `srvctl config cvu` command returns output similar to the following:

```
CVU is configured to run once every 360 minutes
```

## srvctl config database

Displays the configuration for an Oracle RAC database or lists all configured databases that are registered with Oracle Clusterware.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl config database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config database [-d db_unique_name] [-a]
```

**Table A–22** *srvctl config database Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database. If you do not specify this option, then the utility displays the configuration of all database resources.
-a	Print detailed configuration information

**Examples**

To list the configuration of all databases, use the following example:

```
srvctl config database -d myDB
```

The following is example output from the `srvctl config database` command:

```
$ srvctl config database -d myDB
Database unique name: myDB
Database name:
Oracle home: /scott_st2/oracle
Oracle user: scott
Spfile:
Domain:
Start options: open
Stop options: immediate
Database role: PRIMARY
Management policy: AUTOMATIC
Server pools: myDB
Database instances:
Disk Groups:
Services: scottsvcl
Type: RACOneNode
Online relocation timeout: 30
Instance name prefix: myDB
Candidate servers: node1 node2
Database is administrator managed
```

The preceding sample output shows the database type as `RACOneNode`, an Oracle RAC One Node database. Other potential types are `RAC` and `SingleInstance`. The **Online relocation timeout**, **Instance name prefix**, and **Candidate servers** fields only apply to Oracle RAC One Node databases and do not display for the other two database types. Similarly, the **Database instances** field is empty because the database type is `RACOneNode`.

**srvctl config filesystem**

Displays the configuration for an Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System (Oracle ACFS) device.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl config filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config filesystem -d volume_device_path
```

**Table A-23** *srvctl config filesystem Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d <i>volume_device_path</i></code>	The path name of a device that an Oracle ACFS volume uses.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to retrieve the configuration for an Oracle ACFS file system:

```
srvctl config filesystem -d /dev/asm/d1volume293
```

**srvctl config gns**

Displays the configuration for GNS.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl config gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config gns [-a] [-d] [-k] [-m] [-n node_name] [-p] [-s] [-V]
[-q name] [-l] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This option is available only for Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–24** *srvctl config gns Options*

Option	Description
-a	Print detailed configuration information.
-d	Display the subdomain served by GNS.
-k	Display network on which GNS is listening.
-m	Display the port on which the GNS daemon is listening for multicast requests.
-n <i>node_name</i>	Display the configuration information for GNS on the specified node.
-p	Display the port that the GNS daemon uses to communicate with the DNS server.
-s	Display the status of GNS.
-V	Display the version of GNS.
-q <i>name</i>	Query GNS for the records belonging to a name.
-l	List all records in GNS.
-v	Verbose output.

**srvctl config listener**

Displays a list of configured listeners that are registered with Oracle Clusterware or displays detailed configuration information for a specific listener.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl config listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config listener [-l listener_name] [-a]
```

**Table A–25** *srvctl config listener Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	Listener name.  If you do not specify this option, then the name of the listener defaults to LISTENER.
-a	Print detailed configuration information.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
srvctl config listener
```

**srvctl config nodeapps**

Displays the VIP configuration for each node in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl config nodeapps` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config nodeapps [-a] [-g] [-s]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–26** *srvctl config nodeapps Option*

Option	Description
-a	Displays the VIP address configuration
-g	Displays the GSD configuration
-s	Displays the Oracle Notification Service configuration

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl config nodeapps -a -g -s
```

**srvctl config oc4j**

Displays configuration information for the OC4J instance.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

```
srvctl config oc4j
```

**srvctl config ons**

Displays configuration information for the Oracle Notification Service daemon.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

```
srvctl config ons
```

**srvctl config scan**

Displays the configuration information for all SCAN VIPs, by default, or a specific SCAN VIP identified by *ordinal\_number*.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl config scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config scan [-i ordinal_number]
```

The only option available for this command is `-i ordinal_number`, which identifies any one of the three SCAN VIPs, and can take a range of values from 1 to 3.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl config scan -i 1
```

## srvctl config scan\_listener

Displays the configuration information for all SCAN listeners, by default, or a specific listener identified by *ordinal\_number*.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl config scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config scan_listener [-i ordinal_number]
```

The only option available for this command is `-i ordinal_number`, which identifies any one of the three SCAN VIPs, and can take a range of values from 1 to 3.

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl config scan_listener -i 1
```

## srvctl config service

Displays the configuration for a service.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl config service` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config service -d db_unique_name [-s service_name]
```

**Table A-27** *srvctl config service Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d db_unique_name</code>	Unique name for the database
<code>-s service_name</code>	Service name. If this option is not specified, then the configuration information for all services configured for the database are displayed.

### Examples

An example output of this command is for a policy-managed database is:

```
$ srvctl config service -d mjkpdb -s mjkpvc1
Service name: mjkpvc1
Service is enabled
Server pool: mjksrvpool1
Cardinality: SINGLETON
Disconnect: false
Service role: PRIMARY
Management policy: AUTOMATIC
DTP transaction: false
AQ HA notifications: false
Failover type: NONE
Failover method: NONE
TAF failover retries: 0
TAF failover delay: 0
Connection Load Balancing Goal: LONG
Runtime Load Balancing Goal: NONE
```



```
TAF policy specification: NONE
Service is enabled on nodes:
Service is disabled on nodes:
Edition: "my Edition"
```

An example output of this command is for an administrator-managed database is:

```
$ srvctl config service -d mjkd b -s mjksvc1
Service name: mjksvc1
Service is enabled
Server pool: mjkd b
Cardinality: 1
Disconnect: false
Service role: PRIMARY
Management policy: AUTOMATIC
DTP transaction: false
AQ HA notifications: false
Failover type: NONE
Failover method: NONE
TAF failover retries: 0
TAF failover delay: 0
Connection Load Balancing Goal: LONG
Runtime Load Balancing Goal: NONE
TAF policy specification: NONE
Preferred instances: mjkd b_1
Available instances:
Edition: "my Edition"
```

Service configuration for administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases displays the one instance as preferred.

---



---

**Note:** The `srvctl config service` command shows exactly the string value you specified for the edition using the `srvctl add | modify service` command. If you specified the edition in upper case, then `srvctl config service` displays upper case. If it is surrounded by double quotation marks (" "), then the command displays the double quotation marks. Otherwise, the command displays an empty string.

---



---

## srvctl config srvpool

Displays configuration information including name, minimum size, maximum size, importance, and a list of server names, if applicable, for a specific server pool in a cluster.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl config srvpool` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl config srvpool [-g server_pool]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl config srvpool -g dbpool
```

**srvctl config vip**

Displays all VIPs on all networks in the cluster except for user VIPs.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl config vip` command with one of the following syntax models:

```
srvctl config vip -n node_name
```

```
srvctl config vip -i vip_name
```

---

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

**Table A-28** *srvctl config vip Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name
-i <i>vip_name</i>	The VIP name

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl config vip -n crmnode1
```

## convert

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), the `srvctl convert` command converts a database either to or from an Oracle RAC One Node database.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl convert database` command with one of the following syntax models:

```
srvctl convert database -d db_unique_name -c RACONENODE [-i instance_name] [-w timeout]
```

```
srvctl convert database -d db_unique_name -c RAC [-n node_name]
```

**Table A-29** *srvctl convert database Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database.  <b>Note:</b> If you specify a noncluster database, then command returns an error instructing you to use <code>rconfig</code> to convert the noncluster database to Oracle RAC or Oracle RAC One Node.
-c RACONENODE   RAC	The type of database to which you are converting, either Oracle RAC One Node or Oracle RAC.  <b>Note:</b> If there is an ongoing or failed online database relocation, then the command returns an error instructing you to first complete or abort the online database relocation and then rerun the command.
-i <i>instance_name</i>	Instance name prefix for Oracle RAC One Node databases. The default value for this option is the first 12 characters of the global unique name of the database.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ You can use this option only when converting from an Oracle RAC database to an Oracle RAC One Node database.</li> <li>■ In order for the converted instance to come online, you must restart the database using the <code>srvctl stop/start database</code> commands.</li> </ul>
-w <i>timeout</i>	Online database relocation timeout, in minutes, for Oracle RAC One Node databases. The default is 30.
-n <i>node_name</i>	Name of the node for administrator-managed Oracle RAC database. The default is the first candidate.  <b>Note:</b> If you do not specify a node name or you specify a node name where the database is not running, then the command returns an error instructing you specify the correct node.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl convert database -d myDB -c RACONENODE -i instance_name
```

## disable

Disables a specified object (cluster database, database instance, Oracle ASM instance, or service). Use the `srvctl disable` command when you must shut down an object for maintenance. The disabled object does not automatically restart.

When you issue the `disable` command, the object is disabled and unavailable to run under Oracle Clusterware for automatic startup, failover, or restart. Additionally, you cannot run the `srvctl start` command on a disabled object until you first re-enable the object. If you specify `-i instance_name` or `-n node_name`, then SRVCTL only disables the object on the specified instance or node.

If you do not specify `-i instance_name` or `-n node_name`, then the disable action applies to the object that you specified, globally, on all nodes in the cluster. Any object you disable globally is also disabled on any nodes you add to the cluster in the future.

Disabling an object globally *is not the same* as disabling an object locally on each node in the cluster. For example, if you disable a database on several nodes, individually, in a cluster, then, when you run the `srvctl start database` command, the database starts only on nodes where the database is enabled. If, however, you disable the database globally, then the `srvctl start database` is rejected because the database is disabled, clusterwide.

**Table A-30** *srvctl disable Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl disable asm</code> on page A-39	Disables an Oracle ASM proxy resource
<code>srvctl disable cvu</code> on page A-39	Disables the Cluster Verification Utility
<code>srvctl disable database</code> on page A-40	Disables the cluster database
<code>srvctl disable diskgroup</code> on page A-40	Disables a disk group on a number of specified nodes
<code>srvctl disable filesystem</code> on page A-41	Disables an Oracle ACFS volume
<code>srvctl disable gns</code> on page A-41	Disables GNS
<code>srvctl disable instance</code> on page A-41	Disables an instance
<code>srvctl disable listener</code> on page A-42	Disables a listener
<code>srvctl disable nodeapps</code> on page A-42	Disables a node application and GSD
<code>srvctl disable oc4j</code> on page A-43	Disables OC4J instances
<code>srvctl disable ons</code> on page A-43	Disables the Oracle Notification Service daemon
<code>srvctl disable scan</code> on page A-43	Disables SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl disable scan_listener</code> on page A-44	Disables SCAN listeners
<code>srvctl disable service</code> on page A-44	Disables a service
<code>srvctl disable vip</code> on page A-45	Disables a VIP

## srvctl disable asm

Disables the Oracle ASM proxy resource. Oracle ASM will restart if it contains Oracle Clusterware data or if the node restarts and it was running before the node failed. The `srvctl disable asm` command also prevents the `srvctl start asm` command from starting Oracle ASM instances.

Disabling the Oracle ASM proxy resource prevents the databases and disk groups from starting because they depend on the Oracle ASM proxy resource.

---



---

### Note:

- To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.
- Oracle ASM is part of the Oracle Clusterware stack and when OCR and voting disks are stored on Oracle ASM, then Oracle ASM starts when OHASD starts the Oracle Clusterware stack. The `srvctl disable asm` command does not prevent the Oracle ASM instance managed by OHASD from starting. Oracle ASM, therefore, starts as needed by the Oracle Clusterware stack.

The `srvctl disable asm` command prevents the Oracle ASM Oracle Clusterware proxy resource, and any resources that depend on it, from starting. So, the command prevents Oracle Clusterware-managed objects, such as databases, disk groups, and file systems that depend on Oracle ASM, from starting. For example, the `srvctl start database | diskgroup | filesystem` command fails to start any of those objects on nodes where the Oracle ASM Oracle Clusterware proxy resource is disabled. The command also prevents the `srvctl start asm` command from starting Oracle ASM on remote nodes.

---



---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl disable asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable asm [-n node_name]
```

**Table A-31** *srvctl disable asm Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name
	<b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

---

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable asm -n crmnode1
```

## srvctl disable cvu

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command disables the Cluster Verification Utility (CVU) for Oracle Clusterware management, if enabled.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable cvu [-n node_name]
```

You can specify a particular node on which to disable CVU.

**Table A–32** *srvctl disable cvu Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n node_name</code>	Node name

**Examples**

An example of this command to disable CVU on a single node of a cluster is:

```
$ srvctl disable cvu -n crmnode1
```

**srvctl disable database**

Disables a database. If the database is a cluster database, then its instances are also disabled.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable database -d db_unique_name [-n node_name]
```

**Table A–33** *srvctl disable database Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d database_name</code>	Database name
<code>-n node_name</code>	Disables the database from running on the named node <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable database -d mydb1
```

**srvctl disable diskgroup**

Disables a specific disk group on a number of specified nodes.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable diskgroup` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable diskgroup -g diskgroup_name [-n node_list]
```

**Table A–34** *srvctl disable diskgroup Options*

Option	Description
<code>-g diskgroup_name</code>	The Oracle ASM disk group name
<code>-n node_list</code>	Comma-delimited list of node names on which to disable the disk group <b>Note:</b> This option is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable diskgroup -g diskgroup1 -n mynode1, mynode2
```

**srvctl disable filesystem**

Disables an Oracle ACFS volume.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable filesystem -d volume_device_name
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–35** *srvctl disable filesystem Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>volume_device_name</i>	Name of the Oracle ACFS volume

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable filesystem -d /dev/asm/d1volume293
```

**srvctl disable gns**

Disables GNS for a specific node, or all available nodes in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable gns [-n node_name]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–36** *srvctl disable gns Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Name of a node in the cluster
	If you do not specify this option, then SRVCTL disables GNS for the entire cluster.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable gns -n crm7
```

**srvctl disable instance**

Disables an instance. If the instance that you disable with this command is the last enabled instance, then this operation also disables the database.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable instance -d db_unique_name -i instance_name_list
```

**Note:**

- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
- If you run this command on an Oracle RAC One Node database, then the command returns an error instructing you to use the database noun, instead.

**Table A–37** *srvctl disable instance Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-i <i>instance_name_list</i>	Comma-delimited list of instance names

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable instance -d crm -i "crm1,crm3"
```

**srvctl disable listener**

Disables a listener resource.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable listener [-l listener_name] [-n node_name]
```

**Table A–38** *srvctl disable listener Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	Name of a listener resource. If you do not specify this option, the name of the listener defaults to LISTENER.
-n <i>node_name</i>	Name of a cluster node on which the listener you want to disable is running. This option is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable listener -l listener_crm -n node5
```

**srvctl disable nodeapps**

Disables node applications on all nodes in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable nodeapps` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable nodeapps [-g] [-v]
```



---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–39** *srvctl disable nodeapps Options*

Option	Description
-g	Disables GSD
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable nodeapps -g -v
```

### srvctl disable oc4j

Disables the OC4J instance on all nodes or on a specific node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable oc4j [-n node_name] [-v]
```

**Table A–40** *srvctl disable oc4j Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a node in the cluster
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable oc4j -n crm3
```

### srvctl disable ons

Disables the Oracle Notification Service daemon for Oracle Restart installations.

```
srvctl disable ons [-v]
```

The only option for this command is `-v`, which indicates that verbose output should be displayed.

### srvctl disable scan

Disables all SCAN VIPs, by default, or a specific SCAN VIP identified by *ordinal\_number*.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable scan [-i ordinal_number]
```

The only option available for this command is `-i ordinal_number`, which represents which identifies any one of the three SCAN VIPs, and can take a range of values from 1 to 3.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable scan -i 1
```

**srvctl disable scan\_listener**

Disables all SCAN listeners, by default, or a specific listener identified by *ordinal\_number*.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable scan_listener [-i ordinal_number]
```

The only option available for this command is `-i ordinal_number`, which identifies any one of the three SCAN listeners, and can take a range of values from 1 to 3.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable scan_listener -i 1
```

**srvctl disable service**

Disables a service. Disabling an entire service affects all of the instances, disabling each one. When the entire service is already disabled, a `srvctl disable service` operation on the entire service affects all of the instances and disables them; it just returns an error. This means that you cannot always use the entire set of service operations to manipulate the service indicators for each instance.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable service` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable service -d db_unique_name
-s "service_name_list" [-i instance_name | -n node_name]
```

If you do not specify either the `-i instance_name` or `-n node_name` options, then the command disables the service on all nodes.

**Table A-41** *srvctl disable service Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d db_unique_name</code>	Unique name for the database
<code>-s "service_name_list"</code>	Comma-delimited list of service names, or a single service name

**Table A-41 (Cont.) *srvctl disable service Options***

Option	Description
-i <i>instance_name</i>	The name of the instance that you want to disable the service for.  <b>Note:</b> Use this option with administrator-managed databases  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node on which to disable the service  <b>Note:</b> Use this option with policy-managed databases  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.

**Examples**

The following example globally disables two services for the CRM database:

```
$ srvctl disable service -d crm -s "crm,marketing"
```

The following example disables a service for the CRM database that is running on the CRM1 instance, resulting in the service still being available for the database, but on one less instance:

```
$ srvctl disable service -d crm -s crm -i crm1
```

**srvctl disable vip**

Disables a specific VIP.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl disable vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl disable vip -i vip_name [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-42 *srvctl disable vip Options***

Option	Description
-i <i>vip_name</i>	The VIP name
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl disable vip -i vip1 -v
```

## downgrade

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), you can use the `downgrade` command to downgrade the database configuration after you manually downgrade the database.

### srvctl downgrade database

The `srvctl downgrade database` command downgrades the configuration of a database and its services from its current version to the specified lower version.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl downgrade database` command as follows:

```
srvctl downgrade database -d db_unique_name -o Oracle_home -t to_version
```

**Table A-43** *srvctl downgrade database Options*

Options	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-o <i>Oracle_home</i>	The path to the ORACLE_HOME
-t <i>to_version</i>	The version to which to downgrade

## enable

The `srvctl enable` command enables the specified object so that it can run under Oracle Clusterware for automatic startup, failover, or restart. The Oracle Clusterware application supporting the object may be up or down to use this function. The default value is `enable`. If the object is already enabled, then the command is ignored. Enabled objects can be started, and disabled objects cannot be started.

**Table A-44** *srvctl enable Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl enable asm</code> on page A-47	Enables an Oracle ASM instance
<code>srvctl enable cvu</code> on page A-48	Enables the Cluster Verification Utility
<code>srvctl enable database</code> on page A-48	Enables the database resource
<code>srvctl enable diskgroup</code> on page A-49	Enables a specified disk group on a number of specified nodes
<code>srvctl enable filesystem</code> on page A-49	Enables an Oracle ACFS volume
<code>srvctl enable gns</code> on page A-49	Enables GNS
<code>srvctl enable instance</code> on page A-50	Enables the instance
<code>srvctl enable listener</code> on page A-50	Enables a listener
<code>srvctl enable nodeapps</code> on page A-51	Enables node applications and GSD
<code>srvctl enable oc4j</code> on page A-51	Enables OC4J instances
<code>srvctl enable ons</code> on page A-52	Enables the Oracle Notification Service daemon
<code>srvctl enable scan</code> on page A-52	Enables SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl enable scan_listener</code> on page A-52	Enables SCAN listeners
<code>srvctl enable service</code> on page A-53	Enables a service
<code>srvctl enable vip</code> on page A-53	Enables a VIP

### srvctl enable asm

Enables an Oracle ASM instance.

---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable asm [-n node_name]
```

**Table A–45** *srvctl enable asm Option*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable asm -n crmnode1
```

**srvctl enable cvu**

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command enables the Cluster Verification Utility (CVU) for Oracle Clusterware management if disabled.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl enable cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable cvu [-n node_name]
```

You can specify a particular node on which to enable CVU.

**Table A–46** *srvctl enable cvu Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

**Examples**

An example of this command to enable CVU on a single node of a cluster is:

```
$ srvctl enable cvu -n crmnode1
```

**srvctl enable database**

Enables a cluster database and its instances.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl enable database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable database -d db_unique_name [-n node_name]
```

**Table A–47** *srvctl enable database Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>database_name</i>	Database name
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node for which the database resource should be enabled <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable database -d mydb1
```

## srvctl enable diskgroup

Enables a specific disk group on a number of specified nodes.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable diskgroup` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable diskgroup -g diskgroup_name [-n node_list]
```

**Table A-48** *srvctl enable diskgroup Options*

Option	Description
-g <i>diskgroup_name</i>	The Oracle ASM disk group name
-n <i>node_list</i>	Comma-delimited list of node names on which to enable the disk group  This option is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable diskgroup -g diskgroup1 -n mynode1,mynode2
```

## srvctl enable filesystem

Enables an Oracle ACFS volume.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable filesystem -d volume_device_name
```

---

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

**Table A-49** *srvctl enable filesystem Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>volume_device_name</i>	Device name of the Oracle ACFS volume

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable filesystem -d /dev/asm/d1volume293
```

## srvctl enable gns

Enables GNS on all nodes or a specific node.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable gns [-n node_name]
```

---

---

**Note:** This command is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

**Table A–50** *srvctl enable gns Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Name of the node on which to enable GNS. If this option is not specified, then GNS is enabled on all nodes in the cluster.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable gns
```

**srvctl enable instance**

Enables an instance for an Oracle RAC database. If you use this command to enable all instances, then the database is also enabled.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl enable instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable instance -d db_unique_name -i instance_name_list
```

**Note:**

- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
- If you run this command on an Oracle RAC One Node database, then the command returns an error instructing you to use the database noun, instead.

**Table A–51** *srvctl enable instance Option*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-i <i>instance_name_list</i>	Comma-delimited list of instance names.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable instance -d crm -i "crm1,crm2"
```

**srvctl enable listener**

Enables a listener resource.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl enable listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable listener [-l listener_name] [-n node_name]
```

**Table A–52** *srvctl enable listener Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	Name of a listener resource. If you do not specify this option, the name of the listener defaults to LISTENER



**Table A–52 (Cont.) *srvctl enable listener Options***

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Name of a cluster node  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable listener -l listener_crm -n node5
```

**srvctl enable nodeapps**

Enables the node applications on all nodes in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl enable nodeapps` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable nodeapps [-g] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–53 *srvctl enable nodeapps Options***

Option	Description
-g	Enables GSD
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable nodeapps -g -v
```

**srvctl enable oc4j**

Enables the OC4J instance on all nodes or on a specific node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl enable oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable oc4j [-n node_name] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–54 *srvctl enable oc4j Options***

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a node in the cluster
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable oc4j -n crm3
```

## srvctl enable ons

Enables the Oracle Notification Service daemon.

---

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Restart.

---

---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable ons` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable ons [-v]
```

The only option for this command is `-v`, which indicates that verbose output should be displayed.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable ons
```

## srvctl enable scan

Enables all SCAN VIPs, by default, or a specific SCAN VIP identified by its *ordinal\_number*.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable scan [-i ordinal_number]
```

The only option available for this command is `-i ordinal_number`, which identifies any one of the three SCAN VIPs, and takes a range of values from 1 to 3.

---

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable scan -i 1
```

## srvctl enable scan\_listener

Enables all SCAN listeners, by default, or a specific listener identified by its *ordinal\_number*.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable scan_listener [-i ordinal_number]
```

The only option available for this command is `-i ordinal_number`, which identifies any one of the three SCAN listeners, and takes a range of values from 1 to 3.

---

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable scan_listener -i 1
```

## srvctl enable service

Enables a service for Oracle Clusterware. Enabling an entire service also affects the enabling of the service over all of the instances by enabling the service at each one. When the entire service is already enabled, an `srvctl enable service` operation does not affect all of the instances and enable them. Instead, this operation returns an error. Therefore, you cannot always use the entire set of service operations to manipulate the service indicators for each instance.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable service` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable service -d db_unique_name -s "service_name_list"
                    [-i instance_name | -n node_name]
```

**Table A-55** *srvctl enable service Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s <i>service_name_list</i>	Comma-delimited list of service names
-i <i>instance_name</i>	Name of the database instance where you want the service to run Use this option for administrator-managed databases <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
-n <i>node_name</i>	Name of the node where you want the service to run Use this option for policy-managed databases <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.

### Examples

The following example globally enables a service:

```
$ srvctl enable service -d crm -s crm
```

The following example enables a service to use a preferred instance:

```
$srvctl enable service -d crm -s crm -i crm1
```

## srvctl enable vip

Enables a specific VIP.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl enable vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl enable vip -i vip_name [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-56** *srvctl enable vip Options*

<b>Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
-i <i>vip_name</i>	The VIP name
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl enable vip -i crml-vip -v
```

## getenv

Gets and displays values for the environment variables from the configuration file. Use SRVCTL with the `setenv`, `getenv`, and `unsetenv` verbs to administer the environment configurations for databases, instances, services, and node applications.

**Table A-57** *srvctl getenv Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl getenv asm</code> on page A-55	Gets the Oracle ASM environment values
<code>srvctl getenv database</code> on page A-55	Gets the database environment values
<code>srvctl getenv listener</code> on page A-56	Gets the listener environment values
<code>srvctl getenv nodeapps</code> on page A-56	Gets the node application environment values
<code>srvctl getenv vip</code> on page A-57	Gets the service environment values

### srvctl getenv asm

Displays the values for environment variables associated with Oracle ASM.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl getenv asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl getenv asm [-t "name_list"]
```

**Table A-58** *srvctl getenv asm Options*

Options	Description
<code>-t "name_list"</code>	Comma-delimited list of the names of environment variables. If this option is not specified, then the values of all environment variables associated with Oracle ASM are displayed.

#### Example

The following example displays the current values for all the environment variables used by Oracle ASM:

```
$ srvctl getenv asm
```

### srvctl getenv database

Displays the values for environment variables associated with a database.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl getenv database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl getenv database -d db_unique_name [-t "name_list"]
```

**Table A-59** *srvctl getenv database Options*

Options	Description
<code>-d db_unique_name</code>	Unique name for the database

**Table A–59 (Cont.) *srvctl getenv database Options***

Options	Description
-t "name_list"	Comma-delimited list of the names of environment variables If this option is not specified, then the values of all environment variables associated with the database are displayed.

**Example**

The following example gets the environment configuration for the CRM database:

```
$ srvctl getenv database -d crm
```

**srvctl getenv listener**

Gets the environment variables for the specified listener.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl getenv listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl getenv listener [-l listener_name] [-t "name_list"]
```

**Table A–60 *srvctl getenv listener Options***

Options	Description
-l listener_name	Listener name If this option is not specified, the name of the listener defaults to LISTENER
-t "name_list"	Comma-delimited list of the names of environment variables If this option is not specified, then the values of all environment variables associated with the listener are displayed.

**Example**

The following example lists all environment variables for the default listener:

```
$ srvctl getenv listener
```

**srvctl getenv nodeapps**

Gets the environment variables for the node application configurations.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl getenv nodeapps` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl getenv nodeapps [-a] [-g] [-s] [-t "name_list"] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–61 *srvctl getenv nodeapps Options***

Options	Description
-a	Displays the VIP address configuration
-g	Displays the GSD configuration
-s	Displays the Oracle Notification Service configuration

**Table A–61 (Cont.) *srvctl getenv nodeapps Options***

Options	Description
-t <i>"name_list"</i>	Comma-delimited list of the names of environment variables If this option is not specified, then the values of all environment variables associated with the nodeapps are displayed.
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

The following example lists all environment variables for the node applications:

```
$ srvctl getenv nodeapps -a
```

**srvctl getenv vip**

Gets the environment variables for the specified VIP.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl getenv vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl getenv vip -i vip_name [-t "name_list"] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–62 *srvctl getenv vip Options***

Options	Description
-i <i>vip_name</i>	The name of the VIP
-t <i>"name_list"</i>	Comma-delimited list of the names of environment variables If this option is not specified, then the values of all environment variables associated with the VIP are displayed.
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

The following example lists all environment variables for the specified VIP:

```
$ srvctl getenv vip -i node1-vip
```

## modify

Enables you to modify the instance configuration without removing and adding Oracle Clusterware resources. Using `modify` preserves the environment in the OCR configuration that would otherwise need to be re-entered. The configuration description is modified in the OCR configuration, and a new Oracle Clusterware profile is generated and registered. The change takes effect when the application is next restarted.

**Table A-63** *srvctl modify Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl modify asm</code> on page A-58	Modifies the configuration for Oracle ASM
<code>srvctl modify cvu</code> on page A-59	Modifies the check interval of the Cluster Verification Utility
<code>srvctl modify database</code> on page A-59	Modifies the configuration for a database
<code>srvctl modify filesystem</code> on page A-62	Modifies the user authorized to mount and unmount the Oracle ACFS volume
<code>srvctl modify gns</code> on page A-62	Modifies the GNS configuration
<code>srvctl modify instance</code> on page A-62	Modifies the configuration for an instance
<code>srvctl modify listener</code> on page A-63	Modifies the listener configuration on a node
<code>srvctl modify network</code> on page A-64	Modifies the configuration for a node application
<code>srvctl modify nodeapps</code> on page A-65	Modifies the configuration for a node application
<code>srvctl modify oc4j</code> on page A-66	Modifies the RMI port for an OC4J instance
<code>srvctl modify ons</code> on page A-66	Modifies the network configuration for the Oracle Notification Service daemon
<code>srvctl modify scan</code> on page A-66	Modifies the SCAN VIP configuration to match that of a specific SCAN VIP
<code>srvctl modify scan_listener</code> on page A-67	Updates the SCAN listener configuration to match that of the current SCAN VIP configuration
<code>srvctl modify service</code> on page A-67	Modifies the configuration for a service
<code>srvctl modify srvpool</code> on page A-71	Modifies a specific server pool

### srvctl modify asm

Modify the listener used by Oracle ASM, the disk group discovery string used by Oracle ASM, or the SPFILE used by Oracle ASM for a noncluster database or a cluster database.



---



---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---



---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify asm [-n node_name] [-l listener_name]
                 [-d asm_diskstring] [-p spfile_path_name]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-64** *srvctl modify asm Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name
-l <i>listener_name</i>	The listener name with which Oracle ASM registers
-d <i>asm_diskstring</i>	The new Oracle ASM disk group discovery string
-p <i>spfile_path_name</i>	The path name of the new spfile to be used by Oracle ASM

### Example

An example of this command to modify the configuration of Oracle ASM is:

```
$ srvctl modify asm -l lsnr1
```

## srvctl modify cvu

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command modifies the check interval for CVU in an Oracle Clusterware configuration.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify cvu [-t check_interval_in_minutes]
```

**Table A-65** *srvctl modify cvu Options*

Option	Description
-t <i>check_interval_in_minut</i> <i>es</i>	By default, CVU runs once every 360 minutes (six hours) and verifies the health of cluster. The shortest interval you can specify for CVU check is 10 minutes.

### Examples

An example of this command to modify CVU to a check interval of 4 hours is:

```
$ srvctl modify cvu -t 240
```

## srvctl modify database

Modifies the configuration for a database.

## Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify database -d db_unique_name [-n db_name]
    [-o oracle_home] [-u user_name] [-m db_domain] [-p spfile]
    [-r {PRIMARY | PHYSICAL_STANDBY | LOGICAL_STANDBY | SNAPSHOT_STANDBY}]
    [-s start_options] [-t stop_options] [-y {AUTOMATIC | MANUAL | NORESTART}]
    [-g "server_pool_list"] [{-a "diskgroup_list" | -z}]
    [-e server_list] [-w timeout] [-j "acfs_path_list"]
```

**Table A-66** *srvctl modify database Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-n <i>db_name</i>	Name of the database (as specified by the DB_NAME initialization parameter), if it is different from the database unique name specified with the -d option
-o <i>oracle_home</i>	Path for the Oracle home for the database
-u <i>user_name</i>	The name of the user that owns the Oracle home directory <b>Note:</b> If you specify the -u option, you must run this command in privileged mode.
-m <i>db_domain</i>	Domain for the database <b>Note:</b> If the database has the initialization parameter DB_DOMAIN set, then you must specify this option.
-p <i>spfile</i>	Path name of the server parameter file for the database
-r <i>role</i> [PRIMARY   PHYSICAL_STANDBY   LOGICAL_STANDBY   SNAPSHOT_STANDBY]	Role of the database in an Oracle Data Guard configuration (PRIMARY, PHYSICAL_STANDBY, LOGICAL_STANDBY, or SNAPSHOT_STANDBY)
-s <i>start_options</i>	Startup options for the database, such as OPEN, MOUNT, or NOMOUNT <b>Note:</b> For multi-word startup options, such as read only and read write, separate the words with a space and enclose in double quotation marks (" "). For example, "read only". <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about startup options
-t <i>stop_options</i>	Stop options for the database, such as NORMAL, TRANSACTIONAL, IMMEDIATE, or ABORT <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about shutdown options
-y [AUTOMATIC   MANUAL   NORESTART]	Management policy for the database resource. Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.3), you can use the NORESTART value.

**Table A-66 (Cont.) *srvctl modify database Options***

Option	Description
-g "server_pool_list"	A comma-delimited list of the names of server pools to use for a policy-managed database  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If the database you are modifying is administrator managed, then this option changes it to be policy managed, in addition to changing all the database's services to run as uniform services in the specified server pool. You can specify only one server pool for converting an administrator-managed database to policy managed.</li> <li>■ This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.</li> </ul>
-a "diskgroup_list"	Comma-delimited list of Oracle ASM disk groups
-z	To remove the database's dependency on Oracle ASM disk groups
-e server_list	List candidate servers for Oracle RAC One Node databases.  <b>Notes:</b> You can use this option only with administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases. If your Oracle RAC One Node database is policy managed, you <i>cannot</i> use this option.
-w timeout	Online database relocation timeout, in minutes, for Oracle RAC One Node databases. The default is 30.
-j "acfs_path_list"	A single Oracle ACFS path or a comma-delimited list of Oracle ACFS paths enclosed in double quotation marks ( " ") where the database's dependency is set.  Use this option to create dependencies on Oracle ACFS file systems other than ORACLE_HOME, such as for when the database uses ORACLE_BASE on a file system that is different from the ORACLE_HOME file system.

**Usage Notes**

- The `srvctl modify database` command can convert administrator-managed databases to policy-managed databases. For a running administrator-managed database, if the server list is supplied, then the node where the database is running must be on that list. The instance name prefix cannot be modified after running the `srvctl add database` command.
- You cannot change the management policy from `AUTOMATIC` (using the `-y` option) for Oracle RAC One Node databases. Any attempt to do so results in an error message. The same is true for the `-x` option, which is used to change the node on which a noncluster database runs.
- For policy-managed Oracle RAC One Node databases, you can use the `-g` option to move an Oracle RAC One Node database between server pools but you can only specify one server pool. Specifying a list of server pools returns an error.

**Examples**

The following example changes the role of a database to a logical standby:

```
$ srvctl modify database -d crm -r logical_standby
```

The following example directs the `racTest` database to use the `SYSFILES`, `LOGS`, and `OLTP` Oracle ASM disk groups.

```
$ srvctl modify database -d racTest -a "SYSFILES,LOGS,OLTP"
```

## srvctl modify filesystem

Modifies the name of the user that is authorized to mount and unmount the Oracle ACFS volume.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify filesystem -d volume_device_name -u user_name
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-67** *srvctl modify filesystem Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>volume_device_name</i>	Device name of the Oracle ACFS volume
-u <i>user_name</i>	Name of the user that is authorized to mount and unmount the Oracle ACFS volume

### Examples

The following example changes the authorized user to `sysad` for the `RACVOL1` volume:

```
$ srvctl modify filesystem -d /dev/asm/racvol1 -u sysad
```

## srvctl modify gns

Modifies the IP address or domain used by GNS

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify gns [-i ip_address] [-d domain]
```

**Table A-68** *srvctl modify gns Options*

Option	Description
-i <i>ip_address</i>	The IP address for GNS
-d <i>domain</i>	The network domain for GNS

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl modify gns -i 192.000.000.003
```

## srvctl modify instance

For an administrator-managed database, this command modifies the configuration for a database instance from its current node to another node. For a policy-managed database, this command defines an instance name to use when the database runs on the specified node.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify instance -d db_unique_name -i instance_name
                        {-n node_name | -z}
```

**Notes:**

- You *cannot* use this command to rename or relocate a running instance.
- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.

**Table A–69** *srvctl modify instance Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-i <i>instance_name</i>	Database instance name
-n <i>node_name</i>	Name of the node on which to run the instance
-z	To remove existing node instance mapping for a policy-managed database

**Examples**

The following example changes the configuration of an administrator-managed database, `amdb`, so that the database instance, `amdb1`, runs on the specified node, `mynode`:

```
$ srvctl modify instance -d amdb -i amdb1 -n mynode
```

The following example causes the policy-managed database `pmdb`, when and if it runs on `mynode`, to use the instance name `pmdb1`:

```
$ srvctl modify instance -d pmdb -i pmdb1 -n mynode
```

The following example removes the directive established by the previous example:

```
$ srvctl modify instance -d pmdb -i pmdb1 -z
```

**srvctl modify listener**

Modifies the listener name, `ORACLE_HOME` path or the listener endpoints, either for the default listener, or a specific listener, or for all the listeners represented in a given list of listener names, that are registered with Oracle Restart or with Oracle Clusterware on the specified node.

If you want to change the name of a listener, then use the `srvctl remove listener` and `srvctl add listener` commands.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl modify listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify listener [-l listener_name] [-o oracle_home] [-u user_name]
  [-p "[TCP:]port_list[/IPC:key]/NMP:pipe_name[/TCPS:s_port]/SDP:port"]
  [-k network_number]
```

**Table A–70** *srvctl modify listener Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	The name of the listener.  If you do not specify this option, then the utility uses the name <code>LISTENER</code> .

**Table A-70 (Cont.) *srvctl modify listener Options***

Option	Description
-o <i>oracle_home</i>	When this option is specified, SRVCTL moves the listener to run from the specified Oracle home.  <b>Note:</b> When using this option, the command should be run as privileged user to enable SRVCTL to update resource ownership corresponding to the new ORACLE_HOME owner
-u <i>user_name</i>	The name of the operating system user who will own the specified Oracle home  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-p "[TCP:] <i>port_list</i> [/IPC: <i>key</i> ] [/NMP: <i>pipe_name</i> ] [/TCPS: <i>s_port</i> ] [/SDP: <i>port</i> ]"	Protocol specifications for the listener. <i>port_list</i> is comma-delimited list of port numbers.
-k <i>network_number</i>	This option changes the public subnet on which the listener listens.  <b>Note:</b> You should have at least one listener on the default network at all times. Do not use this option to change the network of the only listener that listens on the default network.

**Example**

The following example changes the TCP ports for the default listener on the node `mynode1`:

```
$ srvctl modify listener -l listener1 -p "TCP:1521,1522"
```

**srvctl modify network**

Modifies the subnet for a specified network.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl modify network` command with one of the following syntax models:

```
srvctl modify network [-k network_number [-S subnet/netmask[/if1[|if2|...]]]
                    [-w network_type] [-v]
```

**Table A-71 *srvctl modify network Options***

Option	Description
-k <i>network_number</i>	Specify a network number. The default is 1.
-S <i>subnet/netmask</i> [/if1[ if2 ...]]	Specifies a subnet number for the public network. The netmask and interfaces specified, if any, change those of the network you are modifying. If you do not specify any interface names, then the VIPs use any interface on the given subnet.
-w <i>network_type</i>	Specify the network type: <code>static</code> , <code>dhcp</code> , or <code>mixed</code> .
-v	Verbose output.

**Examples**

The following example changes the subnet number, netmask, and interface list:

```
$ srvctl modify network -S 192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0/eth0
```

The following example changes the second network to DHCP:

```
$ srvctl modify network -k 2 -w dhcp
```

## srvctl modify nodeapps

Modifies the configuration for a node application.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify nodeapps` command with one of the following syntax models:

```
srvctl modify nodeapps [-n node_name -A new_vip_address]
[-S subnet/netmask[/if1[|if2|...]] [-u network_type]
[-e em_port] [-l ons_local_port] [-r ons_remote_port]
[-t host[:port][,host:port,...]] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-72** *srvctl modify nodeapps Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name.
-A <i>new_vip_address/</i> <i>netmask</i>	Node level Virtual IP address. The address specified by name or IP must match the subnet number of the default network. <b>Note:</b> This option must be used for upgrade configurations and new non-DHCP configurations
-S <i>subnet/netmask</i> <i>/if1[ if2 ...]</i>	Specifies a subnet number for the public network. The netmask and interfaces specified, if any, change those of the default network. Additionally, if you specify the <i>netmask</i> option, then you need only specify it for the first node on each network.
-u <i>network_type</i>	Specifies the network server type, such as <i>static</i> , <i>dhcp</i> , or <i>mixed</i> .
-e <i>em_port</i>	Local port on which Oracle Enterprise Manager listens. The default port is 2016.
-l <i>ons_local_port</i>	Port on which the Oracle Notification Service daemon listens for local client connections. <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.
-r <i>ons_remote_port</i>	Port on which the Oracle Notification Service daemon listens for connections from remote hosts. <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.
-t <i>host:port,</i> <i>[host:port,...]</i>	List of <i>host:port</i> pairs of remote hosts that are part of the Oracle Notification Service network but are not part of the cluster. If you do not specify a <i>port</i> for a remote host, then the utility uses the value you specified for <i>ons_remote_port</i> .
-v	Verbose output.

### Example

The following example changes the nodeapps resource on `mynode1` to use the application VIP of 100.200.300.40 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 on the network interface `eth0`:

```
$ srvctl modify nodeapps -n mynode1 -A 100.200.300.40/255.255.255.0/eth0
```

## srvctl modify oc4j

Modifies the RMI port for the OC4J instances.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify oc4j -p oc4j_rmi_port [-v]
```

**Table A-73** *srvctl modify oc4j Options*

Option	Description
-p <i>oc4j_rmi_port</i>	The RMI port number used by the OC4J instance
-v	Verbose output

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl modify oc4j -p 5385
```

## srvctl modify ons

Modifies the ports used by the Oracle Notification Service daemon that is registered with Oracle Restart.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify ons` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify ons [-l ons_local_port] [-r ons_remote_port]  
[-t host[:port][,host[:port]][...]] [-v]
```

**Table A-74** *srvctl modify ons Options*

Option	Description
-l <i>ons_local_port</i>	The Oracle Notification Service daemon listening port for local client connections <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.
-r <i>ons_remote_port</i>	The Oracle Notification Service daemon listening port for connections from remote hosts <b>Note:</b> The local port and remote port must each be unique.
-t <i>host[:port]</i> [, <i>host[:port]</i> ][...]	A list of <i>host:port</i> pairs of remote hosts that are part of the Oracle Notification Service network but are not part of the Oracle Clusterware cluster <b>Note:</b> If you do not specify <i>port</i> for a remote host, then the utility uses <i>ons_remote_port</i> .
-v	Display verbose output

## srvctl modify scan

Modifies the number of SCAN VIPs to match the number of IP addresses returned by looking up the *scan\_name* you specify in DNS. Presumably the *scan\_name* has not changed, but DNS was changed to add or remove IP addresses, and now you must adjust the Oracle Clusterware resource configuration to match.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify scan -n scan_name
```



The only option available for this command is `-n scan_name`, which identifies the SCAN name that resolves to the SCAN VIPs that you want to use.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

### Example

Assume your system currently has a SCAN named `scan_name1`, and it resolves to a single IP address in DNS. If you modify the SCAN `scan_name1` in DNS to resolve to three IP addresses, then use the following command to create the additional SCAN VIP resources:

```
$ srvctl modify scan -n scan_name1
```

## srvctl modify scan\_listener

Modifies the SCAN listener to match SCAN VIP's or modifies the SCAN listener endpoints.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl modify scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify scan_listener {-p [TCP:]port[/IPC:key] [/NMP:pipe_name]
                             [/TCPS:s_port] [/SDP:port] | -u }
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-75** *srvctl modify scan\_listener Options*

Option	Description
<code>-p [TCP:]port[/IPC:key] [/NMP:pipe_name] [/TCPS:s_port] [/SDP:port]</code>	The new SCAN listener end points
<code>-u</code>	Updates SCAN listener configuration to match the current SCAN VIP configuration. This option adds new resources or removes existing SCAN listener resources to match the SCAN VIP resources.

### Example

Assume your system currently has a SCAN named `scan_name1`, and you recently modified the DNS entry to resolve to three IP addresses instead of one. After running the `srvctl modify scan` command to create additional SCAN VIP resources, use the following command to create Oracle Clusterware resources for the additional two SCAN listeners to go with the two additional SCAN VIPs:

```
$ srvctl modify scan_listener -u
```

## srvctl modify service

Moves a service member from one instance to another. Additionally, this command changes which instances are to be the preferred and the available instances for a service. This command supports some online modifications to the service, such as:

- Service attributes from `DBMS_SERVICE` (for example, failover delay, Runtime Load Balancing Goal, and so on) can be changed online but the changes take effect only when the service is next (re)started.
- When a service configuration is modified so that a new preferred or available instance is added, the running state of the existing service is not affected. However, the newly added instances will not automatically provide the service, until a `srvctl start service` command is issued as described on page A-97.
- When there are available instances for the service, and the service configuration is modified so that a preferred or available instance is removed, the running state of the service may change unpredictably:
  - The service is stopped and then removed on some instances according to the new service configuration.
  - The service may be running on some instances that are being removed from the service configuration.
  - These services will be relocated to the next *free* instance in the new service configuration.

As a result of these considerations, when the online service is being modified, users may experience a brief service outage on some instances even if the instances are not being removed. Or users may experience a brief service outage on instances that are being removed from the service.

---



---

**Important:** Oracle recommends that you limit configuration changes to the minimum requirement and that you not perform other service operations while the online service modification is in progress.

---



---

### Syntax and Options

Use one of the following forms of the `srvctl modify service` command with the specified syntax:

#### To move a service from one instance to another:

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s service_name -i old_instance_name
-t new_instance_name [-f]
```

---



---

**Note:** This form of the command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-76** *srvctl modify service Options for Moving a Service*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s <i>service_name</i>	Service name
-i <i>old_instance_name</i>	Old instance name
-t <i>new_instance_name</i>	New instance name
-f	Disconnect all sessions during stop or relocate service operations

**To change an available instance to a preferred instance for a service:**

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s service_name -t edition_name
-i avail_inst_name -r [-f]
```

---

**Note:** This form of the command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and does not accept placement options for Oracle RAC One Node databases.

---

**Table A-77** *srvctl modify service Options for Changing an Available Instance to a Preferred Instance*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s <i>service_name</i>	Service name
-t <i>edition_name</i>	(version 11.2.0.2 or higher) The initial session edition of the service.  When an edition is specified for a service, all subsequent connections that specify the service use this edition as the initial session edition. However, if a session connection specifies a different edition, then the edition specified in the session connection is used for the initial session edition.  SRVCTL does not validate the specified edition name. During connection, the connect user must have USE privilege on the specified edition. If the edition does not exist or if the connect user does not have USE privilege on the specified edition, then SRVCTL returns an error.
-i <i>available_inst_name</i>	Name of the available instance to change
-r	Change instance status to preferred
-f	Disconnect all sessions during stop or relocate service operations

**To change the available and preferred status for multiple instances:**

```
srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s service_name -n -i preferred_list
[-a available_list] [-f]
```

---

**Note:** This form of the command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and does not accept placement options for Oracle RAC One Node databases.

---

**Table A-78** *srvctl modify service Options for Changing Available and Preferred Status of Multiple Instances*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s <i>service_name</i>	Service name
-n	Uses only the instances named for this service (unnamed instances already assigned to the service are removed)
-i <i>preferred_instance_list</i>	List of preferred instances
-a <i>available_instance_list</i>	List of available instances

**Table A-78 (Cont.) *srvctl* modify service Options for Changing Available and Preferred Status of Multiple Instances**

Option	Description
-f	Disconnect all sessions during stop or relocate service operations

**To modify other service attributes or to modify a service for Oracle Clusterware:**

```

srvctl modify service -d db_unique_name -s service_name
    [-g server_pool] [-c {UNIFORM|SINGLETON}] [-P {BASIC|PRECONNECT|NONE}]
    [-l {[PRIMARY] | [PHYSICAL_STANDBY] | [LOGICAL_STANDBY] | [SNAPSHOT_STANDBY]}]
    [-q {TRUE|FALSE}] [-x {TRUE|FALSE}] [-j {SHORT|LONG}]
    [-B {NONE|SERVICE_TIME|THROUGHPUT}] [-e {NONE|SESSION|SELECT}]
    [-m {NONE|BASIC}] [-z failover_retries] [-w failover_delay]
    [-y {AUTOMATIC | MANUAL}]

```

**Table A-79 *srvctl* modify service Options**

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s <i>service_name</i>	Service name
-g <i>server_pool</i>	The name of a server pool used when the database is policy managed. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle RAC and only for policy-managed databases.
-c {UNIFORM   SINGLETON}	The cardinality of the service, either UNIFORM (offered on all instances in the server pool) or SINGLETON (runs on only one instance at a time) <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-P {BASIC PRECONNECT NONE}	TAF failover policy <b>Note:</b> The PRECONNECT option applies only to administrator-managed databases.
-l {[PRIMARY]   [PHYSICAL_STANDBY]   [LOGICAL_STANDBY]   [SNAPSHOT_STANDBY]}	The database modes for which the service should be started automatically. Using SRVCTL to manually start a service is not affected by the service role. <b>Note:</b> The -l parameter is only used at database startup and by the Oracle Data Guard Broker. All manual service startup must specify the name of the service to be started by the user. <b>See Also:</b> Oracle Data Guard Broker if you specify -l
-q {TRUE   FALSE}	Indicates whether AQ HA notifications should be enabled (TRUE) for this service
-x {TRUE   FALSE}	Indicates whether or not Distributed Transaction Processing should be enabled for this service <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-j {SHORT   LONG}	Connection Load Balancing Goal
-B {NONE   SERVICE_TIME   THROUGHPUT}	Runtime Load Balancing Goal
-e {NONE   SESSION   SELECT}	Failover type
-m {NONE   BASIC}	Failover method

**Table A-79 (Cont.) *srvctl modify service Options***

Option	Description
-z <i>failover_retries</i>	The number of failover retry attempts
-w <i>failover_delay</i>	The time delay between failover attempts
-y {AUTOMATIC   MANUAL}	Service management policy

**Examples**

An example of moving a service member from one instance to another is:

```
$ srvctl modify service -d crm -s crm -i crm1 -t crm2
```

An example of changing an available instance to a preferred instance is:

```
srvctl modify service -d crm -s crm -i crm1 -r
```

The following command exchanges a preferred and available instance:

```
$ srvctl modify service -d crm -s crm -n -i crm1 -a crm2
```

**srvctl modify srvpool**

Modifies a server pool in a cluster. If minimum size, maximum size, and importance are numerically increased, then the CRS daemon may attempt to reassign servers to this server pool, if by resizing other server pools have comparatively lower minimum size and importance, to satisfy new sizes of this server pool.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl modify srvpool` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl modify srvpool -g server_pool [-i importance] [-l min_size]
[-u max_size] [-n node_name_list] [-f]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-80 *srvctl modify srvpool Options***

Option	Description
-g <i>server_pool</i>	The name of the server pool to modify,
-i <i>importance</i>	The new importance of the server pool.
-l <i>min_size</i>	The new minimum size of the server pool. The default value is 0.
-u <i>max_size</i>	The new maximum size of the server pool. A value of -1 sets the server pool maximum size to UNLIMITED.
-n <i>node_name_list</i>	A comma-delimited list of candidate server names.
-f	Force the operation even though the utility stops some resource(s).

**Example**

The following example changes the importance rank to 0, the minimum size to 2, and the maximum size to 4 for the server pool `srvpool1` on the nodes `mynode3` and `mynode4`:

```
$ srvctl modify srvpool -g srvpool1 -i 0 -l 2 -u 4 -n mynode3, mynode4
```

## relocate

The `relocate` command causes the specified object to run on a different node. The specified object must be running already.

The relocation of the object is temporary until you modify the configuration. The previously described `modify` command on page A-72 permanently changes the configuration.

**Table A–81** *srvctl relocate Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl relocate cvu</code> on page A-72	Temporarily relocates the Cluster Verification Utility
<code>srvctl relocate database</code> on page A-73	Relocates an Oracle RAC One Node database to a different node
<code>srvctl relocate gns</code> on page A-73	Relocates GNS to a different node
<code>srvctl relocate oc4j</code> on page A-74	Relocates an OC4J instance to a different node
<code>srvctl relocate scan</code> on page A-74	Relocates a SCAN VIP from its current hosting server to another server within the cluster
<code>srvctl relocate scan_listener</code> on page A-75	Relocates a SCAN listener from its current hosting server to another server within the cluster
<code>srvctl relocate server</code> on page A-75	Relocates named servers to another server pool
<code>srvctl relocate service</code> on page A-76	Relocates the named service names from one named instance to another named instance
<code>srvctl relocate vip</code> on page A-76	Relocates a specific VIP from one node to another within the cluster

### srvctl relocate cvu

Starting with Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command temporarily relocates the CVU to another node in a cluster.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl relocate cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate cvu [-n node_name]
```

**Table A–82** *srvctl relocate cvu Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n node_name</code>	Node name

#### Examples

An example of this command to temporarily relocate CVU to another node in a cluster is:

```
$ srvctl relocate cvu -n crmnode2
```

## srvctl relocate database

Starting with Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.2), the `srvctl relocate database` command initiates the relocation of an Oracle RAC One Node database from one node to another node. This command also cleans up after a failed relocation.

The `srvctl relocate database` command can only be used for relocating Oracle RAC One Node databases.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl relocate database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate database -d db_unique_name {[-n target_node] [-w timeout] | -a
[-r]} [-v]
```

**Table A-83** *srvctl relocate database Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database.
-n <i>target</i>	Target node to which to relocate the Oracle RAC One Node database. <b>Note:</b> You must supply this option if you are relocating an administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node database.
-w <i>timeout</i>	Online database relocation timeout, in minutes, for Oracle RAC One Node databases. The default is 30.
-a	Abort failed online database relocation.
-r	Removes the target node of a failed online relocation request from the candidate server list of an administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node database.
-v	Verbose output.

### Usage Notes

- If the Oracle RAC One Node database you want to relocate is not running, then the command returns an error.
- If another online database relocation is active for this Oracle RAC One Node database, then the command returns an error.
- If an online database relocation for this Oracle RAC One Node database has failed and the target nodes are not the same for either relocation, then the command returns an error instructing you to abort the failed online database relocation and then initiate a new one.
- If an online database relocation for this Oracle RAC One Node database has failed and the target nodes are the same (or you do not specify the target), then the command attempts to relocate the database.

### Example

The following example relocates an Oracle RAC One Node database named `rac1` to a server called `node7`.

```
srvctl relocate database -d rac1 -n node7
```

## srvctl relocate gns

Relocates GNS from its current hosting node to another node within the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl relocate gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate gns [-n node_name]
```

**Notes:**

- On Linux and UNIX systems, you must be logged in as `root` and on Windows, you must be logged in as a user with Administrator privileges to run this command.
- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

**Table A–84** *srvctl relocate gns Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n <i>node_name</i></code>	The name of the node to which you want to move GNS

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl relocate gns -n node1
```

**srvctl relocate oc4j**

Relocates an OC4J instance from its current hosting node to another node within the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl relocate oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate oc4j [-n node_name] [-v]
```

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

**Table A–85** *srvctl relocate oc4j Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n <i>node_name</i></code>	The name of the node to relocate the OC4J instance to.
<code>-v</code>	Display verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl relocate oc4j -n staih01 -v
```

**srvctl relocate scan**

Relocates a specific SCAN VIP from its current hosting node to another node within the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl relocate scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate scan -i ordinal_number [-n node_name]
```



---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–86** *srvctl relocate scan Options*

Option	Description
-i <i>ordinal_number</i>	An ordinal number that identifies which SCAN VIP you want to relocate. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3.
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a single node. If you do not specify this option, then the utility chooses the node to which the SCAN VIP is relocated.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl relocate scan -i 1 -n node1
```

### srvctl relocate scan\_listener

Relocates a specific SCAN listener from its current hosting node to another node within the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl relocate scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate scan_listener -i ordinal_number [-n node_name]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–87** *srvctl relocate scan\_listener Options*

Option	Description
-i <i>ordinal_number</i>	An ordinal number that identifies which SCAN VIP you want to relocate. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3.
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a single node. If you do not specify this option, then the utility chooses the node to which the SCAN VIP is relocated.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl relocate scan_listener -i 1 -n node3
```

### srvctl relocate server

Relocates servers to a server pool in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl relocate server` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate server -n "server_name_list" -g server_pool_name [-f]
```

**Table A–88** *srvctl relocate server Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>server_name_list</i>	A single server name or a comma-delimited list of server names enclosed in double quotation marks ( " ") that you want to relocate to a different server pool.
-g <i>server_pool_name</i>	The name of the server pool to which you want to move servers.
-f	Use the -f option to force the relocation of servers even if it means stopping some resources.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl relocate server -n "server1, server2" -g sp3
```

**srvctl relocate service**

Relocates the named service names from one named instance to another named instance. The `srvctl relocate` command works on only one source instance and one target instance at a time, relocating a service from a single source instance to a single target instance. The target instance must be on the preferred or available list for the service.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl relocate service` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate service -d db_unique_name -s service_name
    {-c source_node -n target_node | -i old_instance_name -t new_instance_name}
    [-f]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–89** *srvctl relocate service Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s <i>service_name</i>	Service name
-c <i>source_node</i>	Name of the node where the service is currently running
-n <i>target_node</i>	Name of node where the service should be relocated
-i <i>old_instance_name</i>	Old instance name
-t <i>new_instance_name</i>	New instance name
-f	Disconnect all sessions during stop or relocate service operations

**Example**

To temporarily relocate a named service member from `crm1` to `crm3`:

```
$ srvctl relocate service -d crm -s crm -i crm1 -t crm3
```

**srvctl relocate vip**

Relocates a specific VIP from its current hosting node to another node within the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl relocate vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl relocate vip -i vip_name [-n node_name] [-f]
```

**Table A-90** *srvctl relocate vip Options*

Option	Description
-i <i>vip_name</i>	Specify the name of the VIP you want to relocate.
-n <i>node_name</i>	Specify the name of a single target node to which you want to relocate the VIP.
-f	Specify this option to force the relocation of the VIP.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl relocate vip -i vip1 -n node3
```

## remove

Removes the configuration information for the specified target from Oracle Clusterware. Environment settings for the object are also removed. Using this command does not destroy the specified target.

Use the `remove` verb to remove the associated resource from the management of Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart. Depending on the noun used, you can remove databases, services, nodeapps, Oracle ASM, Oracle Notification Service, and listeners.

If you do not use the force flag (`-f`), then Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart prompts you to confirm whether to proceed. If you use the force (`-f`) option, then the remove operation proceeds without prompting and continues processing even when it encounters errors. Even when the Oracle Clusterware resources cannot be removed, the OCR configuration is removed, so that the object now appears not to exist, but there are still Oracle Clusterware resources. Use the force flag (`-f`) option with extreme caution because this could result in an inconsistent OCR.

To use the `remove` verb, you must first stop the node applications, database, instance, or service for which you are specifying `srvctl remove`. Oracle recommends that you perform a `disable` operation before using this command, but this is not required. You must stop the target object before running the `srvctl remove` command. See the `stop` command on page A-109.

**Table A-91** *srvctl remove Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl remove asm</code> on page A-79	Removes Oracle ASM instances
<code>srvctl remove cvu</code> on page A-79	Removes the Cluster Verification Utility configured for the cluster
<code>srvctl remove database</code> on page A-79	Removes a database and configuration
<code>srvctl remove diskgroup</code> on page A-80	Removes a disk group from the Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart configuration
<code>srvctl remove filesystem</code> on page A-80	Removes the configuration for an Oracle ACFS volume
<code>srvctl remove gns</code> on page A-81	Removes GNS
<code>srvctl remove instance</code> on page A-81	Removes instances and configurations of administrator-managed databases
<code>srvctl remove listener</code> on page A-82	Removes the configuration of the specified listener from Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart
<code>srvctl remove nodeapps</code> on page A-82	Removes node applications
<code>srvctl remove oc4j</code> on page A-83	Removes the OC4J instance configuration
<code>srvctl remove ons</code> on page A-83	Removes Oracle Notification Service instances
<code>srvctl remove scan</code> on page A-83	Removes all Oracle Clusterware resources for all SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl remove scan_listener</code> on page A-84	Removes all Oracle Clusterware resources for all SCAN listeners
<code>srvctl remove service</code> on page A-84	Removes services from the Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart configuration

**Table A-91 (Cont.) *srvctl remove* Summary**

Command	Description
<code>srvctl remove srvpool</code> on page A-85	Removes a specific server pool
<code>srvctl remove vip</code> on page A-85	Removes specific VIPs

**srvctl remove asm**

Removes the Oracle ASM resource.

---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove asm [-f]
```

The `-f` option is the only option you can use with this command and it forcefully removes an Oracle ASM resource.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove asm -f
```

**srvctl remove cvu**

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command removes CVU from an Oracle Clusterware configuration.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove cvu [-f]
```

Use the `-f` option to remove a running or starting CVU.

**Examples**

An example of this command to remove CVU is:

```
$ srvctl remove cvu -f
```

**srvctl remove database**

Removes a database configuration.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove database -d db_unique_name [-f] [-y]
```

**Table A–92** *srvctl remove database Options*

Options	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-f	Force remove
-y	Suppress prompts

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove database -d crm
```

**srvctl remove diskgroup**

Removes a specific Oracle ASM disk group resource from Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove diskgroup` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove diskgroup -g diskgroup_name [-n node_list] [-f]
```

**Table A–93** *srvctl remove diskgroup Options*

Option	Description
-g <i>diskgroup_name</i>	The Oracle ASM disk group name.
-n <i>node_list</i>	Comma-delimited list of node nodes. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-f	Force remove.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove diskgroup -g DG1 -f
```

**srvctl remove filesystem**

Removes a specific Oracle ACFS volume resource.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove filesystem -d volume_device_name [-f]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–94** *srvctl remove filesystem Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>volume_device_name</i>	The Oracle ACFS volume device name
-f	Force remove

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove filesystem -d /dev/asm/d1volume293
```

**srvctl remove gns**

Removes GNS from the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove gns [-f]
```

The only option for this command is `-f`, which indicates GNS should be removed regardless of any errors that might occur.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove gns
```

**srvctl remove instance**

Removes the configurations for an instance of an administrator-managed database. To remove the configurations of a policy-managed database, you must shrink the size of the server pool with the `srvctl modify srvpool` command.

If you use the `-f` option, then any services running on the instance stop. Oracle recommends that you reconfigure services to not use the instance to be removed as a preferred or available instance before removing the instance.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove instance -d db_unique_name -i instance_name [-f]
```

**Notes:**

- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
- If you attempt to use this command on an Oracle RAC One Node database, then the command returns an error stating that cannot remove the instance except by removing the database.

**Table A-95** *srvctl remove instance Options*

Options	Description
<code>-d <i>db_unique_name</i></code>	Unique name for the database.
<code>-i <i>instance_name</i></code>	Instance name.

**Table A–95 (Cont.) *srvctl remove instance Options***

Options	Description
-f	Specify this option to skip checking that the instance is not running, and remove it even though it is running. This option also skips checking that the instance has no running services using it, and causes those services to stop before the instance is removed.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove instance -d crm -i crm01
```

**srvctl remove listener**

Removes the configuration of the specified listener from Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove listener [-l listener_name] [-a] [-f]
```

**Table A–96 *srvctl remove listener Options***

Options	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	Name of the listener that you want to remove.  If you do not specify a listener name, then the listener name defaults to LISTENER.
-a	Removes all listener configurations.
-f	Specify this option to skip checking whether there are other resources that depend on this listener, such as databases, and remove the listener anyway.

**Examples**

The following command removes the configuration of the listener named `lsnr01`:

```
$ srvctl remove listener -l lsnr01
```

**srvctl remove nodeapps**

Removes the node application configuration. You must have full administrative privileges to run this command. On Linux and UNIX systems, you must be logged in as `root` and on Windows systems, you must be logged in as a user with Administrator privileges.

**Syntax**

Use the `srvctl remove nodeapps` command as follows:

```
srvctl remove nodeapps [-f] [-y] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
# srvctl remove nodeapps
```



**Table A–97** *srvctl remove nodeapps Options*

Options	Description
-f	Force remove
-y	Suppress prompts
-v	Verbose output

**srvctl remove oc4j**

Removes the OC4J instance from the Oracle Clusterware configuration.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove oc4j [-f] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–98** *srvctl remove oc4j Options*

Options	Description
-f	Force remove
-v	Verbose output

**srvctl remove ons**

Removes Oracle Notification Service from the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove ons` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove ons [-f] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Restart.

---



---

**Table A–99** *srvctl remove ons Options*

Options	Description
-f	Force remove
-v	Verbose output

**srvctl remove scan**

Removes Oracle Clusterware resources from all SCAN VIPs.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove scan [-f]
```

The only option available for this command is `-f`, which removes the SCAN VIPs even though there are SCAN listeners running that are dependent on the SCAN VIPs. SCAN VIPs that are running are not stopped before the resources are removed, which may require manual cleanup.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove scan -f
```

**srvctl remove scan\_listener**

Removes Oracle Clusterware resources from all SCAN listeners.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove scan_listener [-f]
```

The only option available for this command is `-f`, which removes the resource even if the listener(s) is running, without stopping the listener.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove scan_listener -f
```

**srvctl remove service**

Removes the configuration for a service.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl remove service` command as follows:

```
srvctl remove service -d db_unique_name -s service_name [-i instance_name] [-f]
```

**Table A-100** *srvctl remove service Options*

Options	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s <i>service_name</i>	Service name
-i <i>instance_name</i>	Instance name
	<b>Note:</b> This option is available only for Oracle Clusterware.
-f	Removes the service resource even though the service is running

**Examples**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove service -d crm -s sales
```

The following example removes the services from specific instances:

```
$ srvctl remove service -d crm -s sales -i crm01,crm02
```

## srvctl remove srvpool

Removes a specific server pool. If there are databases or services that depend upon this server pool, then remove them first so this operation succeeds.

If you successfully remove *server\_pool*, then the CRS daemon may assign its servers to other server pools depending upon their minimum size, maximum size, and importance. The CRS daemon may also return these servers to its Free server pool.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl remove srvpool` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove srvpool -g server_pool
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove srvpool -g srvpool1
```

## srvctl remove vip

Removes specific VIPs.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl remove vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl remove vip -i "vip_name_list" [-f] [-y] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-101** *srvctl remove vip Options*

Option	Description
-i " <i>vip_name_list</i> "	A comma-delimited list of VIP names surrounded by double quotation marks ( " ")
-f	Force remove
-y	Suppress prompts
-v	Verbose output

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl remove vip -i "vip1,vip2,vip3" -f -y -v
```

## setenv

The `setenv` command sets values for the environment in the configuration file. Use `setenv` to set environment variables—items such as language or `TNS_ADMIN`—for Oracle Clusterware that you would typically set in your profile or session when you manage this database or database instance.

The `unsetenv` command unsets values for the environment in the configuration file.

**Table A–102** *srvctl setenv Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl setenv asm</code> on page A-86	Administers environment configuration for Oracle ASM
<code>srvctl setenv database</code> on page A-86	Administers cluster database environment configurations
<code>srvctl setenv listener</code> on page A-87	Administers listener environment configurations <b>Note:</b> You cannot use this command to administer SCAN listeners.
<code>srvctl setenv nodeapps</code> on page A-87	Administers node application environment configurations
<code>srvctl setenv vip</code> on page A-88	Administers VIP environment configurations

### srvctl setenv asm

Administers Oracle ASM environment configurations.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl setenv asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl setenv asm {-t "name=val[,name=val][...]" | -T "name=val" }
```

**Table A–103** *srvctl setenv asm Options*

Options	Description
<code>-t "name=val[,name=val][...]"</code>	Comma-delimited list of name-value pairs of environment variables
<code>-T "name=val"</code>	Enables single environment variable to be set to a value that contains commas or other special characters

#### Example

The following example sets the language environment configuration for Oracle ASM:

```
$ srvctl setenv asm -t LANG=en
```

### srvctl setenv database

Administers cluster database environment configurations.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl setenv database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl setenv database -d db_unique_name
{-t "name=val[,name=val][...]" | -T "name=val" }
```

**Table A-104** *srvctl setenv database Options*

Options	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-t "name=val,..."	Comma-delimited list of name-value pairs of environment variables
-T "name=val"	Enables single environment variable to be set to a value that contains commas or other special characters

**Example**

The following example sets the language environment configuration for a cluster database:

```
$ srvctl setenv database -d crm -t LANG=en
```

**srvctl setenv listener**

Administers listener environment configurations.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl setenv listener` with the following syntax:

```
srvctl setenv listener [-l listener_name
    {-t "name=val[,name=val][...]" | -T "name=val"}
```

**Table A-105** *srvctl setenv listener Options*

Options	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	Name of the listener. If you do not specify this option, then the listener name defaults to LISTENER.
-t "name=val"	Comma-delimited list of name-value pairs of environment variables.
-T "name=val"	Enables single environment variable to be set to a value that contains commas or other special characters.

**Example**

The following example sets the language environment configuration for the default listener:

```
$ srvctl setenv listener -t LANG=en
```

**srvctl setenv nodeapps**

Sets the environment variables for the node application configurations.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl setenv nodeapps` command as follows:

```
srvctl setenv nodeapps {-t "name=val[,name=val][...]" | -T "name=val"} [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–106** *srvctl setenv nodeapps Options*

Options	Description
-t "name=val[,name=val] [...]"	Comma-delimited list of name-value pairs of environment variables
-T "name=val"	Enables single environment variable to be set to a value that contains commas or other special characters
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

To set an environment variable for a node application:

```
$ srvctl setenv nodeapps -T "CLASSPATH=/usr/local/jdk/jre/rt.jar" -v
```

**srvctl setenv vip**

Administers cluster VIP environment configurations.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl setenv vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl setenv vip -i vip_name {-t "name=val[,name=val,...]" | -T "name=val"}
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–107** *srvctl setenv vip Options*

Options	Description
-i vip_name	Name of the VIP
-t "name=val,..."	Comma-delimited list of name-value pairs of environment variables
-T "name=val"	Enables single environment variable to be set to a value that contains commas or other special characters

**Example**

The following example sets the language environment configuration for a cluster VIP:

```
$ srvctl setenv vip -i crm1-vip -t LANG=en
```

## start

Starts Oracle Restart or Oracle Clusterware enabled, non-running applications for the database, all or named instances, all or named service names, or node-level applications. For the `start` command, and for other operations that use a connect string, if you do not provide a connect string, SRVCTL uses `/as sysdba` to perform the operation. To run such operations, the owner of the `oracle` binary executables must be a member of the OSDBA group, and users running the commands must also be in the OSDBA group.

**Table A-108** *srvctl start Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl start asm</code> on page A-89	Starts Oracle ASM instances
<code>srvctl start cvu</code> on page A-90	Starts the Cluster Verification Utility
<code>srvctl start database</code> on page A-93	Starts the cluster database and its instances
<code>srvctl start diskgroup</code> on page A-91	Starts a specified disk group on a number of nodes
<code>srvctl start filesystem</code> on page A-92	Starts the Oracle ACFS volume resource
<code>srvctl start gns</code> on page A-92	Starts GNS
<code>srvctl start home</code> on page A-93	Starts Oracle Clusterware-managed or Oracle Restart-managed resources in a specific Oracle home
<code>srvctl start instance</code> on page A-93	Starts the instance
<code>srvctl start listener</code> on page A-94	Starts the specified listener or listeners
<code>srvctl start nodeapps</code> on page A-94	Starts the node applications
<code>srvctl start oc4j</code> on page A-95	Starts the OC4J instance
<code>srvctl start ons</code> on page A-95	Starts the Oracle Notification Service daemon for Oracle Restart
<code>srvctl start scan</code> on page A-95	Starts all SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl start scan_listener</code> on page A-96	Starts all SCAN listeners
<code>srvctl start service</code> on page A-97	Starts the service
<code>srvctl start vip</code> on page A-98	Starts a VIP

### srvctl start asm

Starts an Oracle ASM instance.

---

**Notes:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start asm [-n node_name] [-o start_options]
```

**Table A-109** *srvctl start asm Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n node_name</code>	Node name <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
<code>-o start_options</code>	Options to startup command, for example OPEN, MOUNT, or NOMOUNT <b>Note:</b> For multi-word startup options, such as <code>read only</code> and <code>read write</code> , separate the words with a space and enclose in double quotation marks (" "). For example, "read only". <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about startup options

**Examples**

An example of this command to start an Oracle ASM instance on a single node of a cluster is:

```
$ srvctl start asm -n crmnode1
```

An example to start an Oracle ASM instance on all nodes in the cluster, or for a noncluster database, is:

```
$ srvctl start asm
```

**srvctl start cvu**

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command starts the CVU on one node in a cluster. If you specify a node name, then CVU starts on that node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start cvu [-n node_name]
```

**Table A-110** *srvctl start cvu Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n node_name</code>	Node name

**Examples**

An example of this command to start CVU on a single node of a cluster is:

```
$ srvctl start cvu -n crmnode1
```

**srvctl start database**

Starts a cluster database and its enabled instances and all listeners on nodes with database instances. You can disable listeners that should not be started.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start database -d db_unique_name [-o start_options] [-n node_name]
```



**Table A-111** *srvctl start database Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-o <i>start_options</i>	Options for startup command (for example: OPEN, MOUNT, or NOMOUNT)  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ This command option supports all database startup options.</li> <li>■ For multi-word startup options, such as <code>read only</code> and <code>read write</code>, separate the words with a space and enclose in double quotation marks (" "). For example, "read only".</li> </ul> <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about startup options
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node on which you want to start the database  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ This command only applies to Oracle RAC One Node databases.</li> <li>■ The node you specify must be in the candidate list for an administrator-managed Oracle RAC One Node database or in the server pool for a policy-managed Oracle RAC One Node database.</li> <li>■ If the database is already running on a node than the one you specify, then the command returns an error.</li> <li>■ If you do not specify a node, then Oracle Clusterware chooses which node on which to start the Oracle RAC One Node database according to its policies, such as dispersion, number of resources, and order of candidate nodes.</li> <li>■ If there is an active online database relocation for the Oracle RAC One Node database you are attempting to start, then both instances will already be running and the command returns an error message saying so (remember that only during an online database relocation are two instances of an Oracle RAC One Node database in existence).  If the online database relocation failed for the Oracle RAC One Node database and you do not specify a node, then the command attempts to start both database instances.  If the online database relocation failed for the Oracle RAC One Node database and you specify a node, then the command attempts to abort the failed relocation and start the instance on that node.</li> </ul>

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl start database -d crm -o open
```

**srvctl start diskgroup**

Starts a specific disk group resource on a number of specified nodes.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start diskgroup` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start diskgroup -g diskgroup_name [-n node_list]
```

**Table A–112** *srvctl start diskgroup Options*

Option	Description
<code>-g diskgroup_name</code>	The Oracle ASM disk group name
<code>-n node_list</code>	Comma-delimited list of node names on which to start the disk group resource <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl start diskgroup -g diskgroup1 -n mynode1,mynode2
```

**srvctl start filesystem**

Starts the Oracle ACFS volume resource.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start filesystem -d volume_device_name [-n node_name]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–113** *srvctl start filesystem Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d volume_device_name</code>	The Oracle ACFS volume device name
<code>-n node_name</code>	The name of the node on which the Oracle ACFS volume resource should be started.  If you do not specify this option, then the utility starts the Oracle ACFS volume resource on all the available nodes in the cluster.

**srvctl start gns**

Starts GNS on a specific node, or all nodes in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start gns [-l log_level] [-n node_name]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–114** *srvctl start gns Options*

Option	Description
<code>-l log_level</code>	Specify the level of logging with which GNS should run. Log levels vary between 1 (minimal tracing) and 6 (traces everything and is time consuming).

**Table A–114 (Cont.) *srvctl start gns* Options**

Option	Description
<code>-n node_name</code>	The name of a node in the cluster where you want to start GNS.

## srvctl start home

Starts all the Oracle Restart-managed or Oracle Clusterware-managed resources on the specified Oracle home.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl start home` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start home -o Oracle_home -s state_file [-n node_name]
```

**Table A–115 *srvctl start home* Options**

Option	Description
<code>-o Oracle_home</code>	The path to the Oracle home for which you want to start the Oracle Restart or Oracle Clusterware-managed resources
<code>-s state_file</code>	The path name of the state file you specified when you ran either the <code>srvctl stop home</code> or the <code>srvctl status home</code> command.
<code>-n node_name</code>	The name of the node where the Oracle home resides.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl start -o /u01/app/oracle/product/11.2.0/db_1 -s ~/state.txt
```

## srvctl start instance

Starts instances in the cluster database and all listeners on nodes with database instances. You can disable listeners that should not be started.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl start instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start instance -d db_unique_name {-n node_name -i "instance_name_list"}
[-o start_options]
```

In Windows, you must enclose the list of comma-delimited instance names in double quotation marks (" ").

---



---

### Notes:

- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
  - If you run this command on an Oracle RAC One Node database, then the command returns an error instructing you to use the database noun, instead.
- 
-

**Table A-116** *srvctl start instance Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a single node <b>Note:</b> Use this option for policy-managed databases.
-i " <i>instance_name_list</i> "	Specify either exactly one instance name or a comma-delimited list of instance names <b>Note:</b> Use this option for administrator-managed databases.
-o <i>start_options</i>	Options for startup command (for example: OPEN, MOUNT, or NOMOUNT) <b>Note:</b> For multi-word startup options, such as <code>read only</code> and <code>read write</code> , separate the words with a space and enclose in double quotation marks (" "). For example, " <code>read only</code> ". <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about startup options

**Example**

An example of starting an instance for a policy-managed database is:

```
$ srvctl start instance -d crm -n node2
```

An example of starting an instance for an administrator-managed database is:

```
$ srvctl start instance -d crm -i "crm2,crm3"
```

**srvctl start listener**

Starts the default listener on the specified *node\_name*, or starts all of the listeners represented in a given list of listener names, that are registered with Oracle Clusterware on the given node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start listener [-n node_name] [-l listener_name_list]
```

**Table A-117** *srvctl start listener Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-l <i>listener_name_list</i>	Listener name If you do not specify this option, then the listener name defaults to LISTENER.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl start listener -n mynode1
```

**srvctl start nodeapps**

Starts node-level applications on a node or all nodes in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start nodeapps` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start nodeapps [-n node_name] [-g] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-118** *srvctl start nodeapps Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name  If you do not specify this option, then the utility starts the nodeapps on all active nodes in the cluster.
-g	Starts GSD, only
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
srvctl start nodeapps
```

**srvctl start oc4j**

Starts the OC4J instance.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start ocj4 [-v]
```

There is only one option for this command, `-v`, which is used to indicate that verbose output should be displayed.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**srvctl start ons**

Starts the Oracle Notification Service daemon.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Restart.

---



---

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start ons` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start ons [-v]
```

There is only one option for this command, `-v`, which is used to indicate that verbose output should be displayed.

**srvctl start scan**

Starts all SCAN VIPs, by default, or a specific SCAN VIP, on all nodes or a specific node in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start scan [-i ordinal_number] [-n node_name]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-119** *srvctl start scan Options*

Option	Description
<code>-i ordinal_number</code>	An ordinal number that identifies which SCAN VIP you want to start. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3.  If you do not specify this option, then the utility starts all the SCAN VIPs.
<code>-n node_name</code>	The name of a single node.  If you do not specify this option, then the utility starts the SCAN VIPs on all nodes in the cluster.

**Example**

To start the SCAN VIP identified by the ordinal number 1 on the `node1` node, use the following command:

```
$ srvctl start scan -i 1 -n node1
```

**srvctl start scan\_listener**

Starts all SCAN listeners, by default, or a specific listener on all nodes or a specific node in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start scan_listener [-n node_name] [-i ordinal_number]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-120** *srvctl start scan\_listener Options*

Option	Description
<code>-i ordinal_number</code>	An ordinal number that identifies which SCAN Listener you want to start. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3.  If you do not specify this option, then the utility starts all the SCAN listeners.
<code>-n node_name</code>	The name of a single node.  If you do not specify this option, then the utility starts the SCAN listeners on all nodes in the cluster.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl start scan_listener -i 1
```

## srvctl start service

Starts a service or multiple services on the specified instance. The `srvctl start service` command will fail if you attempt to start a service on an instance if that service is already running on its maximum number of instances, that is, its number of preferred instances. You may move a service or change the status of a service on an instance with the `srvctl modify service` and `srvctl relocate service` commands described later in this appendix.

---



---

### Note:

All manual service startup must specify the name of the service to be started by the user.

---



---

**See Also:** *Oracle Data Guard Broker*

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl start service` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start service -d db_unique_name
                    [-s "service_name_list" [-n node_name | -i instance_name]]
                    [-o start_options]
```

**Table A-121** *srvctl start service Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s " <i>service_name_list</i> "	Comma-delimited list of service names. If you do not include this option, then SRVCTL starts all of the services for the specified database.
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node where the service should be started. Use this option for policy-managed databases. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-i <i>instance_name</i>	The name of the instance for which the service should be started. Use this option for administrator-managed databases. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-o <i>start_options</i>	Options to startup command, such as OPEN, MOUNT, or NOMOUNT <b>Note:</b> For multi-word startup options, such as <code>read only</code> and <code>read write</code> , separate the words with a space and enclose in double quotation marks (" "). For example, " <code>read only</code> ". <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about startup options

### Examples

The following example starts a named service. If the instances that support these services, including available instances that the service uses for failover, are not running but are enabled, then SRVCTL starts them.

```
$ srvctl start service -d crm -s crm
```

The following example starts a named service on a specified instance:

```
$ srvctl start service -d crm -s crm -i crm2
```

## srvctl start vip

Starts a specific VIP or a VIP on a specific node.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl start vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl start vip {-n node_name | -i vip_name } [-v]
```

---

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

**Table A-122** *srvctl start vip Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name
-i <i>vip_name</i>	The VIP name
-v	Verbose start

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl start vip -i crm1-vip -v
```



## status

Displays the current state of a named database, instances, services, disk group, listener, node application, or other resource managed by Oracle Clusterware.

**Table A–123** *srvctl status Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl status asm</code> on page A-99	Displays the status of Oracle ASM instances
<code>srvctl status cvu</code> on page A-100	Displays the status of the Cluster Verification Utility
<code>srvctl status database</code> on page A-100	Displays the status of a database
<code>srvctl status diskgroup</code> on page A-101	Displays status of a specific disk group on a number of nodes
<code>srvctl status filesystem</code> on page A-101	Displays the status of an Oracle ACFS volume
<code>srvctl status gns</code> on page A-102	Displays the status of GNS
<code>srvctl status home</code> on page A-102	Displays the status of the resources associated with the specified Oracle home
<code>srvctl status instance</code> on page A-103	Displays the status of a instance
<code>srvctl status listener</code> on page A-104	Displays the status of a listener resource
<code>srvctl status nodeapps</code> on page A-104	Displays the status of node applications
<code>srvctl status oc4j</code> on page A-104	Determines which node is running the Oracle Database QoS Management server
<code>srvctl status ons</code> on page A-105	Displays the status of Oracle Notification Service
<code>srvctl status scan</code> on page A-105	Displays the status of SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl status scan_listener</code> on page A-105	Displays the status of SCAN listeners
<code>srvctl status server</code> on page A-106	Displays the status of servers
<code>srvctl status service</code> on page A-106	Displays the status of services
<code>srvctl status srvpool</code> on page A-107	Displays the status of server pools
<code>srvctl status vip</code> on page A-107	Displays the status of VIPs

### srvctl status asm

Displays the status of an Oracle ASM instance.

---

**Note:** To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use the SRVCTL binary in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use the SRVCTL binary in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.

---

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status asm [-n node_name] [-a] [-v]
```

**Table A-124** *srvctl status asm Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name. If you do not specify this option, the SRVCTL displays the status of all Oracle ASM instances. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-a	Print detailed status information.
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status asm -n crmnode1 -a
```

**srvctl status cvu**

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command displays the current state of CVU on one node in a cluster. If you specify a node name, then the command checks CVU status on that node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status cvu [-n node_name]
```

**Table A-125** *srvctl status cvu Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name

**Examples**

An example of this command to check the status of CVU on a single node of a cluster is:

```
$ srvctl status cvu -n crmnode1
```

**srvctl status database**

Displays the status of instances and their services, and where the instances are running.

If you run this command on an Oracle RAC One Node database, then the output shows the status of any online database relocation (active, failed, or inactive), and the source and destination nodes of the relocation.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status database -d db_unique_name [-f] [-v]
```

**Table A-126** *srvctl status database Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-f	Include disabled applications
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

#### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status database -d crm -v
```

## srvctl status diskgroup

Displays the status of a specific disk group on a number of specified nodes.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl status diskgroup` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status diskgroup -g diskgroup_name [-n node_list] [-a] [-v]
```

**Table A-127** *srvctl status diskgroup Options*

Option	Description
-g <i>diskgroup_name</i>	The Oracle ASM disk group name
-n <i>node_list</i>	Comma-delimited list of node names on which to check status of the disk group <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-a	Display enabled status information of disk group
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

#### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status diskgroup -g diskgroup1 -n mynode1,mynode2 -a
```

## srvctl status filesystem

Displays the status of the specified Oracle ACFS volume.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status filesystem -d volume_device_name [-v]
```

**Table A–128** *srvctl status filesystem Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>volume_device_name</i>	The device name of the Oracle ACFS volume
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status filesystem -d /dev/asm/d1volume293
```

**srvctl status gns**

Displays the current state of GNS.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status gns [-n node_name [-v]]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A–129** *srvctl status gns Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Specify a node on which GNS is running for which you want to display the state
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

**srvctl status home**

Displays the status of all the Oracle Restart-managed or Oracle Clusterware-managed resources for the specified Oracle home.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status home` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status home -o Oracle_home -s state_file [-n node_name]
```

**Table A-130** *srvctl status home Options*

Option	Description
-o <i>Oracle_home</i>	The path to the Oracle home for which you want to start the Oracle Restart or Oracle Clusterware-managed resources
-s <i>state_file</i>	The path name the text file that holds the state information generated by this command.
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node where the Oracle home resides. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status home -o /u01/app/oracle/product/11.2.0/db_1 -s ~/state.txt
```

**srvctl status instance**

Displays the status of instances.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status instance -d db_unique_name {-n node_name | -i "instance_name_list" }
[-f] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.

---

**Table A-131** *srvctl status instance Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name <b>Note:</b> Use this option for policy-managed databases
-i " <i>instance_name_list</i> "	Comma-delimited list of instance names <b>Note:</b> Use this option for administrator-managed databases
-f	Include disabled applications
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status instance -d crm -i "crm1,crm2" -v
```

## srvctl status listener

Displays the status of listener resources.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl status listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status listener [-l listener_name] [-n node_name [-v]]
```

**Table A-132** *srvctl status listener Options*

Option	Description
<code>-l listener_name</code>	Name of a listener.  If you do not specify this option, then the listener name defaults to <code>LISTENER</code> .
<code>-n node_name</code>	Name of a cluster node.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only for Oracle Clusterware.
<code>-v</code>	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status listener -n node2
```

## srvctl status nodeapps

Displays the status of node applications.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl status nodeapps` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status nodeapps
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

## srvctl status oc4j

Determines which node is running the Oracle Database QoS Management server.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl status oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status oc4j [-n node_name [-v]]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-133** *srvctl status oc4j Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n node_name</code>	Specify a node on which the Oracle Database QoS Management server is running for which you want to display the state

**Table A-133 (Cont.) *srvctl status oc4j* Options**

Option	Description
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the -v option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the -v option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

## srvctl status ons

Displays the current state of the Oracle Notification Service daemon.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Restart.

---



---

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl status ons` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status ons
```

## srvctl status scan

Displays the status for all SCAN VIPs, by default, or a specific SCAN VIP.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl status scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status scan [-i ordinal_number [-v]]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A-134 *srvctl status scan* Options**

Option	Description
-i <i>ordinal_number</i>	Specify an ordinal number that identifies a specific SCAN VIP. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3. If you do not specify this option, then the utility displays the status of all SCAN VIPs in the cluster.
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the -v option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the -v option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status scan -i 1
```

## srvctl status scan\_listener

Displays the status for all SCAN listeners, by default, or a specific listener.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status scan_listener [-i ordinal_number [-v]]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-135** *srvctl status scan\_listener Options*

Option	Description
<code>-i ordinal_number</code>	Specify an ordinal number that identifies a specific SCAN VIP. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3. If you do not specify this option, then the utility displays the status of all SCAN VIPs in the cluster.
<code>-v</code>	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status scan_listener -i 1
```

**srvctl status server**

Displays the current state of named servers.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status server` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status server -n "server_name_list" [-a]
```

**Table A-136** *srvctl status server Options*

Option	Description
<code>-n "server_name_list"</code>	Comma-delimited list of server names.
<code>-a</code>	Print detailed status information.

**Example**

The following example displays the status of a named server:

```
$ srvctl status server -n server11 -a
```

**srvctl status service**

Displays the status of a service.

For Oracle RAC One Node databases, if there is an online database relocation in process, then the `srvctl status service` command displays the source and destination nodes and the status of the relocation, whether it is active or failed.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status service` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status service -d db_unique_name [-s "service_name_list"] [-f] [-v]
```



**Table A-137** *srvctl status service Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-s " <i>service_name_list</i> "	Comma-delimited list of service names. If you do not specify this option, then the utility lists the status of all the services for the specified database.
-f	Include disabled applications
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

**Example**

The following example displays the status of a named service globally across the clustered database:

```
$ srvctl status service -d crm -s crm -v
```

**srvctl status srvpool**

Displays all server pool names and number of servers (and names of servers if you specify the `-a` option) that are currently assigned to each server pool, if you do not specify the `-g` option. When you specify the `-g` option, the command displays the preceding information for the specified server pool.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status srvpool` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status srvpool [-g server_pool] [-a]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-138** *srvctl status srvpool Options*

Option	Description
-g <i>server_pool</i>	Name of the server pool
-a	Print detailed status information

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status srvpool -g srvpool1 -a
```

**srvctl status vip**

Displays status for a specific VIP or a VIP on a specific node.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl status vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl status vip {-n node_name | -i vip_name} [-v]
```

---

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

**Table A-139** *srvctl status vip Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name
-i <i>vip_name</i>	The VIP name
-v	Displays <code>INTERNAL_STATE</code> , which indicates actions in progress by Oracle Clusterware, such as starting, stopping, or cleaning. If the internal state is <code>STABLE</code> , then the <code>-v</code> option displays nothing because this is the normal state. Additionally, the <code>-v</code> option displays <code>STATE_DETAILS</code> , which may indicate additional information provided by the resource about why it is in its current state.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl status vip -i node1-vip
```

## stop

Stops the Oracle Clusterware applications for the database, all or named instances, all or named service names, listeners, or node level application resources. Only the Oracle Clusterware applications that are starting or running are stopped. Objects running outside of Oracle Clusterware are not stopped.

You should disable an object that you intend to remain stopped after you issue a `srvctl stop` command. See the `srvctl disable` command starting with `srvctl disable database` on page A-40.

---



---

### Notes:

- If the object is stopped and is not disabled, then it can restart as a result of another planned operation. The object does *not* restart as a result of a failure. Oracle recommends that you disable any object that should remain stopped after you issue a `stop` command.
  - When you use the `-f` (force) flag to stop dependent applications, as well as the object, then those dependent applications do not restart when the object is later restarted or after the node fails. You must restart the dependent applications, manually, except for services with AUTOMATIC management policy when a database is stopped.
- 
- 

**Table A-140** *srvctl stop Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl stop asm</code> on page A-110	Stops Oracle ASM instances
<code>srvctl stop cvu</code> on page A-110	Stops the Cluster Verification Utility resource
<code>srvctl stop database</code> on page A-111	Stops the cluster database
<code>srvctl stop diskgroup</code> on page A-111	Stops a specific disk group on a specified number of nodes
<code>srvctl stop filesystem</code> on page A-112	Stops the Oracle ACFS volume resource
<code>srvctl stop gns</code> on page A-112	Stops GNS
<code>srvctl stop home</code> on page A-113	Stops the resources for the specified Oracle home
<code>srvctl stop instance</code> on page A-113	Stops the instance
<code>srvctl stop listener</code> on page A-114	Stops the specified listener or listeners
<code>srvctl stop nodeapps</code> on page A-115	Stops the node-level applications
<code>srvctl stop oc4j</code> on page A-115	Stops the OC4J instance
<code>srvctl stop ons</code> on page A-116	Stops Oracle Notification Service
<code>srvctl stop scan</code> on page A-116	Stops all SCAN VIPs
<code>srvctl stop scan_listener</code> on page A-117	Stops all SCAN listeners

**Table A-140 (Cont.) *srvctl stop* Summary**

Command	Description
<code>srvctl stop service</code> on page A-117	Stops the service
<code>srvctl stop vip</code> on page A-118	Stops VIP resources

## srvctl stop asm

Stops an Oracle ASM instance.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl stop asm` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop asm [-n node_name] [-o stop_options] [-f]
```

#### Notes:

- To manage Oracle ASM on Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) installations, use SRVCTL in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure home for a cluster (Grid home). If you have Oracle RAC or Oracle Database installed, then you cannot use SRVCTL in the database home to manage Oracle ASM.
- You cannot use this command when OCR is stored in Oracle ASM because it will not stop Oracle ASM. To stop Oracle ASM you must shut down Oracle Clusterware.

**Table A-141 *srvctl stop asm* Option**

Option	Description
<code>-n <i>node_name</i></code>	The name of the node on which to stop the Oracle ASM instance. If you do not specify this option, then the utility stops the Oracle ASM instance on every active node in the cluster. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
<code>-o <i>stop_options</i></code>	Options for shutdown command, such as NORMAL, TRANSACTIONAL, IMMEDIATE, or ABORT <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about shutdown options
<code>-f</code>	Use this option to stop disk groups, file systems and databases that depend on Oracle ASM

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop asm -n crmnode1 -i +asm1
```

## srvctl stop cvu

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), this command stops the Cluster Verification Utility (CVU) that is either in the running or starting state.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl stop cvu` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop cvu [-f]
```

The `-f` option is the only option you can use with this command. The `-f` option forces CVU to stop.

### Examples

An example of this command to stop CVU:

```
$ srvctl stop cvu
```

## srvctl stop database

Stops a database, its instances, and its services. When the database later restarts, services with `AUTOMATIC` management start automatically but services with `MANUAL` management policy must be started manually.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl stop database` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop database -d db_unique_name [-o stop_options] [-f]
```

**Table A-142** *srvctl stop database Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d <i>db_unique_name</i></code>	Unique name for the database.
<code>-o <i>stop_options</i></code>	Use this option to specify shutdown command options, such as <code>NORMAL</code> , <code>TRANSACTIONAL</code> , <code>IMMEDIATE</code> , or <code>ABORT</code> <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about shutdown options
<code>-f</code>	This option stops the database, its instances, its services, and any resources that depend on those services

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop database -d crm -o NORMAL
```

## srvctl stop diskgroup

Stops a specific disk group resource on a number of specified nodes.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl stop diskgroup` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop diskgroup -g diskgroup_name [-n node_list] [-f]
```

**Table A-143** *srvctl stop diskgroup Options*

Option	Description
<code>-g <i>diskgroup_name</i></code>	The Oracle ASM disk group name
<code>-n <i>node_list</i></code>	Comma-delimited list of node names on which to stop the disk group <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
<code>-f</code>	This option does not stop the databases that depend on the disk group you are stopping, but instead performs a forceful dismount that may cause those databases to fail

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop diskgroup -g diskgroup1 -n mynode1,mynode2 -f
```

**srvctl stop filesystem**

Stops the Oracle ACFS volume resource.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop filesystem` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop filesystem -d volume_device_name [-n node_name] [-f]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–144** *srvctl stop filesystem Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>volume_device_name</i>	The Oracle ACFS volume device name
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a node If you do not specify this option, then the utility stops the volume resource on all active nodes in the cluster.
-f	This option stops the file system and also stops any databases or other resources that depend on this file system.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop filesystem -d /dev/asm/d1volume293 -f
```

**srvctl stop gns**

Stops GNS for the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop gns` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop gns [-n node_name [-v] [-f]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–145** *srvctl stop gns Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a node on which GNS is running
-v	Verbose output
-f	Force stop

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop gns
```

## srvctl stop home

Stops all the Oracle Restart-managed or Oracle Clusterware-managed resources on the specified Oracle home.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl stop home` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop home -o Oracle_home -s state_file [-t stop_options]
                [-n node_name] [-f]
```

**Table A-146** *srvctl stop home Options*

Option	Description
-o <i>Oracle_home</i>	The path to the Oracle home for which you want to start the Oracle Restart or Oracle Clusterware-managed resources
-s <i>state_file</i>	The path name where you want the state file to be written.
-t <i>stop_options</i>	Shutdown options for the database, such as NORMAL, TRANSACTIONAL, IMMEDIATE, or ABORT  <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about shutdown options
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node where the Oracle home resides.  <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-f	Stop the resources even if errors are reported.

### Example

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop -o /u01/app/oracle/product/11.2.0/db_1 -s ~/state.txt
```

## srvctl stop instance

Stops instances and stops any services running on specified instances, unless you specify the `-f` option. If you specify `-f`, then the services fail over to an available instance when the instance stops.

### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl stop instance` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop instance -d db_unique_name {[-n node_name] | [-i "instance_name_list"]}
                    [-o stop_options] [-f]
```

In Windows, you must enclose the list of comma-delimited instance names in double quotation marks (" ").

**Note:**

- This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC.
- If you run this command on an Oracle RAC One Node database, then the command returns an error instructing you to use the database noun, instead.

**Table A-147** *srvctl stop instance Options*

Option	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a single node <b>Note:</b> Use this option for policy-managed databases.
-i " <i>instance_name</i> "	Comma-delimited instance names enclosed in double quotation marks <b>Note:</b> Use this option for administrator-managed databases.
-o <i>stop_options</i>	Options for shutdown command, such as NORMAL, TRANSACTIONAL LOCAL, IMMEDIATE, or ABORT <b>See Also:</b> <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</i> for more information about shutdown options
-f	This option fails the running services over to another instance.

**Example**

An example of stopping an instance in a policy-managed database is:

```
$ srvctl stop instance -d crm -n node1
```

An example of stopping an instance in an administrator-managed database is:

```
$ srvctl stop instance -d crm -i crm1
```

**srvctl stop listener**

Stops the default listener on the specified *node\_name*, or the listeners represented in a given list of listener names, that are registered with Oracle Clusterware on the given node.

This command can also be used to stop a listener on a noncluster database from the noncluster database home. SRVCTL does not accept the -n option, however, when run from a noncluster database home.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop listener [-n node_name] [-l listener_name_list] [-f]
```



**Table A-148** *srvctl stop listener Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of a single node on which a particular listener runs. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-l <i>listener_name</i>	The name of the listener you want to stop. If you do not specify this option, then the listener name defaults to LISTENER.
-f	Force stop

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop listener -n mynode1
```

**srvctl stop nodeapps**

Stops node-level applications on a node in the cluster.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop nodeapps` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop nodeapps [-n node_name] [-g] [-r] [-f] [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-149** *srvctl stop nodeapps Options*

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	Node name If you do not specify this option, then the utility stops the nodeapps on all active nodes in the cluster.
-g	Stops GSD, only
-r	Relocate VIP <b>Note:</b> If you specify this option, then you must also specify the -n <i>node_name</i> option.
-f	Force stop
-v	Display verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop nodeapps
```

**srvctl stop oc4j**

Stops the OC4J instance.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop oc4j` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop oc4j [-f] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–150** *srvctl stop oc4j Options*

Option	Description
-f	Force stop of the SCAN Listener.
-v	Display verbose output

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop oc4j -f -v
```

## srvctl stop ons

Stops the Oracle Notification Service daemon.

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Restart.

---



---

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop ons` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop ons [-v]
```

The only option for this command is the `-v` option, which specifies that verbose output should be displayed.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop ons -v
```

## srvctl stop scan

Stops all SCAN VIPs, by default, or a specific SCAN VIP identified by *ordinal\_number*.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop scan` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop scan [-i ordinal_number] [-f]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–151** *srvctl stop scan Options*

Option	Description
-i <i>ordinal_number</i>	An ordinal number that identifies which SCAN VIP you want to stop. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3. If you do not specify this option, then the utility stops all the SCAN VIPs.
-f	Force stop of the SCAN VIP.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop scan -i 1
```

**srvctl stop scan\_listener**

Stops all SCAN listeners, by default, or a specific listener identified by *ordinal\_number*.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl start scan_listener` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop scan_listener [-i ordinal_number] [-f]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–152** *srvctl stop scan\_listener Options*

Option	Description
<code>-i ordinal_number</code>	An ordinal number that identifies which SCAN listener you want to stop. The range of values you can specify for this option is 1 to 3.  If you do not specify this option, then the utility stops all the SCAN listeners.
<code>-f</code>	Force stop of the SCAN listener.

**Example**

An example of this command is:

```
$ srvctl stop scan_listener -i 1
```

**srvctl stop service**

Stops one or more services globally across the cluster database, or on the specified instance.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop service` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop service -d db_unique_name [-s "service_name_list"
[-n node_name | -i instance_name] [-f]
```

In Windows, you must enclose the list of comma-delimited service names in double quotation marks (" ").

**Table A–153** *srvctl stop service Options*

Option	Description
<code>-d db_unique_name</code>	Unique name for the database
<code>-s service_name_list</code>	Comma-delimited list of service names enclosed in double quotation marks (" ").  If you do not provide a service name list, then SRVCTL stops all services on the database.

**Table A–153 (Cont.) *srvctl stop service Options***

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	The name of the node on which the services should be stopped. Use this option for policy-managed databases. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-i <i>instance_name</i>	The name of the instance for which the services should be stopped. Use this option for administrator-managed databases. <b>Note:</b> This option is available only with Oracle Clusterware.
-f	Force SRVCTL to stop the service; this causes SRVCTL to disconnect all of the sessions transactionally, requiring the sessions using the service to reconnect and then connect to another instance. <b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the -f option, then sessions already connected to this service stay connected, but new sessions cannot be established to the service.

**Examples**

The following example stops a service globally across a cluster database:

```
$ srvctl stop service -d crm -s crm
```

The following example stops a service on a specified instance:

```
$ srvctl stop service -d crm -s crm -i crm2
```

**srvctl stop vip**

Stops a specific VIP or all VIPs on a specific node, including any VIPs that were relocated due to a failover.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl stop vip` command with the following syntax:

```
srvctl stop vip {-n node_name | -i vip_name} [-r] [-v]
```

---



---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---



---

**Table A–154 *srvctl stop vip Options***

Option	Description
-n <i>node_name</i>	This option stops all VIPs on a specific node, including failed-over VIPs
-i <i>vip_name</i>	This option stops a specific VIP
-r	Relocate VIP <b>Note:</b> You must use the -n <i>node_name</i> option with the -r option.
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

To stop all the VIPs on `mynode1`, including any failed-over VIPs, use the following command:

```
$ srvctl stop vip -n mynode1 -v
```

## unsetenv

The `unsetenv` command unsets values for the environment in the configuration file. It allows users to administer environment configuration for the objects.

**Table A–155** *srvctl unsetenv Command Summary*

Command	Description
<code>srvctl unsetenv asm</code> on page A-119	Unsets the value for one or more Oracle ASM environment variables
<code>srvctl unsetenv database</code> on page A-119	Unsets the value for one or more cluster database environment variables
<code>srvctl unsetenv listener</code> on page A-120	Unsets the value for one or more listener environment variables.
<code>srvctl unsetenv nodeapps</code> on page A-120	Unsets the value for one or more node application environment variables
<code>srvctl unsetenv vip</code> on page A-121	Unsets the value for one or more VIP environment variables

### srvctl unsetenv asm

Unsets the Oracle ASM environment configurations.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl unsetenv asm` command as follows:

```
srvctl unsetenv asm -t "name_list"
```

**Table A–156** *srvctl unsetenv asm Options*

Options	Description
<code>-t "name_list"</code>	Comma-delimited list of the names of environment variables enclosed in double quotation marks (" ")

#### Example

The following example unsets the environment configuration for an Oracle ASM environment variable:

```
$ srvctl unsetenv asm -t CLASSPATH
```

### srvctl unsetenv database

Unsets the cluster database environment configurations.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl unsetenv database` command as follows:

```
srvctl unsetenv database -d db_unique_name -t "name_list"
```

**Table A–157** *srvctl unsetenv database Options*

Options	Description
<code>-d db_unique_name</code>	Unique name for the database

**Table A-157 (Cont.) *srvctl unsetenv database Options***

Options	Description
-t "name_list"	Names of environment variables

**Example**

The following example unsets the environment configuration for a cluster database environment variable:

```
$ srvctl unsetenv database -d crm -t CLASSPATH
```

**srvctl unsetenv listener**

Unsets the environment configuration for a listener.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl unsetenv listener` command as follows:

```
srvctl unsetenv listener [-l listener_name] -t "name_list"
```

**Table A-158 *srvctl unsetenv listener Options***

Options	Description
-l <i>listener_name</i>	Name of the listener.  If you do not specify this option, then the name of the listener defaults to <code>LISTENER</code> .
-t "name_list"	Names of environment variables

**Example**

The following example unsets the environment configuration for the node applications:

```
$ srvctl unsetenv listener -t "TNS_ADMIN"
```

**srvctl unsetenv nodeapps**

Unsets the environment configuration for the node applications.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl unsetenv nodeapps` command as follows:

```
srvctl unsetenv nodeapps -t "name_list" [-v]
```

---

**Note:** This command is only available with Oracle Clusterware.

---

**Table A-159 *srvctl unsetenv nodeapps Options***

Options	Description
-t "name_list"	Names and values of environment variables
-v	Display verbose output

**Example**

The following example unsets the environment configuration for the node applications:

```
$ srvctl unsetenv nodeapps -t "test_var1,test_var2"
```

**srvctl unsetenv vip**

Unsets the environment configuration for the specified cluster VIP.

**Syntax and Options**

Use the `srvctl unsetenv vip` command as follows:

```
srvctl unsetenv vip -i vip_name -t "name_list" [-v]
```

**Table A-160** *srvctl unsetenv vip Options*

Options	Description
-i <i>vip_name</i>	Name of the cluster VIP
-t " <i>name_list</i> "	Comma-delimited list of the names of environment variables
-v	Verbose output

**Example**

The following example unsets the CLASSPATH environment variable for a cluster VIP:

```
$ srvctl unsetenv vip -i crm2-vip -t CLASSPATH
```

## upgrade

Starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.2), the `upgrade` command upgrades the configuration to the version of the software on which it is running.

### srvctl upgrade database

The `srvctl upgrade database` command upgrades the configuration of a database and all of its services to the version of the database home from where this command is run.

#### Syntax and Options

Use the `srvctl upgrade database` command as follows:

```
srvctl upgrade database -d db_unique_name -o Oracle_home
```

**Table A-161** *srvctl upgrade database Options*

Options	Description
-d <i>db_unique_name</i>	Unique name for the database
-o <i>Oracle_home</i>	The path to the ORACLE_HOME



---

---

## Troubleshooting Oracle RAC

This appendix explains how to diagnose problems for Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) components using trace and log files. This section includes the following topics:

- [Where to Find Files for Analyzing Errors](#)
- [Managing Diagnostic Data in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Using Instance-Specific Alert Files in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Enabling Tracing for Java-Based Tools and Utilities in Oracle RAC](#)
- [Resolving Pending Shutdown Issues](#)
- [How to Determine If Oracle RAC Instances Are Using the Private Network](#)

---

---

**Note:** Trace and log files, similar to those generated for Oracle Database with Oracle RAC, are also available for the Oracle Clusterware components. For Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Database stores these under a unified directory log structure.

See the *Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about troubleshooting Oracle Clusterware.

---

---

### Where to Find Files for Analyzing Errors

Oracle Database records information about important events that occur in your Oracle RAC environment in trace files. The trace files for Oracle RAC are the same as those in noncluster Oracle databases. As a best practice, monitor and back up trace files regularly for all instances to preserve their content for future troubleshooting.

Information about ORA-600 errors appear in the `alert_SID.log` file for each instance where `SID` is the instance identifier.

The alert log and all trace files for background and server processes are written to the Automatic Diagnostic Repository, the location of which you can specify with the `DIAGNOSTIC_DEST` initialization parameter. For example:

```
diagnostic_dest=/oracle/11.1/diag/rdbms/rac/RAC2/trace
```

Oracle Database creates a different trace file for each background thread. Oracle RAC background threads use trace files to record database operations and database errors. These trace logs help troubleshoot and also enable Oracle Support to more efficiently debug **cluster database** configuration problems. The names of trace files are operating system specific, but each file usually includes the name of the process writing the file (such as LGWR and RECO). For Linux, UNIX, and Windows systems, trace files for

the background processes are named *SID\_process\_name\_process\_identifier.trc*.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* and *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about monitoring errors and alerts in trace files

Trace files are also created for user processes if you set the `DIAGNOSTIC_DEST` initialization parameter. User process trace file names have the format *SID\_ora\_process\_identifier/thread\_identifier.trc*, where *process\_identifier* is a 5-digit number indicating the process identifier (PID) on Linux and UNIX systems, and *thread\_identifier* is the thread identifier on Windows systems.

## Managing Diagnostic Data in Oracle RAC

Problems that span Oracle RAC instances can be the most difficult types of problems to diagnose. For example, you may need to correlate the trace files from across multiple instances, and merge the trace files. Oracle Database 11g includes an advanced fault diagnosability infrastructure for collecting and managing diagnostic data, and uses the Automatic Diagnostic Repository (ADR) file-based repository for storing the database diagnostic data. When you create the ADR base on a shared disk, you can place ADR homes for all instances of the same Oracle RAC database under the same ADR Base. With shared storage:

- You can use the ADRCI command-line tool to correlate diagnostics across all instances.

ADRCI is a command-line tool that enables you to view diagnostic data in the ADR and package incident and problem information into a zip file for transmission to Oracle Support. The diagnostic data includes incident and problem descriptions, trace files, dumps, health monitor reports, alert log entries, and so on.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for information about using ADRCI

- You can use the Data Recovery Advisor to help diagnose and repair corrupted data blocks, corrupted or missing files, and other data failures.

The Data Recovery Advisor is an Oracle Database infrastructure that automatically diagnoses persistent data failures, presents repair options, and repairs problems at your request.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about managing diagnostic data

## Using Instance-Specific Alert Files in Oracle RAC

Each instance in an Oracle RAC database has one alert file. The alert file for each instance, *alert.SID.log*, contains important information about error messages and exceptions that occur during database operations. Information is appended to the alert file each time you start the instance. All process threads can write to the alert file for the instance.

The *alert\_SID.log* file is in the directory specified by the `DIAGNOSTIC_DEST` initialization parameter.

## Enabling Tracing for Java-Based Tools and Utilities in Oracle RAC

All Java-based tools and utilities that are available in Oracle RAC are called by executing scripts of the same name as the tool or utility. This includes the Cluster Verification Utility (CVU), Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA), the Net Configuration Assistant (NETCA), Server Control Utility (SRVCTL), and the Global Services Daemon (GSD). For example to run DBCA, enter the command `dbca`.

By default, Oracle Database enables traces for DBCA and the Database Upgrade Assistant (DBUA). For the CVU, GSDCTL, and SRVCTL, you can set the `SRVM_TRACE` environment variable to `TRUE` to make Oracle Database generate traces. Oracle Database writes traces to log files. For example, Oracle Database writes traces to log files in `Oracle home/cfgtoollogs/dbca` and `Oracle home/cfgtoollogs/dbua` for DBCA and DBUA, respectively.

## Resolving Pending Shutdown Issues

In some situations a `SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE` may be pending and Oracle Database will not quickly respond to repeated shutdown requests. This is because Oracle Clusterware may be processing a current shutdown request. In such cases, issue a `SHUTDOWN ABORT` using SQL\*Plus for subsequent shutdown requests.

## How to Determine If Oracle RAC Instances Are Using the Private Network

This section describes how to manually determine if Oracle RAC instances are using the private network. However, the best practice for this task is to use Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control graphical user interfaces (GUI) to check the interconnect. Also, see the *Oracle Database 2 Day + Real Application Clusters Guide* for more information about monitoring Oracle RAC using Oracle Enterprise Manager.

With most network protocols, you can issue the `oradebug ipc` command to see the interconnects that the database is using. For example:

```
oradebug setmypid
oradebug ipc
```

These commands dump a trace file to the location specified by the `DIAGNOSTIC_DEST` initialization parameter. The output may look similar to the following:

```
SSKGXPT 0x1a2932c flags SSKGXPT_READPENDING      info for network 0
      socket no 10      IP 172.16.193.1      UDP 43749
      sflags SSKGXPT_WRITESSKGXPT_UP info for network 1
      socket no 0      IP 0.0.0.0      UDP 0...
```

In the example, you can see the database is using IP 172.16.193.1 with a User Datagram Protocol (UDP) protocol. Also, you can issue the `oradebug tracefile_name` command to print the trace location where the output is written.

Additionally, you can query the `V$CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS` view to see information about the private interconnect. For example:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM V$CLUSTER_INTERCONNECTS;
```

NAME	IP_ADDRESS	IS_	SOURCE
eth0	138.2.236.114	NO	Oracle Cluster Repository



---

---

## Oracle RAC Database (RACDB) Plug-in

The Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) RACDB introspection plug-in examines Oracle Clusterware and Oracle RAC Database components and captures their metadata.

This appendix includes the following Oracle RAC Database introspection plug-in information:

- [Versions Supported](#)
- [Oracle RAC Database Introspection Parameters](#)
- [Oracle RAC Database Introspection Password Parameters](#)
- [Reference System Prerequisites](#)
- [Requirements](#)
- [Resulting Artifact Type](#)
- [Wiring](#)
- [Wiring Properties](#)
- [Oracle Database Appliance Properties](#)
- [Extensions of the Plug-in](#)
- [Supported Template Types](#)

### Versions Supported

This plug-in supports Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2).

### Oracle RAC Database Introspection Parameters

[Table C-1](#) lists the introspection parameters for the Oracle RAC Database introspection plug-in:

**Table C-1 Oracle RAC Database Plug-in Introspection Parameters**

Parameter	Description
asmHome	This parameter is required if Oracle Automatic Storage Management is used as the storage type and it is installed in a separate Oracle home.
crsHome	The ORACLE_HOME of the Oracle Clusterware to be introspected.
dbHome	The ORACLE_HOME of the Oracle Database to be introspected.
globalDbName	The global database name of the Oracle Database to be introspected.
shutdownDBOK	This flag that must be passed to approve the database reboot.

**Table C-1 (Cont.) Oracle RAC Database Plug-in Introspection Parameters**

Parameter	Description
sysDBAUserName	Database account with SYSDBA privileges. This parameter is required only if operating system authentication is disabled for the current database.

### Oracle RAC Database Introspection Password Parameters

Table C-2 lists the introspection password parameters for the Oracle RAC Database plug-in. When performing introspection using the `abctl` tool, a prompt is shown to enter values for these parameters. Oracle Virtual Assembly Builder Studio provides password fields for these parameters.

**Table C-2 Oracle RAC Database Plug-in Introspection Parameters (Prompted During Introspection)**

Parameter	Description
rootPassword	The <code>rootPassword</code> parameter is required only if you want to change the permissions of the <code>ORACLE_HOME</code> files to make capturing of file sets possible.
sysDBAPassword	Password for the <code>sysDBAUserName</code> user. This parameter is required only if operating system authentication is disabled for the current database.

### Reference System Prerequisites

The Oracle Clusterware stack must be running during introspection.

### Requirements

The following requirements apply to Oracle RAC Database:

The base system image operating system version must match the version of the reference system.

### Resulting Artifact Type

A single appliance.

### Wiring

For an Oracle RAC Database 11g release 2 (11.2), a single input is created on the Oracle RAC Database appliance.

For an Oracle RAC Database prior to 11g release 2 (11.2), inputs are created on the Oracle RAC Database appliance for each listener or port directive found in the configuration.

### Wiring Properties

For an Oracle RAC Database 11g release 2 (11.2), the input endpoint has two editable properties—`scan-name` and `global-db-name`—and two non-editable properties—`protocol` and `port`—which indicate what sort of output can be connected to the input.

For an Oracle RAC Database prior to 11g release 2 (11.2), the input endpoint has a editable property—`global-db-name`—and two non-editable properties—`protocol` and `port`.

## Oracle Database Appliance Properties

Assemblies with an Oracle Database appliance have user properties (Table C-3) and system properties (Table C-4).

**Table C-3 Oracle RAC Database User Properties**

Name	Type	Req'd	Default	Description
asm-password	String	false	none	Password for SYSASM account.
cluster-name	String	false	new_cluster	Name for cluster (only applies to Oracle Database prior to 11g release 2 (11.2)).
db-account-password	Password	true	none	The password for database accounts SYS, SYSTEM, SYSMAN, and DBSNMP.

**Table C-4 Oracle RAC Database System Properties**

Name	Type	Req'd	Default	Description
CRS_BASE	String	false	none	The Oracle Clusterware base path.
CRS_HOME	String	false	none	The Oracle Clusterware home path.
CRS_OWNER	String	false	grid	The name of the operating system user who will be the owner of the Oracle Clusterware home.
CRS_GROUP	String	false	oinstall	The name of the operating system user group of the owner of the Oracle Clusterware home.
CRS_ORACLE_GROUPS	String	false	oinstall	The OSDBA, OSOPER, and OSASM groups.
VOTING_DISKS_ LOCATIONS	String	false	none	Locations of voting disks (only for file system storage type for Oracle Clusterware files).
VOTING_DISKS_ REDUNDANCY	String	false	none	Voting disks redundancy (only for file system storage type for Oracle Clusterware files).
OCR_DISKS_ LOCATIONS	String	false	none	Locations of Oracle Cluster Registry disks (only for file system storage type for Oracle Clusterware files).
OCR_DISKS_ REDUNDANCY	String	false	none	Oracle Cluster Registry disks redundancy (only for file system storage type for Oracle Clusterware files).
SCAN_PORT	String	false	1521	Port for SCAN listener.
CRS_STORAGE_TYPE	String	false	none	Storage type for Oracle Clusterware files as per reference system.
CRS_VERSION	String	false	none	Version of Oracle Clusterware software on reference system.

**Table C-4 (Cont.) Oracle RAC Database System Properties**

Name	Type	Req'd	Default	Description
CRS_ASM_DISK_GROUP_NAME	String	false	OVMOCRVD	Name of the Oracle ASM disk group storing Oracle Clusterware files.
CRS_ASM_DISCOVERY_STRING	String	false	/dev/raw/ovmocrvd*	Path to discover all data Oracle ASM disks.
CRS_ASM_DISK_GROUP_REDUNDANCY	String	false	NORMAL	Oracle ASM disk group level of redundancy.
CRS_ASM_DISKS	String	false	/dev/raw/ovmocrvd0 , /dev/raw/ovmocrvd1 , /dev/raw/ovmocrvd2	Paths of the disks that belong to Oracle ASM disk group storing Oracle Clusterware files.
ASM_BASE	String	false	none	Oracle ASM ORACLE_BASE path.
ASM_HOME	String	false	none	Oracle ASM ORACLE_HOME path.
ASM_OWNER	String	false	grid	The operating system user who owns the Oracle ASM ORACLE_HOME.
DATA_ASM_DISCOVERY_STRING	String	false	/dev/raw/asm*	Path to discover all data Oracle ASM disks.
DATA_ASM_DISK_GROUP_NAME	String	false	none	Name of the data Oracle ASM disk group.
DATA_ASM_DISK_GROUP_REDUNDANCY	String	false	none	Data Oracle ASM disk group level of redundancy.
DATA_ASM_DISKS	String	false	none	Paths of the disks that belong to data Oracle ASM disk group.
RECOVERY_ASM_DISCOVERY_STRING	String	false	/dev/raw/asm*	Path to discover all recovery Oracle ASM disks.
RECOVERY_ASM_DISK_GROUP_NAME	String	false	none	Name of the recovery Oracle ASM disk group.
RECOVERY_ASM_DISK_GROUP_REDUNDANCY	String	false	none	Recovery Oracle ASM disk group level of redundancy.
RECOVERY_ASM_DISKS	String	false	none	Paths of the disks that belong to the recovery Oracle ASM disk group.
RECOVERY_STORAGE_TYPE	String	false	none	Storage type for database recovery.
DATA_STORAGE_TYPE	String	false	none	Storage type for database as per reference system.
RECOVERY_STORAGE_TYPE	String	false	none	Storage type for database recovery files as per reference system.
DB_USING_ASM	String	false	none	Set to <i>true</i> if either the database or recovery files are stored on Oracle ASM as per reference system.



---

**Table C-4 (Cont.) Oracle RAC Database System Properties**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Req'd</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Description</b>
DB_VERSION	String	false	none	Version of Oracle Database software on reference system.

**Extensions of the Plug-in**

None.

**Supported Template Types**

The supported template type is Oracle Enterprise Linux.



---

---

## Oracle RAC Configuration Audit Tool

This appendix includes the information required to run and maintain the Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) Configuration Audit Tool (RACcheck). The tool is designed to audit various important configuration settings within an Oracle RAC system.

---

---

**Note:** if you have not upgraded to Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.4), which includes RACcheck, or to get the latest version of RACcheck (to which Oracle adds checks every three months), then you can download RACcheck from the following URL:

<https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=1268927.1>

---

---

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [RACcheck Features](#)
- [RACcheck Usage](#)
- [Using RACcheck](#)
- [Troubleshooting RACcheck](#)

## RACcheck Features

Use RACcheck to audit configuration settings within the following categories:

- Operating system kernel parameters
- Operating system packages and other operating system configuration settings important to Oracle RAC
- Oracle Grid Infrastructure
- Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM)
- Oracle Database
- Database parameters and other database configuration settings important to Oracle RAC
- Upgrade readiness assessment to Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2)

You can use RACcheck with Oracle RAC database servers, Oracle RAC databases (10g release 2 (10.2), 11g release 1 (11.1), and 11g release 2 (11.2)), Oracle Grid Infrastructure, hardware, and operating system and Oracle RAC software. You can also use RACcheck with nonclustered Oracle Databases (10g release 2 (10.2), 11g release 1 (11.1), and 11g release 2 (11.2)), Oracle Restart systems, and Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node configurations.

You can use RACcheck on the following platforms:

- Intel Linux<sup>1</sup> (Enterprise Linux, RedHat and SuSE 9,10, 11)
- Oracle Solaris SPARC (Solaris 10 and 11)
- Oracle Solaris x86-64 (Solaris 10 and 11)
- IBM AIX<sup>2</sup>
- HP-UX<sup>2</sup>

Other RACcheck features include:

- RACcheck is nonintrusive and does not change anything in the environment, except as follows:
  - SSH user equivalence for the Oracle Database software owner is assumed to be configured among all the database servers being audited so that RACcheck can run commands on remote database server nodes. If RACcheck determines that SSH user equivalence is not configured, then the tool gives you the option to set up user equivalence either temporarily or permanently. If you choose to set up SSH user equivalence temporarily, then, at the end of the session, RACcheck removes the keys to restore the system to its original SSH user equivalence state. If you want to configure SSH user equivalence outside of RACcheck (if it is not already configured), then consult My Oracle Support note 372795.1 at the following URL:

<https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=372795.1>

---

<sup>1</sup> Oracle does not plan to support Linux Itanium

<sup>2</sup> Requires BASH Shell 3.2 or higher to be installed on the systems

---



---

**Note:** SSH user equivalence is always required for the Oracle Database software installation owner, but is *not* required for Oracle Grid Infrastructure configurations.

---



---

- RACcheck creates a number of small output files into which the data necessary to perform the assessment is collected.
- RACcheck creates and executes some scripts dynamically in order to accomplish some of the data collection.
- RACcheck deletes any temporary files that are created and not needed as part of the collection.
- RACcheck interrogates the system to determine the status of the Oracle stack components (specifically, Oracle Grid Infrastructure, Oracle Database, Oracle RAC, and so on) and whether they are installed and whether they are running. Depending upon the status of each component, RACcheck runs the appropriate collections and audit checks.

**See Also:** Troubleshooting if, because of local environmental configuration, RACcheck is unable to properly determine the necessary environmental information

- RACcheck automatically runs a process in the background to monitor command execution progress. If, for any reason, one of the commands run by RACcheck should hang or take longer to run than anticipated, then this monitor process stops the command after a configurable amount of time, so that RACcheck can continue to run. If that happens, then RACcheck skips the collection or command that was hung and a notation is made in the log.

**See Also:** ["Runtime Command Timeouts"](#) on page D-16 to adjust the `RAT_TIMEOUT` and `RAT_ROOT_TIMEOUT` parameters if the default timeout duration is too short

- If the RACcheck driver files are older than 90 days, then the driver files are considered to be stale and you will be notified of a stale driver file.
- When RACcheck completes the collection and analysis, it produces a detailed HTML formatted report that contains benefit, impact, risk, and action and repair information. The report may also reference publicly available documents with additional information about the problem and its resolution. RACcheck also produces a compressed output file. This output file can be provided to My Oracle Support for further analysis, if necessary.
- The results of the audit checks can be optionally uploaded into database tables for reporting purposes.
- In some cases, you may want to stage RACcheck on a shared file system, so that various systems can access it, while still being maintained in a single location, rather than copying to each cluster on which it may be used. The default behavior of RACcheck is to create a subdirectory and its output files in the location where the it is staged. If that staging area is a read-only file system or if you would like the output to be created elsewhere, then there is an environment variable that you can use for that purpose. You can configure the `RAT_OUTPUT` parameter to any valid writable location.

---

## RACcheck Usage

When using RACcheck, consider the following:

- Run RACcheck on Oracle Database servers as the Oracle Database software owner (`oracle`).
- RACcheck includes a daemon that enables RACcheck to run noninteractively (in batch or silent mode) at regular intervals.

**See Also:** ["Running RACcheck Using the RACcheck Daemon"](#) on page D-10

- Oracle recommends that you install and run RACcheck from a local file system on a single database server to provide the best performance.
- To maximize its usefulness, run RACcheck when Oracle Grid Infrastructure and at least one database are up and running.
- Oracle recommends that you run RACcheck during times of least load on the system.
- To avoid possible problems running RACcheck from terminal sessions on a network attached workstation or laptop, consider running the tool using VNC so that, if there is a network interruption, then the tool will continue to run until it is finished.
- If RACcheck fails for some reason, then you can run it again from the beginning. RACcheck does not resume from the point of failure.
- You can run RACcheck on all nodes, simultaneously. To take advantage of the root-specific checks while still running the tool in parallel, use the `EXPECT` utility installed on the system or configure `sudo` for RACcheck to use.

To configure `sudo`, use the `visudo` command to add the following line to the `sudoers` file on each of the cluster nodes, replacing `owner` with the user that installed the database software:

```
owner ALL=(root) NOPASSWD:/tmp/root_raccheck.sh
```

- Ensure that permissions for RACcheck are `755 (-rwxr-xr-x)`. If the permissions are not set appropriately, then run the following command:

```
$ chmod 755 raccheck
```

This section includes the following topics:

- [When to Use RACcheck](#)
- [Options to Use with RACcheck](#)
- [Guidelines for Using RACcheck](#)
- [How RACcheck Handles Passwords](#)

### When to Use RACcheck

You can use RACcheck at any time but Oracle recommends that you use RACcheck:

- After initially deploying Oracle RAC
- Before and after any planned system maintenance

- At least once every 90 days

## Options to Use with RACcheck

Table D-1 lists and describes options you can use with RACcheck.

**Table D-1 RACcheck Options**

Option	Description
-a	Specify this option to perform both best practice and recommended patch checks. This is the default method in which RACcheck runs.
-b	Specify this option to run a best practice check, only.
-p	Specify this option to run a recommended patch check, only.
-v	Specify this option to display the version of RACcheck currently in use.
-m	Specify this option to exclude checks for maximum availability architecture (MAA) scorecard.  The MAA scorecard is the findings related to a set of maximum availability architecture best practices and shows how prepared your system is for various types of failures that can occur in an Oracle RAC environment.  RACcheck shows the MAA scorecard, because Oracle considers MAA to be an important concept and set of features. However, it is most helpful when you have implemented Oracle Data Guard standby databases.
-u	Use this option to run RACcheck to check pre-upgrade or post-upgrade best practices. You must use <code>-o pre</code> or <code>-o post</code> with the <code>-u</code> option. For example:  <code>\$ raccheck -u -o pre</code>
-o	Use this option to add an argument to an option. Arguments include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>verbose</code>: If you specify this argument, then RACcheck prints checks that pass. The default behavior is that RACcheck only prints checks that fail, issue warnings, or contain other information.</li> <li>■ <code>pre</code>: Specify this argument when you want RACcheck to check pre-upgrade best practices (to be used with the <code>-u</code> option).</li> <li>■ <code>post</code>: Specify this argument when you want RACcheck to check post-upgrade best practices (to be used with the <code>-u</code> option).</li> </ul>
-f	Use this option to perform checks offline on data already collected from the system.
-clusternodes	Use this option to enter a comma-delimited list of node names on which to run RACcheck.  RACcheck requires this option only when you want to run the tool on subset of cluster nodes, or when RACcheck fails to retrieve cluster node information from the environment using <code>olsnodes</code> .
-localonly	Use this option to run RACcheck only on the local node.
-nopass	Use this option to omit checks from the HTML report that have passed.

**Table D-1 (Cont.) RACcheck Options**

Option	Description
-diff <i>report_1 report_2</i> [-outfile <i>output_HTML</i> ]	<p>Use this option along with two RACcheck reports, in the form of a directory name, a zip file, or an HTML report, to compare them to each other. Optionally, you can use the <code>-outfile</code> option to direct the output of the comparison to HTML.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To limit security vulnerabilities, Oracle recommends that you set the permissions of the output directory as restrictive as possible. The output directory can contain sensitive configuration information and, when no other mechanism is available, temporary data collection files.</p> <p><b>See Also:</b> <a href="#">"Comparing Reports with RACcheck"</a> on page D-12 for more information</p>
-daemon	Use this option to run RACcheck commands only if the RACcheck daemon is running.
-nodaemon	Use this option if you do not want to use the RACcheck daemon to run the command.
-d <i>command</i>	<p>Use this option with commands to control the RACcheck daemon. Commands include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <code>start</code>: Starts the RACcheck daemon</li> <li>▪ <code>stop</code>: Stops the RACcheck daemon</li> <li>▪ <code>status</code>: Obtains the current status of the RACcheck daemon</li> <li>▪ <code>nextautorun</code>: When the RACcheck daemon is running, use this command to obtain the time of the next scheduled run of RACcheck, according to the value of the <code>AUTORUN_INTERVAL</code> configuration parameter, as described in <a href="#">"Running RACcheck Using the RACcheck Daemon"</a> on page D-10.</li> </ul>
-set " <i>parameter_1=value_1</i> <i>;parameter_2=value_2...</i> "	Use this option to set the RACcheck configuration parameters listed in <a href="#">"Running RACcheck Using the RACcheck Daemon"</a> on page D-10.
-get <i>parameter</i>   all	Specify this option to obtain the value of a specific RACcheck configuration parameter, or the value of all RACcheck configuration parameters.
-profile <i>profile_name</i>	<p>Use this option to configure RACcheck to run a specific profile. Supported profiles include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <code>asm</code>: This profile checks Oracle ASM configuration</li> <li>▪ <code>clusterware</code>: This profile checks Oracle Clusterware (part of Oracle Grid Infrastructure) configuration</li> <li>▪ <code>dba</code>: This profile checks the database administrator configuration</li> <li>▪ <code>sysadmin</code>: This profile checks the system administrator configuration</li> </ul>
-h	Use this option to display RACcheck usage

## Guidelines for Using RACcheck

If the `oracle` user exists on the system and all the Oracle components are installed or running (including Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Database, and Oracle ASM), then Oracle recommends that you run RACcheck as the `oracle` (or Oracle Database software installation owner) user. RACcheck does perform some audit checks that require root privileges, in which case, if `sudo` is not configured or the `root` password is not available, then you can configure RACcheck to skip these audit checks by selecting option 3 on the `root` password menu.



RACcheck can run as `root` only if you specify the `sysadmin` profile using the `raccheck -profile sysadmin` command. In this case, RACcheck skips all database-related best practices but you must set up SSH user equivalence for the `root` user among cluster nodes, so RACcheck will not prompt you for the `root` password.

---

---

**Note:** Typically, when you run RACcheck as `oracle`, operating system authentication is already set up for the Oracle Database software owner and RACcheck will not require the database login credentials.

---

---

**See Also:**

- For instructions about configuring SSH user equivalence, go to the following URL:  
<https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=372795.1>
- "Database Login Problems" on page D-18 if you want to run RACcheck as another user, and additional information on how to verify database authentication before running the tool

## How RACcheck Handles Passwords

RACcheck does not store or save any passwords. The handling of `root` passwords depends on whether the `expect` utility is installed.

If the `expect` utility is not installed (which is the default for all platforms, except Oracle Enterprise Linux 5), then the `root` password prompts are deferred and you must closely monitor RACcheck as it runs and enter the passwords, as prompted, once for each node of the cluster. Otherwise, RACcheck uses the `expect` utility for interactive password automation. You can install the `expect` utility on other Linux distributions in order to automate interactive password handling.

When RACcheck finds the `expect` utility, the tool gathers the `root` passwords at the beginning of the process, and the `expect` utility will supply them, when needed, at the `root` password prompts for each node, so that RACcheck can continue without further input from you.

RACcheck inquires if the `root` password is the same for all database servers of the cluster. If you respond affirmatively (which is the default), then you will be prompted for the `root` password once and it will be validated and subsequently used for all nodes in the cluster. If you respond negatively (that the `root` password is not the same for all nodes in the cluster), then RACcheck will prompt for and validate the `root` password for each individual node in the cluster.

Additionally, when RACcheck finds the `expect` utility, when validating the `root` passwords, you have three opportunities to type the correct password. If you fail to enter the correct password after three attempts, then RACcheck proceeds to the next node and displays a message stating that the password is still incorrect and that the checks dependent upon data collected from that node will be skipped. At this point, you can either cancel running RACcheck and obtain the correct `root` password, or continue with the understanding that important data may be missing from the report.

When RACcheck uses the `expect` utility, it is possible that, between the time that the `root` passwords are entered and validated and nodes for those passwords are reached, that the passwords could have been changed. In that case, RACcheck displays a message stating that the password must have been changed and that the collections for

that node will be skipped, which means the checks for that node will also be skipped. You can either allow RACcheck to continue to completion knowing that data and checks will be skipped or cancel running RACcheck and resolve the problem.

If RACcheck skips any checks for any reason, then the tool reports in the log any checks that were skipped and on which nodes, when it finishes running.

---

## Using RACcheck

You can run RACcheck interactively or silently, or you can run RACcheck automatically at specified intervals. To run RACcheck interactively, run the following command:

```
$ raccheck
```

RACcheck prompts you through the auditing process.

---

---

**Note:** The time it takes RACcheck to run varies based on factors such as the number of nodes in a cluster, CPU load, and network latency. Typically, the entire process should only take five minutes, or so, for each node. This is just a general guideline but if it takes substantially more time than that, then there may be some other problem that should be investigated.

---

---

This section includes the following topics:

- [Running RACcheck in Silent Mode without the RACcheck Daemon](#)
- [Running RACcheck Using the RACcheck Daemon](#)
- [Comparing Reports with RACcheck](#)
- [Running RACcheck to Determine Upgrade Readiness](#)
- [Maintaining the Output File](#)
- [Multiple Database Support](#)
- [Uploading RACcheck Results and Patches to a Database for Reporting](#)
- [Excluding Audit Checks](#)

### Running RACcheck in Silent Mode without the RACcheck Daemon

To run RACcheck in silent mode:

1. You must first configure SSH user equivalence. For instructions about configuring SSH user equivalence, go to the following URL:

<https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=372795>  
.1

---

---

**Note:** SSH user equivalence is *only* necessary if your system is running Oracle Grid Infrastructure to support a cluster. This is *not* required for nonclustered databases or Oracle Restart configurations.

---

---

2. RACcheck requires `root` access to run the `root`-specific checks. To facilitate these checks in silent mode, you must configure passwordless `sudo` and use the `-s` option to run RACcheck.

---



---

**Note:** If `sudo` is not allowed within your environment, you can skip this step. In this case, you can still run RACcheck silently without the root-specific checks using the `-S` option. Eliminating the root-specific checks limits the capabilities of RACcheck and Oracle does not recommend this method of running RACcheck.

---



---

3. To run RACcheck silently, you must specify one of the following arguments, depending on your configuration:
  - `-s`: Use this option to run RACcheck unattended when the `oracle` user can `sudo` to `root` without a password
  - `-S`: Use this option to run RACcheck unattended without the `root` password and make no `root`-privileged collections or audits

---



---

**Note:** Oracle recommends that you implement passwordless `sudo` to `root` for `/tmp/root_raccheck.sh` for full functionality of RACcheck, as described in "[RACcheck Usage](#)" on page D-4.

---



---

RACcheck runs in silent mode using the information it gathers from Oracle Clusterware. When RACcheck runs in silent mode, it performs data collection and audit checks on all databases running on the local node that are defined as Oracle Clusterware resources.

## Running RACcheck Using the RACcheck Daemon

To use the RACcheck daemon, you must first configure the daemon parameters by running the `raccheck -set parameter=value` command. You can set the following configuration parameters:

- `AUTORUN_INTERVAL`: This parameter defines the time interval at which RACcheck runs, specified in days or hours (`d | h`). For example:

```
$ raccheck -set AUTORUN_INTERVAL=1d
```

The preceding command configures the RACcheck daemon to run every day. If you set this parameter to 0, then the RACcheck daemon will not run automatically. This is the default setting for this parameter.

- `AUTORUN_FLAGS`: This parameter defines how RACcheck runs, using the flags listed in [Table D-1](#). For example:

```
$ raccheck -set "AUTORUN_INTERVAL=12h;AUTORUN_FLAGS=-profile sysadmin"
```

The preceding command configures RACcheck to run the `sysadmin` profile every 12 hours.

- `PASSWORD_CHECK_INTERVAL`: This parameter defines the frequency (specified in hours) with which the running daemon validates the passwords entered when the daemon starts. If the daemon encounters an invalid password (due to a password change), then the daemon stops running and enters a notification in the daemon log (`raccheck_daemon.log`), and also sends an email, if configured to do so. For example:

```
$ raccheck -set PASSWORD_CHECK_INTERVAL=1
```

The preceding command validates passwords every hour.

- NOTIFICATION\_EMAIL: This parameter configures the RACcheck daemon to email notifications to a specific person. For example:

```
$ raccheck -set NOTIFICATION_EMAIL=firstname.lastname@company.com
```

---

**Note:** You can configure more than one parameter in a single command by providing each parameter in a semi-colon delimited list enclosed in double quotation marks (" "). For example, the following command configures the RACcheck daemon to run every day in verbose mode, specifies an email address for daemon notices, and checks for changed passwords hourly:

```
$ raccheck -set "AUTORUN_INTERVAL=1d;AUTORUN_FLAGS= -o verbose;
NOTIFICATION_EMAIL=firstname.lastname@company.com;PASSWORD_CHECK_
INTERVAL=1"
```

---

To obtain the current configuration of all of the parameters of the RACcheck daemon, run the following command:

```
$ raccheck -get all
```

The preceding command returns output similar to the following:

```
AUTORUN_INTERVAL = 1d
AUTORUN_FLAGS = -o verbose
NOTIFICATION_EMAIL = firstname.lastname@company.com
PASSWORD_CHECK_INTERVAL = 1
```

You can set or modify RACcheck parameters after the RACcheck daemon has started.

---

**Note:** Oracle recommends that, at a minimum, you configure the NOTIFICATION\_EMAIL and PASSWORD\_CHECK\_INTERVAL parameters.

---

To start the RACcheck daemon, run the following command:

```
$ raccheck -d start
```

RACcheck launches an interactive graphical user interface to collect the required information and start the daemon process.

You can run RACcheck on demand while the RACcheck daemon is running by entering `raccheck` on the command line without any arguments as the user that started the daemon process from the same directory from which you launched the RACcheck daemon. Running RACcheck this way is non-interactive, because the daemon passes parameters at all the prompts, and produces output on the screen similar to that which RACcheck produces when running interactively.

---

**Note:** If the RACcheck daemon is running and want to run RACcheck interactively, then run the following command:

```
$ raccheck -nodaemon
```

---

### RACcheck Daemon Usage Notes

- If you start the RACcheck daemon, then no other user can use the RACcheck daemon to run RACcheck in non-interactive mode. To use the RACcheck daemon,

you must be the same user you must run RACcheck on demand from the same directory where you started daemon.

- Once you start the RACcheck daemon, it continues to run in the background until either you explicitly stop the daemon (using the `raccheck -d stop` command) or one of the following conditions is met:
  - The server on which the daemon is running is rebooted or stops.
  - If a password is changed on any node, then the daemon stops and an entry is placed in `raccheck_daemon.log`. Additionally, RACcheck sends an email to address entered in the `NOTIFICATION_EMAIL` configuration parameter. Configure the `PASSWORD_CHECK_INTERVAL` configuration parameter to ensure validity of the required passwords.
  - If the RACcheck script has changed or has been replaced with a new script since you started daemon, then any further attempts to run RACcheck on demand, as well as auto run will not succeed. You will have to restart daemon with new script for future run.
- If the system configuration has changed (such as nodes or instances being added or deleted), then you must restart the RACcheck daemon for the configuration changes to be recognized.

## Comparing Reports with RACcheck

You can use RACcheck to compare results from two RACcheck reports. You can use the results of comparisons to monitor trends and best practice changes over time or after planned maintenance presented in a user-friendly HTML report. Ensure that the RACcheck reports in the RACcheck output directories, .zip output files, or HTML reports are accessible.

To compare two RACcheck reports, run the following command:

```
$ raccheck -diff report_1 report_2
```

Specify the names of the two report files you want to compare. When RACcheck finishes comparing the two files, the utility prints a summary and provides a location of the comparison report for viewing.

## Running RACcheck to Determine Upgrade Readiness

You can use RACcheck to obtain an automated upgrade readiness assessment to help facilitate upgrade planning for Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware. Use RACcheck to automate many of the manual pre- and post-upgrade checks detailed in the following upgrade-related documents:

- Oracle Database Upgrade Guide
- Oracle Grid Infrastructure Installation Guide for your platform
- The following My Oracle Support notes:
  - <https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=785351.1>
  - <https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=837570.1>
  - <https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=1363369.1>

- <https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=810394.1>

You can run RACcheck before and after upgrading your software. Run the pre-upgrade check during the planning phase of the upgrade process to ensure that enough time is available to resolve any potential issues prior to the actual upgrade process. Run the post-upgrade check to ensure the health of Oracle Grid Infrastructure and Oracle Database. Following is a summary of what you can expect from RACcheck upgrade checks:

- When performing pre-upgrade checks, RACcheck detects all databases registered with Oracle Clusterware and produces a list of databases on which it will perform pre-upgrade checks. If any databases of the most current version are detected, then RACcheck skips them and will not perform any checks.
- When performing post-upgrade checks, RACcheck detects all databases registered with Oracle Clusterware and produces a list of databases on which it will perform post-upgrade checks. If RACcheck detects any databases versions preceding Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2.0.3), then RACcheck skips them and will not perform any checks.
- When performing either pre- or post-upgrade checks, RACcheck checks both Oracle Clusterware and the operating system.
- When RACcheck finishes its checks, the tool produces a report in HTML format that contains the findings and links to additional details and information.

Use the following syntax to run RACcheck upgrade checks:

```
$ raccheck -u -o pre | post
```

## Maintaining the Output File

When you run RACcheck, the tool creates a subdirectory using a naming convention that begins with "raccheck" and includes a date and time (such as, `raccheck_SIEBXL_072613_141001`), and a zip file that contains the contents of the subdirectory (such as, `raccheck_SIEBXL_072611_141001.zip`) at the same level on the file system as RACcheck, itself. The total size of the subdirectory and zip file should be less than 5 MB on the file system. The exact varies depending upon how many nodes and how many databases there are in the system. While Oracle recommends that you run RACcheck when there is the least load on the system, over time, the number of files will build up and you must maintain and clean out older files, subdirectories, or both.

## Multiple Database Support

Oracle designed RACcheck to support multiple databases. The tool presents a list of running databases, which are registered in the Oracle Grid Infrastructure. You can choose one, all, or enter a comma-delimited list of numbers that designate the listed databases. You do not have to install the tool on multiple nodes to check database instances running on other nodes in the cluster.

RACcheck logs into all databases by using local bequeath connections and assumes the existence of operating system authentication in the database for the user running the tool. In some configurations, there could be multiple database homes all owned by the same operating system user (such as `oracle`), while in other configurations, there could be any number of database homes all owned by different operating system users.

In the former case, run RACcheck as `oracle`. In the latter case, you may want to deploy RACcheck on the home with the greatest number of databases to obtain the

most information possible, in which case install RACcheck as the owner of that home. To scan the other databases, RACcheck must be installed and run under each database home user account.

## Uploading RACcheck Results and Patches to a Database for Reporting

Oracle supports uploading the results of audit checks done by RACcheck or the list of installed patches into database tables for use as a source of data for reporting.

To take advantage of this optional feature, you must set a number of environment variables in the runtime environment, and you must create two tables to receive the data: one for the audit check results and another for the patches installed on the systems.

To create a results table called `auditcheck_result`, run the following DDL command:

```
create table
  auditcheck_result
  (
    COLLECTION_DATE TIMESTAMP,
    CHECK_NAME VARCHAR2(256),
    PARAM_NAME VARCHAR2(256),
    STATUS VARCHAR2(256),
    STATUS_MESSAGE VARCHAR2(256),
    ACTUAL_VALUE VARCHAR2(256),
    RECOMMENDED_VALUE VARCHAR2(256),
    COMPARISON_OPERATOR VARCHAR2(256),
    HOSTNAME VARCHAR2(256),
    INSTANCE_NAME VARCHAR2(256),
    CHECK_TYPE VARCHAR2(256),
    DB_PLATFORM VARCHAR2(256),
    OS_DISTRO VARCHAR2(256),
    OS_KERNEL VARCHAR2(256),
    OS_VERSION NUMBER,
    DB_VERSION VARCHAR2(256),
    CLUSTER_NAME VARCHAR2(256),
    DB_NAME VARCHAR2(256),
    ERROR_TEXT VARCHAR2(256)
    CHECK_ID VARCHAR2(40),
    NEEDS_RUNNING VARCHAR2(100),
    MODULES VARCHAR2(4000),
    DATABASE_ROLE VARCHAR2(100),
    CLUSTERWARE_VERSION VARCHAR2(100),
    GLOBAL_NAME VARCHAR2(256)
  );
```

To create a table for patches called `auditcheck_patch_result`, run the following DDL command:

```
create table
  auditcheck_patch_result
  ( COLLECTION_DATE      TIMESTAMP(6),
    HOSTNAME             VARCHAR2(256),
    ORACLE_HOME_TYPE     VARCHAR2(256),
    ORACLE_HOME_PATH     VARCHAR2(256),
    ORACLE_HOME_VERSION  VARCHAR2(256),
    PATCH_NUMBER         NUMBER,
    CLUSTER_NAME         VARCHAR2(256),
    DESCRIPTION          VARCHAR2(256),
    PATCH_TYPE           VARCHAR2(128),
    APPLIED              NUMBER,
```



```

RECOMMENDED NUMBER
);

```

Set the following environment variables (shown with example values):

```

$ export RAT_UPLOAD_CONNECT_STRING="(DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)
(HOST = bonanza)(PORT = 1521)) (LOAD_BALANCE = yes) (CONNECT_DATA = (SERVER =
DEDICATED) (SERVICE_NAME = orcl)))"
$ export RAT_UPLOAD_TABLE=auditcheck_result (name must match that of the table
created for the purpose)
$ export RAT_PATCH_UPLOAD_TABLE=auditcheck_patch_result (name must match the name
of the table created for the purpose)
$ export RAT_UPLOAD_USER=auditcheck (schema owner of the table created for the
purpose)
$ export RAT_UPLOAD_PASSWORD=auditcheck (password for the schema owner)
$ export RAT_UPLOAD_ORACLE_HOME=path_of_database_home (optional, alternate home
containing sqlplus that you want to use for connecting in case it is not the
current $ORACLE_HOME as derived by RACcheck from the environment)

```

---

**Note:** Use the fully-qualified address (as shown in the preceding example) for the connect string rather than an alias from the `tnsnames.ora` file, so that it is not necessary to rely on `tnsnames.ora` file name resolution on all the servers where RACcheck might run. You must use double quotation marks (" ").

---

When you set the first four environment variables (shown in the preceding example) in the runtime environment, RACcheck assumes that the intent is to upload the data into the tables at the end of the process, and it attempts to upload the data. This process requires that you properly set the environment, that is, that the connect string is reachable, the user name and password are correct, and the table name is correct. If RACcheck cannot connect to the database, then a message to that effect will be written to the log. If the `RAT_UPLOAD_ORACLE_HOME` variable is set, then RACcheck invokes SQL\*Plus from that home rather than attempting to invoke SQL\*Plus from the current Oracle home derived by RACcheck. If you do not set any of the first four environment variables, then RACcheck will not attempt to upload the data.

## Excluding Audit Checks

Optionally, you can exclude one or more audit checks after the first run of RACcheck, as follows:

1. Create a text file named `excluded_check_ids.txt` in the same directory as the RACcheck script and driver files.
2. Open the `raccheck.log` file, which is located in the output directory of the previous run of the tool.
3. Search for the audit checks that you want to exclude in subsequent runs.
4. Note the `CHECK_ID` of the audit checks you want to exclude. The `CHECK_ID` is an alphanumeric string similar to `CHECK_ID = 65E4DC8B76BC4DA6E040E50A1EC03704`. If the audit check block does not contain a `CHECK_ID` line, then you cannot exclude that audit check.
5. Enter the `CHECK_IDS` for the audit checks that you want to exclude in the `excluded_check_ids.txt` file, one `CHECK_ID` per line.
6. Subsequently, when you run RACcheck, before the tool runs an audit check, it checks the `excluded_check_ids.txt` file for any excluded checks and skips them.

## Troubleshooting RACcheck

This section discusses various problems you may encounter when running RACcheck and how to solve them, included in the following sections:

- [Runtime Command Timeouts](#)
- [The raccheck\\_error.log File Contains Errors](#)
- [Remote root Login Problems](#)
- [Local Environmental Issues](#)
- [Database Login Problems](#)
- [User Profiles](#)

### Runtime Command Timeouts

If any non-root-privileged individual commands timeout before they finish running, then RACcheck stops that process and does not collect the desired data. If this happens, then you can lengthen the timeout by setting the following environment variable in the script execution environment:

```
$ export RAT_TIMEOUT=120
```

The default value for this environment variable is 90 seconds.

RACcheck runs a set of root-privileged data collections, once for each node in the cluster. If collections timeout before the data can be collected, then RACcheck stops that process and does not collect the desired data. If this happens, then you can lengthen the timeout by setting the following environment variable in the script execution environment:

```
$ export RAT_ROOT_TIMEOUT=600
```

The default value for this environment variable is 300 seconds.

---

---

**Note:** If you encounter either of these timeouts, then Oracle recommends that you determine the cause of the delay and correct it, and that you run RACcheck during times of least load on the system.

---

---

### The raccheck\_error.log File Contains Errors

You can ignore the following errors that do appear in the raccheck\_error.log file:

- /bin/sh: /u01/app/11.2.0/grid/OPatch/opatch: Permission denied
- chmod: changing permissions of '/u01/app/oracle\_ebs/product/11.2.0.2/VIS\_RAC/.patch\_storage': Operation not permitted
- OPatch could not open log file, logging will not be possible
- Inventory load failed... OPatch cannot load inventory for the given Oracle Home.

The preceding errors occur in role-separated environments when RACcheck, which is run as the database software owner, attempts to list the patch inventories of homes owned by other users (grid, for example, or other database home owners) using OPatch. When you run OPatch to list the patch inventories for those other users it causes errors because the current user does not have permissions on the other homes.

In these cases the OPatch errors are ignored and the patch inventories for those homes are gathered by other means.

Additionally, you can ignore errors similar to the following:

```
./raccheck: line [N]: [: : integer expression expected
```

The line number may change over time but this error occurs when RACcheck expects an integer return value but no value was found. RACcheck returns that error when trying to make the comparison. You could see this error repeated many times for the same command, once for each node.

## Remote root Login Problems

If remote root login is not permitted over SSH, then the root-privileged commands will fail. To verify the Oracle software owner (oracle), run the following command manually from whichever node is not working and ensure you get similar output, as follows:

```
$ ssh root@remotehostname "id"
root@remotehostname's password:
uid=0(root) gid=0(root)
groups=0(root),1(bin),2(daemon),3(sys),4(adm),6(disk),10(wheel)
```

If remote root login is not working, then RACcheck cannot check the remote nodes. Contact a system administrator to correct this, if only temporarily, for running RACcheck.

If you can configure the remote root login, then edit the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file, as follows:

```
PermitRootLogin to yes
```

Run the following command as root on all nodes of the cluster:

```
# /etc/init.d/sshd restart
```

## Local Environmental Issues

RACcheck attempts to derive all the data it requires from the environment (operating system and Oracle Cluster Registry) but the tool may not work as expected because of local system differences, and it is difficult to anticipate and test every possible scenario. Therefore, support for a number of environment variables has been included so that you can override the default behavior of the tool or provide the required information. Following is a list of environment variables and descriptions for each:

- **RAT\_INV\_LOC:** If the `oraInst.loc` file is not located where expected (`/u01/app/oraInventory`), then you can specify the correct location of the `oraInventory` directory in this environment variable.
- **RAT\_CRS\_HOME:** You can set this environment variable if RACcheck cannot determine the correct `Grid_home` path, and displays information stating that the software is not installed, even though you know that Oracle Clusterware is installed.
- **RAT\_ORACLE\_HOME:** You can set this environment variable if RACcheck cannot determine the correct `ORACLE_HOME` paths for the databases registered with Oracle Clusterware, and displays information stating that the software is not installed, even though you know that the database software is installed. RACcheck performs best practice and recommended patch checks for all the databases running from the home specified in this environment variable.

- **RAT\_ASM\_HOME:** You can set this environment variable if RACcheck cannot determine the correct Oracle ASM home path (which is the same as the *Grid\_home* path) from Oracle Clusterware, and displays information stating that the software is not installed, even though you know that the Oracle ASM software is installed.
- **RAT\_OS:** You can set this environment variable if RACcheck fails to determine the correct platform, and the tool informs you that the data necessary for the determined platform could not be found.
- **RAT\_DB:** You can set this environment variable if RACcheck determines an incorrect database version.
- **RAT\_DBNAMES:** You can set this environment variable if RACcheck fails to determine valid database names from Oracle Clusterware. You can specify a space-delimited list of database names, and RACcheck will use that list instead of what it derives from Oracle Clusterware. For example:

```
$ export RAT_DBNAMES="ORCL ORADB PROD"
```

Use double quotation marks ( " ") if specifying more than one database name.

---



---

**Note:** If you configure `RAT_DBNAMES` as a subset of databases registered with Oracle Clusterware, and you want the patch inventories of all databases found registered with Oracle Clusterware to have their patch inventories checked for recommended patches, then Oracle recommends that you also configure `RAT_DBHOMES`.

---



---

- **RAT\_DBHOMES:** If you set the `RAT_DBNAMES` environment variable, then, by default, the recommended patch analysis will be limited to the homes for the database names you listed. If you want to perform the recommended patch analysis for additional database homes than those specified in `RAT_DBNAMES`, then specify a space-delimited list of databases whose homes you want checked for recommended patches. For example, assume that you run the `export RAT_DBNAMES="ORCL ORADB"` command but that you also want to check the `PROD` database home, even if the `PROD` database is down. Run the `export RAT_DBHOMES="ORCL ORADB PROD"` command so that best practices will be checked for the `ORCL` and `ORADB` databases but the recommended patches will be checked for the `ORCL`, `ORADB`, and `PROD` database homes. Use double quotation marks ( " ") if specifying more than one database name.
- **RAT\_SHELL:** Set this environment variable to specify a secure shell location that overrides the default location (typically, `/usr/bin/ssh`), in case `ssh` is not where it is expected, and `ssh` commands return the following error:

```
-bash: /usr/bin/ssh -q: No such file or directory
```

- **RAT\_SCOPY:** Set this environment variable to specify a secure copy location that overrides the default secure copy location (typically, `/usr/bin/scp`), in case `scp` is not where it is expected, and `scp` commands return the following error:

```
/usr/bin/scp -q: No such file or directory
```

## Database Login Problems

If you intend to run RACcheck as a user other than the database software installation owner (such as `root` or `grid`), and if you experience problems connecting to the database, then do the following:

1. Log in to the system as `grid`.

**2.** Run the following commands:

```
$ export ORACLE_HOME=path_to_Oracle_Database_home
$ export ORACLE_SID=database_SID
$ export PATH=$ORACLE_HOME/bin:$ORACLE_HOME/lib:$PATH
```

**3.** Add an alias in the `$ORACLE_HOME/network/admin/tnsnames.ora` file for the `database_SID`.**4.** Connect to the database as follows, including the password:

```
$ORACLE_HOME/bin/sqlplus sys@SID as sysdba
```

**5.** Ensure that you have successful connection.

If this method of connecting to the database fails, then RACcheck will be unable to connect, as well. Consider running the tool as the Oracle database software installation owner.

## User Profiles

The presence of prompts or traps in the user profile can lead to RACcheck hanging while it is running, because it sources the profile at runtime. For this reason, RACcheck checks the profile in the environment for these statements and presents a message advising you to temporarily comment out those statements on all nodes.



---

---

# Glossary

## **Automatic Workload Repository (AWR)**

A built-in repository that exists in every Oracle database. At regular intervals, Oracle Database makes a snapshot of all of its vital statistics and workload information and stores them in the AWR.

## **administrator-managed database**

A database that you specifically define on which servers it can run, and where services can run within the database.

## **cache coherency**

The synchronization of data in multiple caches so that reading a memory location through any cache will return the most recent data written to that location through any other cache. Sometimes called cache consistency.

## **Cache Fusion**

A diskless cache coherency mechanism in Oracle RAC that provides copies of blocks directly from a holding instance's memory cache to a requesting instance's memory cache.

## **cardinality**

The number of database instances you want running during normal operations.

## **cluster**

Multiple interconnected computers or servers that appear as if they are one server to end users and applications.

## **cluster file system**

A distributed file system that is a cluster of servers that collaborate to provide high performance service to their clients. Cluster file system software deals with distributing requests to storage cluster components.

## **cluster database**

The generic term for a Oracle RAC database.

## **Cluster Ready Services Daemon (CRSD)**

The primary Oracle Clusterware process that performs high availability recovery and management operations, such as maintaining OCR. Also manages application resources and runs as `root` user (or by a user in the `admin` group on Mac OS X-based systems) and restarts automatically upon failure.

### **Cluster Synchronization Services (CSS)**

An Oracle Clusterware component that discovers and tracks the membership state of each node by providing a common view of membership across the cluster. CSS also monitors process health, specifically the health of the database instance. The Global Enqueue Service Monitor (LMON), a background process that monitors the health of the cluster database environment and registers and de-registers from CSS. See also, OCSSD.

### **Cluster Time Synchronization Service**

A time synchronization mechanism that ensures that all internal clocks of all nodes in a cluster are synchronized.

### **Cluster Verification Utility (CVU)**

A tool that verifies a wide range of Oracle RAC components such as shared storage devices, networking configurations, system requirements, Oracle Clusterware, groups, and users.

### **Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP)**

The paradigm of distributed transactions, including both XA-type externally coordinated transactions, and distributed-SQL-type (database links in Oracle) internally coordinated transactions.

### **Event Manager (EVM)**

The background process that publishes Oracle Clusterware events. EVM scans the designated callout directory and runs all scripts in that directory when an event occurs.

### **Event Manager Daemon (EVMD)**

A Linux or UNIX event manager daemon that starts the `racgevt` process to manage callouts.

### **extended distance cluster**

A cluster where the nodes in the cluster are separated by greater distances from two buildings across the street, to across a campus or across a city. For availability reasons, the data needs to be located at both sites, and therefore one needs to look at alternatives for mirroring the storage.

### **failure group**

A failure group is a subset of the disks in a disk group, which could fail at the same time because they share hardware. Failure groups are used to store mirror copies of data.

### **Fast Application Notification (FAN)**

Applications can use FAN to enable rapid failure detection, balancing of connection pools after failures, and re-balancing of connection pools when failed components are repaired. The FAN notification process uses system events that Oracle Database publishes when cluster servers become unreachable or if network interfaces fail.

### **Fast Connection Failover**

Fast Connection Failover provides high availability to FAN integrated clients, such as clients that use JDBC, OCI, or ODP.NET. If you configure the client to use fast connection failover, then the client automatically subscribes to FAN events and can



react to database UP and DOWN events. In response, Oracle Database gives the client a connection to an active instance that provides the requested database service.

**forced disk write**

In Oracle RAC, a particular data block can only be modified by one instance at a time. If one instance modifies a data block that another instance needs, then whether a forced disk write is required depends on the type of request submitted for the block.

**General Parallel File System (GPFS)**

General Parallel File System (GPFS) is a shared-disk IBM file system product that provides data access from all of the nodes in a homogenous or heterogeneous cluster.

**Global Cache Service (GCS)**

Process that implement Cache Fusion. It maintains the block mode for blocks in the global role. It is responsible for block transfers between instances. The Global Cache Service employs various background processes such as the Global Cache Service Processes (LMSn) and Global Enqueue Service Daemon (LMD).

**Global Cache Service Processes (LMSn)**

Processes that manage remote messages. Oracle RAC provides for up to 10 Global Cache Service Processes.

**Global Cache Service (GCS) resources**

Global resources that coordinate access to data blocks in the buffer caches of multiple Oracle RAC instances to provide cache coherency.

**global database name**

The full name of the database that uniquely identifies it from any other database. The global database name is of the form *database\_name.database\_domain*—for example: OP.US.FOO.COM

**global dynamic performance views (GV\$)**

Dynamic performance views storing information about all open instances in an Oracle RAC cluster. (Not only the local instance.) In contrast, standard dynamic performance views (V\$) only store information about the local instance.

**Global Enqueue Service (GES)**

A service that coordinates enqueues that are shared globally.

**Global Enqueue Service Daemon (LMD)**

The resource agent process that manages requests for resources to control access to blocks. The LMD process also handles deadlock detection and remote resource requests. Remote resource requests are requests originating from another instance.

**Global Enqueue Service Monitor (LMON)**

The background LMON process monitors the entire cluster to manage global resources. LMON manages instance deaths and the associated recovery for any failed instance. In particular, LMON handles the part of recovery associated with global resources. LMON-provided services are also known as Cluster Group Services.

### **Global Services Daemon (GSD)**

A component that receives requests from SRVCTL to execute administrative job tasks, such as startup or shutdown. The command is executed locally on each node, and the results are returned to SRVCTL. GSD is installed on the nodes by default.

### **Oracle Grid Infrastructure**

The software that provides the infrastructure for an enterprise grid architecture. In a cluster this software includes Oracle Clusterware and Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM). For a standalone server, this software includes Oracle Restart and Oracle ASM. Oracle Database 11g release 2 (11.2) combines these infrastructure products into one software installation called the *Oracle Grid Infrastructure home* (`Grid_home`).

### **Grid Plug and Play Daemon (GPNPD)**

This process provides access to the Grid Plug and Play profile, and coordinates updates to the profile among the nodes of the cluster to ensure that all of the nodes node have the most recent profile.

### **High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing (HACMP)**

High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing is an IBM AIX-based high availability cluster software product. HACMP has two major components: high availability (HA) and cluster multi-processing (CMP).

#### **high availability**

Systems with redundant components that provide consistent and uninterrupted service, even in the event of hardware or software failures. This involves some degree of redundancy.

#### **instance**

For an Oracle RAC database, each node in a cluster usually has one instance of the running Oracle software that references the database. When a database is started, Oracle Database allocates a memory area called the System Global Area (SGA) and starts one or more Oracle Database processes. This combination of the SGA and the Oracle Database processes is called an instance. Each instance has unique Oracle System Identifier (SID), instance name, rollback segments, and thread ID.

#### **instance membership recovery**

The method used by Oracle RAC guaranteeing that all cluster members are functional or active. instance membership recovery polls and arbitrates the membership. Any members that do not show a heartbeat by way of the control file or who do not respond to periodic activity inquiry messages are presumed terminated.

#### **instance name**

Represents the name of the instance and is used to uniquely identify a specific instance when clusters share common services names. The instance name is identified by the `INSTANCE_NAME` parameter in the instance initialization file, `initsid.ora`. The instance name is the same as the Oracle System Identifier (SID).

#### **instance number**

A number that associates extents of data blocks with particular instances. The instance number enables you to start up an instance and ensure that it uses the extents allocated to it for inserts and updates. This will ensure that it does not use space allocated for other instances.

**interconnect**

The communication link between nodes.

**Logical Volume Manager (LVM)**

A generic term that describes Linux or UNIX subsystems for online disk storage management.

**Interprocess Communication (IPC)**

A high-speed operating system-dependent transport component. The IPC transfers messages between instances on different nodes. Also referred to as the interconnect.

**Master Boot Record (MBR)**

A program that executes when a computer starts. Typically, the MBR resides on the first sector of a local hard disk. The program begins the startup process by examining the partition table to determine which partition to use for starting the system. The MBR program then transfers control to the boot sector of the startup partition, which continues the startup process.

**metric**

The rate of change in a cumulative statistic.

**Network Attached Storage (NAS)**

Storage that is attached to a server by way of a network.

**Network Time Protocol (NTP)**

An Internet standard protocol, built on top of TCP/IP, that ensures the accurate synchronization to the millisecond of the computer clock times in a network of computers.

**Network Interface Card (NIC)**

A card that you insert into a computer to connect the computer to a network.

**node**

A node is a computer system on which Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware software are installed.

**Object Link Manager (OLM)**

The Oracle interface that maps symbolic links to logical drives and displays them in the OLM graphical user interface.

**OCSSD**

A Linux or UNIX process that manages the Cluster Synchronization Services (CSS) daemon. Manages cluster node membership and runs as `oracle` user; failure of this process results in cluster restart.

**Oracle Cluster File Systems**

Oracle offers two cluster file systems, OCFS for Windows and OCFS2 for Linux. While OCFS for Windows is a proprietary file system, the source for OCFS2 for Linux is available to all under GNU's General Public License (GPL). The two file systems are not compatible.

### **Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR)**

The Oracle RAC configuration information repository that manages information about the cluster node list and instance-to-node mapping information. OCR also manages information about Oracle Clusterware resource profiles for customized applications.

### **Oracle Enterprise Manager Configuration Assistant (EMCA)**

A graphical user interface-based configuration assistant that you can use to configure Oracle Enterprise Manager features.

### **Oracle Grid Naming Service Daemon (GNSD)**

The Oracle Grid Naming Service is a gateway between the cluster mDNS and external DNS servers. The `gnsd` process performs name resolution within the cluster.

### **Oracle High Availability Services Daemon (OHASD)**

This process anchors the lower part of the Oracle Clusterware stack, which consists of processes that facilitate cluster operations.

### **Oracle Interface Configuration Tool (OIFCFG)**

A command-line tool for both noncluster Oracle databases and Oracle RAC databases that enables you to allocate and de-allocate network interfaces to components, direct components to use specific network interfaces, and retrieve component configuration information. The Oracle Universal Installer also uses OIFCFG to identify and display available interfaces.

### **Oracle Managed Files**

A service that automates naming, location, creation, and deletion of database files such as control files, redo log files, data files and others, based on a few initialization parameters. You can use Oracle Managed Files on top of a traditional file system supported by the host operating system, for example, VxFS or ODM. It can simplify many aspects of the database administration by eliminating the need to devise your own policies for such details.

### **Oracle Notification Service**

A publish and subscribe service for communicating information about all FAN events.

### **Oracle Clusterware**

This is clusterware that is provided by Oracle to manage cluster database processing including node membership, group services, global resource management, and high availability functions.

### **Oracle Universal Installer**

A tool to install Oracle Clusterware, the Oracle relational database software, and the Oracle RAC software. You can also use the Oracle Universal Installer to launch the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA).

### **policy-managed database**

A database that you define as a cluster resource. Management of the database is defined by how you configure the resource, including on which servers the database can run and how many instances of the database are necessary to support the expected workload.

**raw device**

A disk drive that does not yet have a file system set up. Raw devices are used for Oracle RAC because they enable the sharing of disks. See also [raw partition](#).

**raw partition**

A portion of a physical disk that is accessed at the lowest possible level. A raw partition is created when an extended partition is created and logical partitions are assigned to it without any formatting. Once formatting is complete, it is called a cooked partition. See also raw device.

**Recovery Manager (RMAN)**

An Oracle tool that enables you to back up, copy, restore, and recover data files, control files, and archived redo logs. It is included with the Oracle server and does not require separate installation. You can run RMAN as a command line utility from the operating system (O/S) prompt or use the GUI-based Oracle Enterprise Manager Backup Manager.

**result cache**

A result cache is an area of memory, either in the SGA or client application memory, that stores the result of a database query or query block for reuse. The cached rows are shared across statements and sessions unless they become stale.

**Runtime Connection Load Balancing**

Enables Oracle Database to make intelligent service connection decisions based on the connection pool that provides the optimal service for the requested application based on current workloads. The JDBC, ODP.NET, and OCI clients are integrated with the load balancing advisory; you can use any of these client environments to provide runtime connection load balancing.

**scalability**

The ability to add additional nodes to Oracle RAC applications and achieve markedly improved scale-up and speed-up.

**Secure Shell (SSH)**

A program for logging into a remote computer over a network. You can use SSH to execute commands on a remote system and to move files from one system to another. SSH uses strong authentication and secure communications over insecure channels.

**Server Control Utility (SRVCTL)**

Server Management (SRVM) comprises the components required to operate Oracle Enterprise Manager in Oracle RAC. The SRVM components, such as the Intelligent Agent, Global Services Daemon, and SRVCTL, enable you to manage cluster databases running in heterogeneous environments through an open client/server architecture using Oracle Enterprise Manager.

**server**

A computer system that has no Oracle software installed upon it.

**server group**

A logical partition of nodes in a cluster into a group that hosts applications, databases, or both. Server groups can be members of other server groups.

**service level**

A measure of the performance of a system.

**services**

Entities that you can define in Oracle RAC databases that enable you to group database workloads and route work to the optimal instances that are assigned to offer the service.

**shared everything**

A database architecture in which all instances share access to all of the data.

**single client access name (SCAN)**

Oracle Database 11g database clients use SCAN to connect to the database. SCAN can resolve to multiple IP addresses, reflecting multiple listeners in the cluster handling public client connections.

**singleton services**

Services that run on only one instance at any one time. By defining the Distributed Transaction Property (DTP) property of a service, you can force the service to be a singleton service.

**split brain syndrome**

Where two or more instances attempt to control a cluster database. In a two-node environment, for example, one instance attempts to manage updates simultaneously while the other instance attempts to manage updates.

**system identifier (SID)**

The Oracle system identifier (SID) identifies a specific instance of the running Oracle software. For an Oracle RAC database, each node within the cluster has an instance referencing the database.

**transparent application failover (TAF)**

A runtime failover for high-availability environments, such as Oracle RAC and Oracle RAC Guard, TAF refers to the failover and re-establishment of application-to-service connections. It enables client applications to automatically reconnect to the database if the connection fails, and optionally resume a SELECT statement that was in progress. This reconnect happens automatically from within the Oracle Call Interface library.

**voting disk**

A file that manages information about node membership.

**wallet**

A wallet is a data structure used to store and manage security credentials for an individual entity.

## Symbols

---

`$ORACLE_HOME/root.sh` script, 8-6

## A

---

abnormal instance termination, 3-7

ACMS

Atomic Controlfile to Memory Service, 1-6

Active Session History, Oracle RAC, 13-7

Active Session History, Top Cluster Events, 13-8

Active Session History, Top Remote Instance, 13-8

active sessions, 13-7

ACTIVE\_INSTANCE\_COUNT initialization  
parameter, 3-15

adding nodes to an existing cluster, 9-1

adding Oracle RAC to nodes on Linux and  
UNIX, 10-2

adding Oracle RAC to nodes on Windows, 11-2

ADDM

global monitoring, 13-6

*see* Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor

ADDM for Oracle Real Application Clusters  
mode, 13-6

administering

services, 5-29

services with SRVCTL, 5-32

administering instances

with Server Management, 3-1

administering Oracle Enterprise Manager jobs, 3-27

administering services

Oracle Enterprise Manager, 5-29

SRVCTL, 5-29

administrative tools

overview and concepts, 1-13

SYSASM privilege, 3-7

administrator-managed database instances

adding, 11-2

administrator-managed databases, 3-2, 5-6

AVAILABLE instances for services, 5-6

converting to policy-managed, 3-19

defined, 1-12

PREFERRED instances for services, 5-6

ADRCI

ADR Command-Line Interpreter, B-2

Advanced Queuing

and FAN, 5-13

Advisor Central in Oracle Enterprise Manager, 13-7

aggregates

by instances, 13-4

by services, 13-4

by waits, 13-4

alert administration

Oracle Enterprise Manager, 3-27

alert blackouts

Oracle Enterprise Manager, 3-27

alert logs, B-2

managing, B-1

ALTER SYSTEM ARCHIVE LOG CURRENT  
statement, 3-5

ALTER SYSTEM ARCHIVE LOG statement, 3-5  
INSTANCE option, 3-5

ALTER SYSTEM CHECKPOINT LOCAL  
statement, 3-5

ALTER SYSTEM CHECKPOINT statement  
global versus local, 3-5  
specifying an instance, 3-5

ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION statement

terminating a session on a specific instance, 3-10

ALTER SYSTEM QUIESCE RESTRICTED statement  
quiescing a noncluster database, 3-20

ALTER SYSTEM statement

CHECKPOINT clause, 3-5

ALTER SYSTEM SWITCH LOGFILE statement, 3-5  
applications

consolidating multiple in a single database, 12-3

highly available, 12-1

scalability, 12-4

spanning XA transactions across Oracle RAC  
instances, 5-27

using pre-created database sessions, 5-24

ARCHIVE LOG command

SQL\*Plus, 3-5

ARCHIVE\_LAG\_TARGET initialization  
parameter, 3-18

archived redo log files

applying in parallel, 7-6

file format and destination, 6-4

log sequence number, 6-4

archiver process

monitor, 6-9

archiving mode

- changing, 6-1
- ASH reports, 13-7
- asm
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- ASM\_PREFERRED\_READ\_FAILURE\_GROUPS
  - initialization parameter, 2-6, 3-15
- Atomic Controlfile to Memory Service (ACMS), 1-6
- Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor, 13-9, 13-10, 13-11
- Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (ADDM), 1-14
  - analyzing AWR data, 13-6
  - DBMS\_ADDM PL/SQL package, 13-7
  - DBMS\_ADVISOR PL/SQL package, 13-7
  - Global ADDM mode, 13-7
  - Local ADDM mode, 13-7
- Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitoring (ADDM), 13-6
- Automatic Diagnostic Repository (ADR), B-2
  - ADRCI command-line interpreter, B-2
- automatic load balancing
  - configuring RMAN channels for multiple instances, 6-3
- AUTOMATIC management policy, 3-8
- Automatic Performance Diagnostics (AWR)
  - monitor performance statistics, 13-6
- automatic segment space management (ASSM), 12-6
  - tablespace use in Oracle RAC, 12-6
- automatic undo management
  - tablespace use in Oracle RAC, 12-6
- automatic workload management
  - concepts, 1-7, 5-4
  - description, 5-2
  - manual rebalancing, 5-3
- Automatic Workload Repository, 5-2, 5-3, 5-34, 13-10
- Automatic Workload Repository (AWR), 13-6, 13-8
  - monitoring performance, 5-8
  - snapshots, 13-6
- AVAILABLE instances
  - for services, 5-6
- Average Active Sessions chart
  - performance monitoring, 13-3
- AWR
  - see* Automatic Workload Repository

## B

---

- background processes
  - Oracle RAC, 1-6
  - SMON, 3-7, 7-3
- background thread trace files, B-1
- backups
  - server parameter file, 3-14
- bandwidth
  - interconnect, 13-4
- best practices
  - deploying Oracle RAC for high availability, 12-2
- blackouts
  - defining, 3-27

- block mode conversions
  - statistics for, 13-6
- blocks
  - associated with instance, 7-3
- buffer cache, 1-6
  - instance recovery, 7-3
- buffer sizes
  - interprocess communication (IPC)
    - adjusting for Oracle RAC, 13-5

## C

---

- cache coherency, 13-9
- Cache Fusion, 1-6, 12-7
  - and e-commerce applications, 12-7
  - overview, 1-15
- Cache Fusion performance, 13-4
- cache fusion transfers, 13-10
- callouts
  - how they are run, 5-14
- candidate node list, 2
- capacity
  - increasing, 12-4
- cardinality, 3-2
- catclustdb.sql script, 1-14
- CATCLUST.SQL script
  - using to create views for Oracle RAC, 13-6
- changing the configuration of all services, 4-3
- channels
  - configure one RMAN channel for each Oracle RAC instance, 6-4
  - configuring during crosscheck or restore operations, 6-3
  - configuring for RMAN, 6-3
- chart
  - Global Cache Block Access Latency, 13-3
- charts
  - Average Active Sessions, 13-3
  - Cluster Host Load Average, 13-3
  - Database Throughput, 13-4
- checking the interconnect, B-3
- CLB\_GOAL\_SHORT, 5-14
- client
  - application environments and FAN, 5-20
- client connections with SCAN, 3-2
- clients
  - integrated for FAN events, 5-13
  - JDBC Thin Driver, 5-21
  - JDBC/OCI, 5-22
- client-side
  - load balancing, 5-10
- client-side load balancing, 5-10
- clone.pl, 8-7
- clone.pl script
  - cloning parameters, 8-6
  - environment variables, 8-5
- cloning, 1-11, 8-1, 8-3
  - deployment phase, 8-3
  - log files, 8-7
  - parameters passed to the clone.pl script, 8-6



- preparation phase, 8-2
- running \$ORACLE\_HOME/root.sh script, 8-6
- setting ORACLE\_BASE, 8-5
- setting ORACLE\_HOME, 8-5
- setting ORACLE\_HOME\_NAME, 8-5
- cloning log files, 8-7
- cluster
  - definition of, 1-1
- cluster cache coherency, 13-3
- Cluster Database Performance page
  - Top Activity drill down menu, 13-4
- cluster file system
  - archiving parameter settings, 6-6
  - archiving scenario, 6-5
  - restore, 7-2
  - storage in Oracle RAC, 2-1
- Cluster Host Load Average page
  - cluster database performance, 13-3
- cluster nodes name
  - in clone.pl script, 8-6
- Cluster Verification Utility
  - overview and concepts, 1-13
- CLUSTER\_DATABASE initialization
  - parameter, 3-15, 3-17
- CLUSTER\_DATABASE\_INSTANCE initialization
  - parameter, 3-17
- CLUSTER\_DATABASE\_INSTANCES initialization
  - parameter, 3-15
- CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS
  - parameter, 13-5
- CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS initialization
  - parameter, 3-22
- CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS parameter
  - examples, 3-23
- CLUSTER\_NODE\_NAME parameter
  - FAN, and matching database signature, 5-16
- CLUSTER\_NODES parameter
  - in clone.pl script, 8-6
- clustered Oracle ASM
  - converting a noncluster Oracle ASM, 2-6
- clusters
  - consolidating multiple databases in, 12-3
- clusterware management solution, 1-3
- CMAN session pools
  - and FAN, 5-20
- cold backups, 3-21
- command-line interpreter
  - ADR Command-Line Interpreter (ADRCI), B-2
- committed data
  - instance failure, 7-3
- communication protocols
  - verifying settings for, 13-4
- compatibility
  - Oracle RAC and Oracle Database software, 1-9
- COMPATIBLE initialization parameter, 3-17
- configuring channels
  - during restore or crosscheck operations, 6-3
- configuring preferred mirror read disks in extended
  - clusters, 2-6
- CONNECT command, 3-5

- SQL\*Plus, 3-5
- CONNECT SYS
  - example of, 3-8
- connecting
  - to instances, 1-13, 3-4
- connection load balancing
  - concepts, 1-8
  - introduction to, 5-2
  - long method, 5-12
  - short method, 5-12
- connection pools
  - and FAN, 5-20
- consistent blocks, 1-6
- CONTROL\_FILES initialization parameter, 3-17
- converting a database from Oracle RAC One Node to
  - Oracle RAC, 4-3
- converting an Oracle RAC database with one instance
  - to Oracle RAC One Node, 4-3
- corrupted data blocks, B-2
- CREATE PFILE
  - FROM MEMORY clause, 3-12
- CREATE PFILE statement, 3-14
- CREATE SPFILE
  - FROM MEMORY clause, 3-12
- creating
  - server parameter files, 3-12
  - services, 5-29
  - SPFILE backups, 3-14
- crosscheck operations
  - configuring channels during, 6-3
- crosschecking on multiple nodes
  - RMAN backups, 6-3
- CRS Administrator, 3-2
- CRS resources
  - management of, 1-3
- current blocks, 1-6
- CVU
  - See Cluster Verification Utility

## D

---

- data dictionary
  - querying views, 13-6
- Data Recovery Advisor, B-2
- data security
  - wallet, 12-8
- data warehouse
  - deploying applications for in Oracle RAC, 12-7
- data warehouse systems, 12-7
- database
  - creation, 1-10
  - services
    - singleton, 3-20
    - uniform, 3-20
  - SRVCTL object name, A-12
- Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA), 1-10
  - adding and deleting instances in interactive mode
    - on Windows, 11-3
  - adding and deleting instances in silent mode
    - on Windows, 11-4

- adding instances in interactive mode
  - on Linux and UNIX, 10-4
- adding instances in silent mode
  - on Linux and UNIX, 10-5
- cloning Oracle RAC instances, 8-6
- creating views for Oracle Real Application Clusters, 13-6
- Database Storage page, 10-4, 11-3
- deleting instances in interactive mode
  - on Linux and UNIX, 10-7
  - on Windows, 11-6
- deleting instances in silent mode
  - on Linux and UNIX, 10-7
  - on Windows, 11-7
- Instance Management page, 10-4, 11-3
- List of Cluster Databases page, 10-4, 11-3
- Operations page, 10-4, 11-3
- running the catclustdb.sql script, 1-14
- Welcome page, 10-4, 11-3
- database instances
  - administrator managed
    - deleting, 10-6, 11-5
- database resource, 3-2
- Database Resource Manager, 3-21
- database role, 3-8
- database signatures
  - matching the FAN parameters, 5-16
- database state, 3-6
- Database Storage page, 10-4, 11-3
- Database Throughput page
  - performance monitoring, 13-4
- DATABASE\_UNIQUE\_NAME parameter
  - FAN, and matching database signature, 5-16
- databases
  - adding
    - Oracle RAC One Node, 4-2
  - administrator managed, 3-2, 5-6
  - consolidating multiple in a cluster, 12-3
  - controlling restarts, 3-24
  - Oracle RAC One Node
    - services on, 4-2
  - policy managed, 3-2, 5-6
  - scalability, 12-4
- databases sessions
  - pre-created, 5-24
- Datagram Protocol (UDP), 1-5
- DB\_BLOCK\_SIZE initialization parameter, 3-17
- DB\_DOMAIN initialization parameter, 3-17
- DB\_FILES initialization parameter, 3-17
- DB\_NAME initialization parameter, 3-15, 3-17
- DB\_RECOVERY\_FILE\_DEST initialization parameter, 3-17, 7-7
- DB\_RECOVERY\_FILE\_DEST\_SIZE initialization parameter, 3-17
- DB\_UNIQUE\_NAME initialization parameter, 3-17
- DBCA
  - see Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA)
- DDL statements, 12-6
- default database service, 1-10, 3-16, 5-31
- degree of parallelism (DOP), 12-8

- deleting administrator-managed database instances, 10-6, 11-5
- dependencies
  - and services, 5-8
- deploying
  - Oracle Real Application Clusters environments, 1-12, 12-1
- design
  - Oracle Real Application Clusters environments, 1-12, 12-1
- diagnosing problems for Oracle RAC, B-1
- diagnosing problems using ADR, B-2
- DIAGNOSTIC\_DEST initialization parameter, B-2
- diskgroup
  - SRVCTL object name, A-12
- DISPATCHERS initialization parameter, 3-15
  - specifying a service with, 5-31
- displaying IP addresses
  - with ifconfig, 3-23
  - with netstat, 3-23
- distributed SQL transactions, 5-28
- Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP), 12-6
- distributed transactions, 12-6
  - directing to a single instance in the cluster, 5-28
  - services in Oracle RAC, 5-27
  - XA transactions span instances, 5-27
- DML\_LOCKS initialization parameter, 3-17
- DTP Service., 5-28
- DTP/XA transactions, 5-27
- dynamic performance views, 13-8
  - creating, 13-6
  - GV\$, 1-14
  - V\$, 1-14
- dynamic resource allocation
  - overview, 1-15

## E

---

- e-commerce
  - applications in Oracle RAC, 12-7
- edition
  - services attribute, 5-5
- ENCRYPTION\_WALLET\_LOCATION
  - parameter, 12-9
- Enterprise Manager
  - overview, 1-3
- environment variables
  - passed to the clone.pl script, 8-5
  - setting with SRVCTL, 3-6
- evaluating block transfers, 13-6
- event notification
  - enabling, 5-25
- examples
  - setting the CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS parameter, 3-23
- extended distance cluster, 2-6
  - Oracle ASM preferred mirror read, 2-6
- extended distance clusters
  - configuring preferred mirror read disks, 2-6
- external transaction managers

OraMTS, 5-27

## F

---

failure

- instance, 7-3
- multiple node, 7-3
- node, 7-3

failure groups, 2-6

FAN events

- enabling for JDBC, 5-22

Fast Application Notification (FAN), 5-12

- and high availability events, 5-15
- callouts definition, 5-16
- callouts, how to use, 5-17
- events, enabling for JDBC clients, 5-21
- events, enabling for ODP.NET, 5-25
- events, enabling for Oracle Call Interface, 5-23
- events, enabling ODP.NET clients, 5-26
- how events are published, 5-13
- introduction, 5-2
- overview, 5-13
- parameters and matching database signatures, 5-16
- uses, 5-13

Fast Connection Failover (FCF)

- enabling JDBC clients, 5-21
- enabling with thin and thick clients, 5-22
- introduction to, 5-2

fault diagnosability, B-2

FCF

- See* Fast Connection Failover (FCF)

features, new, xxiii

files

- archived redo log files, 6-4
- redo log, 6-4

filesystem

- SRVCTL object name, A-12

FROM MEMORY clause

- on CREATE PFILE or CREATE SPFILE, 3-12

## G

---

GC\_SERVER\_PROCESSES initialization parameter

- specifying the number of LMSn processes, 12-4

GCS protocol, 13-9

GCS\_SERVER\_PROCESSES initialization

- parameter, 3-16

Generic server pool, 3-2, 2

GES

- See* global cache and enqueue service (GES)

global cache and enqueue service (GES), 13-8

Global Cache Block Access Latency chart

- performance monitoring, 13-3

Global Cache Service (GCS), 1-6, 3-16

Global Cache Service Process (LMS), 1-6

Global Cache Service Processes (LMSn)

- reducing the number of, 12-4
- specifying the number of, 12-4

Global Cache Service statistics, 13-8, 13-9

GLOBAL clause

- forcing a checkpoint, 3-5

Global Enqueue Service (GES), 1-6

Global Enqueue Service Daemon (LMD), 1-6

Global Enqueue Service Monitor (LMD), 1-6

Global Enqueue Service statistics, 13-8

global performance data

- with ADDM, 13-6

Global Resource Directory (GRD), 1-6

Global Transaction Process (GTX0-j), 1-6

GLOBAL\_TXN\_PROCESSES initialization parameter, 5-27

goals

- and the load balancing advisory, 5-18
- for load balancing advisory, 5-18

Grid Naming Service (GNS)

- SRVCTL object name, A-12

GTX0-j

- Global Transaction Process, 1-6

GV\$, 1-14

GV\$ view, 13-6

GV\$SESSION, 3-10

## H

---

hash partitioning

- with Oracle RAC, 12-5

high availability

- best practices, 12-2
- for Oracle RAC Databases, 12-1

high availability framework

- concepts, 1-7
- introduction to, 5-2

home

- SRVCTL object name, A-13

HOST command, 3-5

- SQL\*Plus, 3-5

## I

---

idle wait class, 13-7

Implicit Connection Cache, 5-21

indexes

- sequence-based, 12-5

initdb\_name.ora file

- DIAGNOSTIC\_DEST initialization parameter, B-2

initialization parameters

- cluster database issues regarding, 3-14
- CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS, 3-22, 13-5
- recommendations for using, 3-22
- identical settings for on all instances, 3-18
- RECOVERY\_PARALLELISM, 7-7
- settings for instances, 3-12
- specific to Oracle RAC, 3-14
- that must be identical on all instances, 3-16
- that must be unique on all instances, 3-17

INST\_ID column, 13-6

installation

- introduction, 1-9

- Oracle RAC, 1-10
- installations
  - performing multiple simultaneous cluster, 8-1
- instance
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- instance discovery
  - Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control, 3-25
- Instance Enqueue Process (LCK0), 1-7
- Instance Management page, 10-4, 11-3
- INSTANCE\_NAME initialization parameter, 3-16
- INSTANCE option, 3-5
- INSTANCE parameter
  - FAN, and matching database signature, 5-16
- instance recovery, 3-7
- INSTANCE\_NAME initialization parameter, 3-17
- INSTANCE\_NUMBER initialization parameter, 3-17
- INSTANCE\_TYPE initialization parameter, 3-17
- instances
  - aggregated for service performance, 13-4
  - cloning Oracle RAC, 8-6
  - effect of SQL\*Plus commands on, 3-5
  - failure, 7-3
  - initialization parameter settings, 3-12
  - maximum number for Oracle RAC, 1-2
  - memory structures, 1-5
  - parallel processes, 5-9
  - private interconnect usage, B-3
  - recovery, 3-7, 7-3
  - recovery, abnormal shutdown, 3-7
  - recovery, multiple failures, 7-4
  - Server Management, 3-1
  - shutting down, 3-6
  - starting and stopping, 3-6
  - terminating session on, 3-10
  - verifying, 3-9
  - verifying running, 3-9
- instances failure
  - recovery from, 7-3
- instead of Statspack, 1-14
- interconnect
  - and performance, 13-5
  - and the Oracle RAC architecture, 1-2
  - protocols for Oracle Real Application Clusters, 13-4
  - verifying settings for, 13-4
- interconnect bandwidth, 13-4
- latency, 13-4
- interconnect block transfer rates, 13-6
- interconnect settings
  - verifying, 13-5
- interconnects
  - alternatives to the private network, 3-21
  - private, B-3
- Interconnects page
  - monitoring clusterware with Oracle Enterprise Manager, 13-2
  - monitoring Oracle Clusterware, 13-3
- interprocess communication (IPC)
  - buffer sizes
    - adjusting, 13-5

- IPC protocol, 13-5, 13-9

## J

---

- Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) clients
  - Oracle Notification Service usage, 5-2
- Java-based tools and utilities
  - CVU, B-3
  - DBCA, B-3
  - DBUA, B-3
  - enabling tools for tracing, B-3
  - GSD, B-3
  - NETCA, B-3
  - SRVCTL, B-3
- JDBC
  - and FAN, 5-20
  - enabling FAN events for, 5-22
- JDBC clients
  - enabling for Fast Connection Failover (FCF), 5-21
- JDBC Thin Driver, 5-21
- JDBC/OCI, 5-22
- job administration
  - Oracle Enterprise Manager, 3-27

## K

---

- KILL SESSION clause
  - on the ALTER SYSTEM statement, 3-10

## L

---

- LCK0
  - Instance Enqueue Process, 1-7
- level thresholds
  - services, 5-35
- LICENSE\_MAX\_USERS initialization parameter, 3-18
- List of Cluster Databases page, 10-4, 11-3
- listener
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- listeners
  - command to add to a node, A-20
  - command to remove, A-82
  - Oracle Net, 1-3
- LMD
  - Global Enqueue Service Daemon, 1-6
- LMON Global Enqueue Service Monitor, 1-6
- LMS
  - Global Cache Service Process, 1-6
- LMS processes
  - reducing the number of, 12-4
- LMSn processes
  - reducing the number of, 12-4
- load balancing, 12-7
  - by services, 1-4
  - OCI runtime connection, 5-24
  - server-side, 5-10
- Load Balancing Advisory, 5-7
- load balancing advisory
  - and FAN events, 5-19
  - concepts, 1-8

- configuring your environment for using, 5-18
- deployment, 5-18
- description of, 5-17
- events and FAN, 5-13
- introduction to, 5-2
- local archiving scenario
  - RMAN, 6-7
- Local Area Network (LAN), 1-4
- LOCAL clause
  - forcing a checkpoint, 3-5
- local file system
  - archiving parameter settings, 6-7
  - restore, 7-2
- local instance
  - shutting down, 3-7
  - starting, 3-7
- local node name
  - in clone.pl script, 8-6
- LOCAL\_NODE parameter
  - in clone.pl script, 8-6
- locally managed tablespaces, 12-6
- log files
  - tracing, B-3
- log sequence numbers, 6-4
- LOG\_ARCHIVE\_FORMAT initialization
  - parameter, 3-18
- LOG\_ARCHIVE\_FORMAT parameter, 6-4

## M

---

- mass deployment
  - cloning, 1-11, 8-1, 8-3
- media failures
  - recovery from, 7-6
- memory structures
  - in Oracle RAC, 1-6
- message request counters, 13-6
- migration
  - application, 12-4
- missing files, B-2
- mission critical systems
  - considerations for Oracle RAC, 12-1
- modified data
  - instance recovery, 7-3
- monitoring
  - archiver process, 6-9
  - overview and concepts, 1-14
  - performance of global cache block access, 13-3
- monitoring host load average, 13-3
- mount all non-running instances of an Oracle RAC database, 3-8
- multiple cluster interconnects, 3-21
- multiple databases in a cluster, 3-22
- multiple instances
  - starting from a single SQL\*Plus session, 3-8
  - starting from one node, 3-8
- multiple node failures, 7-3
- multiple public networks, 1-5
- multiplexed redo log files, 2-3

## N

---

- net service name, 3-4
- network
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- Network Attached Storage (NAS), 1-5
- network resources, 1-5
- NIC bonding, 3-21
- node
  - failure and VIP addresses, 1-5
- node affinity awareness, 7-5
- node discovery
  - Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control, 3-25
- node evictions, 13-3
- nodeapps
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- nodes
  - affinity awareness, 7-5
  - failure of, 7-3
  - virtual IP addresses, A-6
- noncluster databases
  - quiescing, 3-20
- noncluster Oracle ASM
  - converting to clustered Oracle ASM, 2-6

## O

---

- object creation and deletion, 12-6
- objects
  - creation of and effect on performance, 12-6
  - srvctl object names and abbreviations, A-12
- OC4J
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- OCFS2, 1-4
- OCI session pooling, 5-24
- OCI Session Pools
  - and FAN, 5-20
- OCI session pools
  - optimizing, 5-24
  - runtime connection load balancing, 5-24
  - service metrics, 5-25
- OCI\_EVENTS mode
  - setup for runtime connection load balancing, 5-25
- OCI\_THREADED mode
  - setup for runtime connection load balancing, 5-25
- OCRDUUMP utility, 13-5
- ODP.NET
  - and FAN, 5-20
  - and Fast Connection Failover, 5-26
  - load balancing advisory events, 5-26
- OLTP environments, 12-5
- online database relocation
  - Oracle RAC One Node, 1
  - relocation utility, 4-4
- online recovery, 7-3
- online transaction processing (OLTP)
  - applications in Oracle RAC, 12-7
- ONS
  - See* Oracle Notification Service
- ons
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13

- Operations page, 10-4, 11-3
- optimal execution plans, 12-8
- Oracle ASM
  - See* Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM)
- Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM)
  - archiving scenario, 6-5
  - converting noncluster Oracle ASM to clustered Oracle ASM, 2-6
  - installation, 1-10
  - instances
    - administering with SRVCTL, 2-7
  - Oracle ASM preferred read failure groups, 2-6
  - preferred mirror read disks, 2-6
  - preferred read disks, 3-15
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
  - storage solution, 2-2
  - SYSASM privilege, 3-7
- Oracle Call Interface (OCI)
  - runtime connection load balancing, 5-24
- Oracle Call Interface environment
  - to receive service metrics, 5-25
- Oracle Cluster File System (OCFS for Windows), 1-4
- Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR), 3-6, 13-5
- Oracle Clusterware
  - cloning, 1-11
  - control policies
    - AUTOMATIC, 3-24
    - MANUAL, 3-24
  - using SRVCTL to display and change, 3-24
  - controlling database restarts, 3-24
  - described, 1-3
  - introduction, 1-3
  - introduction and concepts of, 1-1
  - managing Oracle processes, 1-3
- Oracle Database
  - session activity, 13-7
- Oracle Dynamic Volume Manager
  - described, xxviii
- Oracle Enterprise Manager
  - adding database instances to nodes
    - on Linux and UNIX, 10-3
    - on Windows, 11-2
  - alert administration, 3-27
  - alert blackouts, 3-27
  - Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitoring (ADDM), 13-6
  - Average Active Sessions chart, 13-3
  - Cluster Database Home page, 13-2
  - Cluster Database page, 13-2
  - Cluster Database Performance page
    - performance statistics for an Oracle RAC database, 13-3
  - configuring to recognize changes in database management, 3-20
  - Database Throughput charts, 13-4
  - deleting database instances from nodes, 10-6, 11-5
  - Global Cache Block Access Latency chart, 13-3
  - Interconnects page, 13-3
  - job administration, 3-27
  - monitoring load values for available nodes, 13-3
  - overview and concepts, 1-13
  - Top Activity drill down menu, 13-4
  - using the Interconnects page to monitor Oracle Clusterware, 13-2
    - using to administer Oracle RAC, 3-3
    - using to administer services, 5-31
    - using to back up the server parameter file, 3-14
    - using to create DTP services, 5-29
    - using to monitor Oracle Clusterware, 13-2
    - using to monitor Oracle RAC, 13-2
    - using to monitor Oracle RAC environments, 1-14
    - using to restore SPFILE, 7-3
    - using to schedule Automatic Workload Repository actions, 5-35
    - using to set up a fast recovery area, 7-7
    - using to start or stop a database, 3-7
    - using with RMAN, 6-3
- Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control
  - using emca to reconfigure, 3-20
- Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control
  - instance discovery, 3-25
  - node discovery, 3-25
- Oracle home
  - cloning, 1-11
  - defined, 1-10
- Oracle Interface Configuration (OIFCFG), 13-5
- Oracle Managed Files, 3-2
- Oracle Maximum Availability Architecture (MAA), 12-2
- Oracle Net
  - listeners, 1-3
- Oracle Net Services
  - and load balancing, 5-21
  - and services, 5-7
- Oracle Notification Service, 1-3
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
  - used by FAN, 5-2
- Oracle Notification Services
  - API, 5-13
- Oracle processes
  - managed by Oracle Clusterware, 1-3
- Oracle RAC
  - adding administrator-managed database instances, 10-4, 11-2
  - adding policy-managed database instances, 10-2, 11-2
  - adding to nodes in a cluster on Linux and UNIX, 10-2
  - adding to nodes in a cluster on Windows, 11-2
  - and e-commerce, 12-7
  - background processes
    - ACMS, 1-6
    - GTX0-j, 1-6
    - LCK0, 1-7
    - LMD, 1-6
    - LMON, 1-6
    - LMS, 1-6
    - RSMN, 1-7

- benefits of cloning, 8-2
- cloning, 1-11, 8-1
  - size of the binaries, 8-2
- converting database from, 4-3
- converting database to, 4-3
- converting single instance to Oracle RAC One Node, 4-3
- copying the Oracle RAC home, 8-3
- databases
  - quiescing, 3-20
- deploying clone, 8-3
- diagnosing performance problems, 13-7
- diagnosing problems for, B-1
- installation overview, 1-10
- overview of administration, 1-1
- removing on Windows, 11-7
- removing the software from Linux and UNIX, 10-8
- security considerations, 12-8
- shutting down instances, 3-7
- software components, 1-5
- storage options
  - network file system (NFS), 1-4
  - Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM), 1-4
  - Oracle Cluster File System (OCFS for Windows), 1-4
  - volume manager, 1-4
- using a fast recovery area in, 7-7
- Oracle RAC background processes (RMSn), 1-7
- Oracle RAC Database introspection plug-in, C-1
- Oracle RAC One Node, xxiii, 1
  - adding databases, 4-2
  - certified on Oracle Virtual Machine (Oracle VM), 1
  - converting database from, 4-3
  - converting database to, 4-3
  - converting to Oracle RAC, 4-3
  - online database relocation, 1, 4-4
  - policy-managed databases, 2
  - relocating to another node, 4-4
- Oracle RAC One Node database services on, 4-2
- Oracle Real Application Clusters
  - See* Oracle RAC
- Oracle Real Application Clusters Configuration Audit Tool
  - See* RACcheck
- Oracle Real Application Clusters One Node, 1
  - See* Oracle RAC One Node
- Oracle Streams, 5-9
- Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing and FAN, 5-13
- Oracle Universal Installer
  - database installation, 1-10
  - Oracle RAC installation, 1-10
- ORACLE\_BASE environment variable, 8-5
- ORACLE\_HOME environment variable, 8-5
- ORACLE\_HOME\_NAME environment variable, 8-5

- ORACLE\_SID parameter, 3-17
- oradebug ipc command, B-3
- OraMTS
  - external transaction manager, 5-27
- orapwd file, 3-20
- outages
  - planned, 5-14
  - unplanned, 5-14

## P

---

- parallel execution, 12-8
- parallel processes, 5-9
- parallel recovery, 7-7
  - disabling, 7-6
- PARALLEL\_EXECUTION\_MESSAGE\_SIZE
  - initialization parameter, 3-17
- PARALLEL\_FORCE\_LOCAL initialization parameter, 5-9
- PARALLEL\_INSTANCE\_GROUPS initialization parameter, 5-9
- parallelism
  - in Oracle RAC, 12-8
  - parallel-aware query optimization, 12-8
- parameter file
  - overview, 3-12
- parameter file search order, 3-13
- parameters
  - DB\_RECOVERY\_FILE\_DEST, 7-7
  - that must be identical on all instances, 3-16
  - that must be unique on all instances, 3-17
- password file-based authentication, 4-4
- performance, 13-3
  - aggregates by services, 13-4
  - comprehensive global data, 13-6
  - monitoring activity by wait events, services, and instances, 13-4
  - monitoring database throughput, 13-4
  - monitoring global cache block access, 13-3
  - monitoring potential problems in the database, 13-3
  - primary components affecting, 13-4
  - service aggregates by instances, 13-4
  - service aggregates by waits, 13-4
  - using ADDM, 1-14
- performance evaluation
  - overview and concepts, 1-15
- performance statistics, 13-11
- PFILE
  - using with Oracle RAC, 3-11
- phases
  - cloning deployment, 8-3
  - cloning preparation, 8-2
- PMON background process, 3-10
- policy-managed database instances
  - adding, 11-2
- policy-managed databases, 3-2, 3-17, 5-6
  - defined, 1-12
  - deleting on Linux and UNIX, 10-6
  - deleting on Windows, 11-5

- PREFERRED instances
  - for services, 5-6
- preferred read disks
  - Oracle ASM in an Oracle RAC extended distance cluster, 2-6
- private interconnect, B-3
  - determining usage, B-3
- private network
  - alternative interconnect, 3-21
- private network IP address, 13-5
- processes
  - managed by Oracle Clusterware, 1-3
  - parallel, 5-9
- public and private interfaces
  - shown in Oracle Enterprise Manager, 13-3

## Q

---

- query optimizer, 12-8
  - default cost model for, 12-8
- queue tables, 5-9
- quiesce database
  - in Oracle Real Application Clusters, 3-20
- quiesced databases, 3-20
- quiescing
  - noncluster database, 3-20

## R

---

- RACcheck, D-1
  - command options, D-5
  - comparing reports, D-12
  - configuration parameters, D-10
  - running in silent mode, D-9
  - running interactively, D-9
  - troubleshooting, D-16
- RACcheck daemon, D-10
- rebalancing
  - workloads, 5-3
- RECOVER command, 3-5
  - SQL\*Plus, 3-5
- recovery
  - after SHUTDOWN ABORT, 3-7
  - from multiple node failure, 7-3
  - from single-node failure, 7-3
  - instance, 3-7
  - media failures, 7-6
  - online, 7-3
  - parallel, 7-7
- RECOVERY\_PARALLELISM parameter, 7-7
- redo log files
  - instance recovery, 7-3
  - log sequence number, 6-4
  - using, 2-3
- redo log groups, 2-3
- redo logs
  - format and destination specifications, 6-4
- redo thread, 3-2
- reducing contention, 12-5
- remote Oracle Notification Service

- subscription, 5-21
- Remote Slave Monitor (RSMN), 1-7
- REMOTE\_LISTENER database parameter, 5-10
- REMOTE\_LOGIN\_PASSWORDFILE initialization parameter, 3-17
- resource contention, 13-4
- Resource Manager
  - and services, 5-8
  - resource manager, 5-3
- Resource Manager Instance Caging, 1
- resource profiles
  - and service creation, 5-8
- resources
  - releasing, 7-3
- resources held by the session, 3-10
- restore scenarios
  - RMAN, 7-1
- restore scheme
  - cluster file system, 7-2
  - local file system, 7-2
- result cache, 3-16
  - disabling, 3-16
  - enabling, 3-16
- RESULT\_CACHE\_MAX\_SIZE initialization parameter, 3-16, 3-17
- RMAN
  - CONFIGURE command, 6-2
  - configuring channels, 6-3
  - configuring channels to use automatic load balancing, 6-3
  - configuring one channel for each instance, 6-4
  - configuring snapshot control file locations, 6-2
  - crosschecking on multiple nodes, 6-3
  - local archiving scenario, 6-7
  - restore scenarios, 7-1
  - using to create SPFILE backups, 3-14
- RMS*n*
  - Oracle RAC Management Processes, 1-7
- rolling back
  - instance recovery, 7-3
- root.sh script
  - \$ORACLE\_HOME, 8-6
- RSMN
  - Remote Slave Monitor, 1-7
- Runtime Connection Load Balancing, 5-6
- runtime connection load balancing
  - defined, 5-24
  - in OCI session pools, 5-24
  - introduction to, 5-2

## S

---

- scalability, 12-7
  - Oracle RAC, 12-4
- SCAN, 1-3
  - defined, 1-7
- scan
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- scan\_listener
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13



- scripts
  - \$ORACLE\_HOME/root.sh, 8-6
- security
  - wallet, 12-8
- sequence-based indexes, 12-5
- sequences
  - log sequence number, 6-4
- Server Control Utility
  - see* SRVCTL
- Server Management
  - administration of instances, 3-1
- server parameter file
  - backing up, 3-14
- server parameter files
  - creating, 3-12
- server pool, 3-2
  - concepts, 1-8
  - creating for a policy-managed database, 3-19
  - Generic, 3-2
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- servers
  - relocating from another server pool, 3-19
  - scalability, 12-4
- service
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- service level objective
  - defining for Oracle RAC, 12-1
- service levels, 12-7
- service metrics
  - OCI runtime connection load balancing, 5-24
  - runtime connection load balancing, 5-25
- SERVICE parameter
  - FAN, and matching database signature, 5-16
- SERVICE TIME
  - load balancing advisory goal, 5-18
- SERVICE\_NAMES initialization parameter, 3-16
  - setting for services, 3-16, 5-31
- service-level agreements, 3-10
- services, 3-16
  - activity levels aggregated by instances, 13-4
  - activity levels aggregated by services, 13-4
  - activity levels aggregated by waits, 13-4
  - administering, 5-29
  - administering with Oracle Enterprise Manager, 5-29
  - administering with SRVCTL, 5-29, 5-32
  - attributes
    - edition, 5-5
  - basic concepts about, 5-4
  - concepts, 1-8
  - configuring automatic workload management
    - characteristics, 5-4
  - default, 5-9
  - dependencies, 5-8
  - enabling event notification, 5-25
  - introduction to, 1-4, 5-2
  - level thresholds, 5-35
  - management policy
    - automatic, 5-5
    - manual, 5-5
  - performance monitored by AWR, 5-8
  - SERVICE\_NAMES parameter, 3-16, 5-31
  - specifying a service, 5-31
  - using, 5-4
- services for administrator-managed databases, 3-20
- sessions
  - terminating on a specific instance, 3-10
- setting instances, 1-13, 3-4
- shared everything, 1-4
- shared server configuration, 3-15
- SHOW INSTANCE command, 3-5
  - SQL\*Plus, 3-5
- SHOW PARAMETER command
  - SQL\*Plus, 3-5
- SHOW PARAMETERS command, 3-5
- SHOW SGA command, 3-5
  - SQL\*Plus, 3-5
- SHUTDOWN ABORT, 3-7, B-3
- SHUTDOWN command
  - ABORT option, 3-7
  - SQL\*Plus, 3-5
- SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE, B-3
- SHUTDOWN TRANSACTIONAL, 3-7
- shutting down
  - instances, 3-6
- shutting down an instance
  - abnormal shutdown, 3-7
- shutting down instances, 3-7
- sidalrt.log file, B-2
- single client access name
  - See* SCAN
- Single Client Access Name (SCAN), 1
- single client access name (SCAN)
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- single system image, 1-6
- SMON process
  - instance recovery, 7-3
  - recovery after SHUTDOWN ABORT, 3-7
- snapshot control file, 6-2
  - configuring locations, 6-2
- speed-up for data warehouse systems, 12-7
- SPFILE
  - backing up, 3-14
  - backups
    - creating, 3-14
  - changing parameter settings, 3-12
  - corrupted, 3-12
  - default names, 3-13
  - location, 3-11
  - naming convention for, 3-13
  - recovering, 3-14
  - restore with Oracle Enterprise Manager, 7-3
  - restore with RMAN, 7-3
  - setting values in, 3-12
- SPFILE initialization parameter, 3-16, 3-18
- SQL statements
  - executing in parallel, 5-9
  - instance-specific, 3-5
- SQL\*Plus, 3-4
  - changing the prompt, 3-4

- commands
  - CONNECT, 3-4
  - effect on instances, 3-5
- SRVCTL
  - add, usage description, A-14
  - administering Oracle ASM instances, 2-7
  - administering services with, 5-32
  - cluster database configuration tasks, A-5
  - cluster database tasks, A-6
  - command syntax, A-11
  - commands
    - add asm, A-15
    - add cvu, A-15, A-79
    - add database, A-15
    - add filesystem, A-18
    - add gns, A-18
    - add instance, A-19
    - add listener, A-20
    - add network, A-20
    - add nodeapps, A-21
    - add ons, A-22
    - add scan, A-23
    - add scan\_listener, A-24
    - add service, A-24
    - add srvpool, A-27
    - add vip, A-28
    - config asm, A-30, A-32
    - config cvu, A-30
    - config database, A-30
    - config filesystem, A-31
    - config gns, A-32
    - config nodeapps, A-33
    - config oc4j, A-33
    - config ons, A-33
    - config scan, A-33
    - config scan\_listener, A-34
    - config service, A-34
    - config srvpool, A-35
    - config vip, A-36
    - convert database, A-37
    - disable asm, A-39
    - disable cvu, A-40
    - disable database, A-40
    - disable diskgroup, A-40
    - disable filesystem, A-41
    - disable gns, A-41
    - disable instance, A-42
    - disable listener, A-42
    - disable nodeapps, A-42
    - disable oc4j, A-43
    - disable ons, A-43
    - disable scan, A-43
    - disable scan\_listener, A-44
    - disable service, 5-33, A-44
    - disable vip, A-45
    - downgrade database, A-46
    - enable asm, A-47
    - enable cvu, A-48
    - enable database, A-48
    - enable diskgroup, A-49
    - enable filesystem, A-49
    - enable instance, A-50
    - enable listener, A-50
    - enable nodeapps, A-51
    - enable oc4j, A-51
    - enable ons, A-52
    - enable scan, A-52
    - enable scan\_listener, A-52
    - enable service, 5-33, A-53
    - enable vip, A-53
    - getenv asm, A-55
    - getenv database, A-55
    - getenv listener, A-56
    - getenv nodeapps, A-56, A-57
    - help, A-6
    - modify asm, A-59
    - modify cvu, A-59
    - modify database, A-60
    - modify filesystem, A-62
    - modify gns, A-62
    - modify instance, A-62
    - modify listener, A-63
    - modify network, A-64
    - modify nodeapps, A-65
    - modify oc4j, A-66
    - modify ons, A-66
    - modify scan, A-66
    - modify scan\_listener, A-67
    - modify service, A-68
    - modify srvpool, A-71
    - relocate cvu, A-72
    - relocate database, A-73
    - relocate gns, A-74
    - relocate oc4j, A-74
    - relocate scan, A-74
    - relocate scan\_listener, A-75
    - relocate server, A-75
    - relocate service, A-76
    - relocate vip, A-77
    - remove asm, A-79
    - remove database, A-79
    - remove diskgroup, A-80
    - remove filesystem, A-80
    - remove gns, A-81
    - remove instance, A-81
    - remove listener, A-82
    - remove nodeapps, A-82
    - remove oc4j, A-83
    - remove ons, A-83
    - remove scan, A-83
    - remove scan\_listener, A-84
    - remove service, A-84
    - remove srvpool, A-85
    - remove vip, A-85
    - setenv asm, A-86
    - setenv database, A-86, A-88
    - setenv listener, A-87
    - setenv nodeapps, A-87
    - srvctl setenv, 3-6
    - start asm, A-90

- start cvu, A-90
- start database, 3-9, A-90
- start diskgroup, A-91
- start filesystem, A-92
- start gns, A-92
- start home, A-93
- start instance, 3-8, A-93
- start listener, A-94
- start nodeapps, A-95
- start oc4j, A-95
- start ons, A-95
- start scan, A-96
- start scan\_listener, A-96
- start service, A-97
- start vip, A-98
- status asm, A-100
- status cvu, A-100
- status database, A-101
- status diskgroup, A-101
- status filesystem, A-102
- status gns, A-102
- status home, A-102
- status instance, A-103
- status listener, A-104
- status nodeapps, A-104
- status oc4j, A-104
- status ons, A-105
- status scan, A-105
- status scan\_listener, A-106
- status server, A-106
- status service, A-106
- status srvpool, A-107
- status vip, A-107
- stop asm, A-110
- stop cvu, A-110
- stop database, 3-9, A-111
- stop diskgroup, A-111
- stop filesystem, A-112
- stop gns, A-112
- stop home, A-113
- stop instance, 3-9, A-113
- stop listener, A-114
- stop nodeapps, A-115
- stop oc4j, A-115
- stop ons, A-116
- stop scan, A-116
- stop scan\_listener, A-117
- stop service, A-117
- stop vip, A-118
- unsetenv asm, A-119
- unsetenv database, A-119, A-121
- unsetenv listener, A-120
- unsetenv nodeapps, A-120
- upgrade database, A-122
- concurrent commands, A-4
- config, usage description, A-29
- convert, usage description, A-37
- deprecated commands and options, A-9
- disable, usage description, A-38
- downgrade, usage description, A-46
- enable, usage description, A-47
- enabling event notification, 5-25
- getenv, usage description, A-55
- modify, usage description, A-58
- node-level tasks, A-6
- object name
  - database, A-12
  - diskgroup, A-12
  - filesystem, A-12
  - Grid Naming Service (GNS), A-12
  - home, A-13
  - instance, A-13
  - listener, A-13
  - network, A-13
  - node applications (nodeapps), A-13
  - oc4j, A-13
  - Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM), A-13
  - Oracle Notification Service, A-13
  - scan, A-13
  - scan\_listener, A-13
  - server pool (srvpool), A-13
  - service, A-13
  - vip, A-13
- object names, A-12
- overview, 3-6
- overview and concepts, 1-13
- relocate, usage description, A-72
- remove, usage description, A-78
- setenv, usage description, A-86
- start service command, 5-32
- start, usage description, A-89
- status service command, 5-33
- status, usage description, A-99
- stop or start cluster database, 3-8
- stop, usage description, A-109
- unsetenv, usage description, A-119
- upgrade, usage description, A-122
- SRVM\_TRACE environment variable, B-3
- Standard Edition
  - installing Oracle ASM, 1-10
- starting administrator-managed databases, 3-8
- starting policy-managed databases, 3-8
- STARTUP command
  - SQL\*Plus, 3-5
- statistics
  - contents of, 13-6
- Statspack, 13-8
  - usage, 1-14
- stop database instances, 3-8
- storage
  - cluster file system, 2-1
  - Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM), 2-5
- subnet
  - configuring for virtual IP address, A-6
- subnets, 1-5
- SYS\$BACKGROUND service, 5-9
- SYS\$USERS service, 5-9
- SYSASM privilege, 3-4, 3-7

- SYSAUX tablespace
  - increasing size when adding nodes, 12-6
  - reducing size when removing nodes, 12-6
- SYSDBA, 3-4
  - privilege for connecting, 3-4
- SYSDBA connections to an Oracle ASM instance, 3-4
- SYSOPER, 3-4
- SYSOPER privilege
  - for connecting, 3-4
- system change, 6-4
- System Global Area (SGA), 1-6, 13-7
  - size requirements, 1-6

## T

---

- tablespaces
  - automatic segment space management (ASSM) in Oracle RAC, 12-6
  - automatic undo management in Oracle RAC, 12-6
  - locally managed, 12-6
  - use in Oracle RAC, 12-6
- TCP network ports
  - Windows Firewall considerations, 12-9
- TCP/IP, 1-5
- terminating a session on a specific instance, 3-10
- THREAD initialization parameter, 3-16
- threads
  - multiple application, 5-24
- THROUGHPUT
  - load balancing advisory goal, 5-18
- timed statistics, 13-6
- timeout
  - messages, avoiding, 1-5
- tnsnames.ora file, 3-15
- Top Activity drill down menu
  - on the Cluster Database Performance page, 13-4
- Top Cluster Events, 13-8
- Top Cluster Events, ASH report, 13-8
- Top Remote Instance, 13-8
- Top Remote Instance, ASH report, 13-8
- trace files, B-1
  - managing, B-1
  - sidart.log, B-2
- trace files for background processes, B-1
- TRACE\_ENABLED initialization parameter, 3-19
- tracing
  - enabling Java-based tools and utilities, B-3
  - SRVM\_TRACE environment variable, B-3
  - writing to log files, B-3
- transactions
  - instance failure, 7-3
  - rolling back, 3-10, 7-3
  - waiting for recovery, 7-3
- Transparent Application Failover and services, 5-7
- Transparent Data Encryption
  - specifying the ENCRYPTION\_WALLET\_LOCATION parameter, 12-9
  - with encrypted wallets and obfuscated

- wallets, 12-8
- tuning
  - overview, 1-15
  - using ADDM, 1-14

## U

---

- undo tablespace, 3-2
- UNDO\_MANAGEMENT initialization parameter, 3-17
- UNDO\_RETENTION initialization parameter, 3-19
- UNDO\_TABLESPACE parameter, 3-18
- Universal Connection Pool
  - benefits, xxix
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP), B-3
- user process trace files, B-2

## V

---

- V\$, 1-14
- V\$ view, 13-6
- V\$ACTIVE\_INSTANCES, 3-9
- V\$CLUSTER\_INTERCONNECTS, 13-5, B-3
- V\$CONFIGURED\_INTERCONNECTS, 13-5
- vendor clusterware, 1-1
- verification
  - data files, online files, 2-2
- verifying interconnect settings, 13-5
- versions
  - compatibility for Oracle RAC and Oracle Database software, 1-9
- views
  - creating for Oracle Real Application Clusters, 13-6
  - dynamic performance
    - for performance monitoring, 13-6
    - GV\$, 13-6
    - for performance monitoring, 13-6
    - GV\$SESSION, 3-10
    - instance-specific, 13-6
    - V\$ views, 13-6
- VIP
  - SRVCTL object name, A-13
- Virtual Internet Protocol (VIP) address, 1-3
- virtual IP address
  - requirements, A-6

## W

---

- wait events, 13-8
  - aggregated for service performance, 13-4
  - block-related, 13-11
  - contention-related, 13-12
  - load-related, 13-13
  - message-related, 13-12
- wallet
  - data security, 12-8
- Welcome page, 10-4, 11-3
- Windows Firewall, 12-9
- workload management
  - See automatic workload management

workloads  
and services, 5-4  
*See Also* automatic workload management

## **X**

---

XA Transactions, 12-6  
XA transactions  
spanning Oracle RAC instances, 5-27

